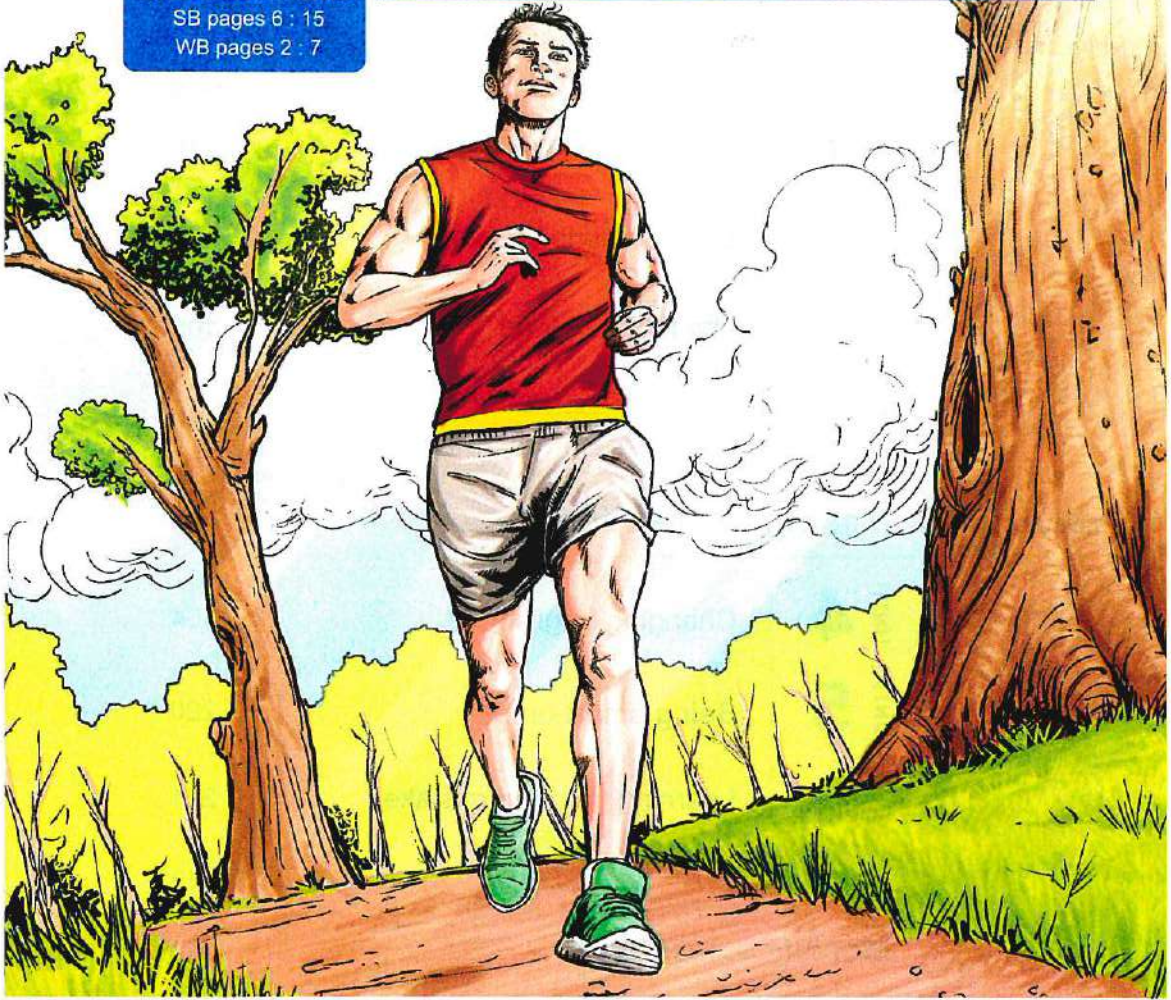


# UNIT 1

SB pages 6 : 15  
WB pages 2 : 7

## Staying healthy



**Objectives :** \_\_\_\_\_ : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- 🕒 **Reading** : A poster about how to perform first aid
- 🕒 **Writing** : A persuasive email to a friend
- 🕒 **Listening** : A news report about medical support for athletes; An explanation of the immune system

- 🕒 **Speaking** : Suggesting solutions to problems; Persuading
- 🕒 **Language** : Present and past necessity and lack of necessity
- 🕒 **Life skills** : Resilience



## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

act (ed) (v)	يتصرف - تصرف / سلوك	infect (ed) (v)	يُصيب بعدوى - يلهب
action (n)	القيام بشيء - تصرف - حدث	infection	عدوى - مرض مُعدى
react (ed) (v)	يستجيب - يتصرف بناء على	operate (d) (v)	يُشغّل - يجري جراحة
reaction (n)	استجابة - رد فعل	operation (n)	تشغيل - عملية جراحية
allow (ed) (v)	يدع / يترك - يسمح	perform (ed) (v)	يقوم بـ - يؤدي
allowance (n)	سماح - علاوة	performance (n)	أداء - عرض
CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي	resilience (n)	المرونة - اللين
guide (d) (v/n)	يُرشد - مُرشد	severe (adj)	شديد - حاد - مُزمن
guidance (n)	إرشاد	technique (n)	أسلوب / تقنيّة

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

active (adj)	نشيط	first aid (kit)	(صندوق) الإسعافات الأولية
ambulance (n)	عربة إسعاف	flat (adj)	مسطو - مُسطح
athlete (n)	رياضيّ - لاعب ألعاب القوى	fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
athletic (adj)	رياضيّ	injure (d) (v)	يُصيب - يؤدي
AHC = Athletic Heart Centre	المركز الرياضى للقلب	injured (adj)	مُصاب
available (adj)	مُتاح - متوافر	injury (n)	إصابة
bandage (d) (n / v)	ضمادة - يُضمّد	instructions (n)	أوامر / تعليمات
base (n)	قاعدة - أساس	major (adj)	رئيسي - كبير
bleed - bled - bled (v)	ينزف	medical (adj)	طبيّ
bone (n)	عظمة	normal (adj)	طبيعي - عاقل
breathing (n)	التنفس	pioneer (n)	رائد
centre (n)	منتصف - وسط	place (d) (v/n)	يضع - مكان
check (ed) (v)	يفحص	press (ed) (v)	يُضغط
chest (n)	الصدر	respond (ed) (v)	يستجيب - يتجاوب
collaboration (n)	تعاون	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
competition (n)	مسابقة - منافسة	rise - rose - risen (v)	يرتفع - يزداد
		sign (n)	علامة - إشارة



details (n)	تفاصيل	sudden (adj)	مفاجئ
disease (n)	مَرَض	survive (d) (v)	يلجو - يبقى حياً
educate (d) (v)	يُعلِّم	technology (n)	التكنولوجيا
else (adv)	أيضاً - آخر	tight (adj)	مشدود - ضيق
emergency (n)	الطوارئ	train (ed) (v)	يتدرب - يُدرَّب
examination (n)	فحص - امتحان	trophy (n)	البطولة / التتويج
executive (n)	تنفيذي	wrap (ped) (v)	الرياضي - كأس
expert (n - adj)	خبير		يغلف

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
perform (ed) (v) يقوم بـ	to do an action
infection (n) مرض مُعدِي	a disease caused by a virus or bacteria
react (ed) (v) يستجيب	to do something because something else has been done
severe (adj) شديد - حادّ	(of a disease) very serious خطير
technique (n) أسلوب / تقنية	a way of doing something with a skill

### Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

- This word "....." describes an illness or wound that is very serious.  
(بوريسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)
- To ..... is to do an action.
- To ..... is to do something because something else has been done.
- A/An ..... is a way of doing something with a skill.
- A/An ..... is a disease caused by a virus or bacteria.

#### 2 Key Vocabulary

- ..... is short for cardiopulmonary resuscitation.  
(القطر - أرميت ٢٠٢٣)
- Some patients don't ..... well to antibiotics.  
(المنيا - مفاغة ٢٠٢٤)

8. Doctors say that the injured footballer had a/an ..... on his knee. (الجيرة - العجوة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. process      b. operation      c. option      d. task
9. Children need ..... from their parents. (المنووية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. severity      b. infection      c. guidance      d. immunity
10. This powerful computer can ..... many tasks at once. (المنيا - قلاوي ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. perform      b. make      c. carry      d. connect
11. The rescue workers showed remarkable ..... in dealing with difficult conditions. (القليوبية - ينها ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. cowardice      b. abbreviation      c. disinterest      d. resilience
12. Her parents' ..... to the news was surprisingly calm.  
 a. infection      b. reaction      c. infected      d. injection
13. CPR stands for cardiopulmonary .....  
 a. rescue      b. repetition      c. reaction      d. resuscitation
14. Patients with COVID-19 should be isolated due to the danger of ..... (البحيرة - إدكو ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. infection      b. injection      c. reaction      d. infected
15. You aren't supposed to smoke in here. It means that is not ..... (سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. necessary      b. predicted      c. allowed      d. advisable
16. I expect that the training course will surely improve the employees' ..... (بنها سويف - بنها ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. infection      b. injuries      c. performance      d. discourage
17. He was taken to a bigger hospital as his injury was ..... (دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. tiny      b. danger      c. severe      d. infection
18. Mr Ayman applies the latest ..... in business management. (الاسكندرية - المنزه اول ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. resilience      b. techniques      c. pioneers      d. emergency
19. "His job is to guide the tourists." The word 'guide' in this sentence is a/an .....  
 a. adverb      b. noun      c. verb      d. adjective

### 3 Important Vocabulary

20. All individuals must work hard to achieve progress in ..... with the government. (القليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. collection      b. invention      c. intention      d. collaboration
21. The old man was walking up and down the room, which was a ..... that he was worried.  
 a. sign      b. signature      c. landmark      d. notice
22. Athletes must get a special heart ..... from time to time. (الشرقية - منشأة أبو عمر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. determination      b. admiration      c. examination      d. competition
23. Stop lifting those heavy weights, or you will do yourself a/an ..... (المنيا - أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. attention      b. benefit      c. injury      d. loss



24. The accident victim was ..... from his wounds in his head and arms. (المنيا - قُلُوبِي ٢٠٢٣)  
a. bleeding      b. breathing      c. breeding      d. ct-peeling
25. High prices may ..... his new company in a hard situation. (السيوط - القوصية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. perform      b. press      c. place      d. perform
26. The patient's ..... stopped suddenly and was taken to the intensive care unit. (الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. operation      b. bleeding      c. breathing      d. temperature
27. Can you just ..... that all the windows are shut? (بني سويف - بيا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. catch      b. check      c. control      d. excuse .
28. By midday, the sun had ..... high in the sky and it was very hot. (القليوبية - غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. risen      b. increased      c. decreased      d. raised
29. A ..... is a prize, for example a silver cup, that is given to the winner. (الفيوم - يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. trophy      b. tube      c. tap      d. tape
30. You should read the ..... before using a new electrical set جهاز. (الفيوم - يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. inspections      b. infections      c. instructions      d. symptoms
31. To stop the bleeding نزيف, ..... a bandage firmly around the injured limb.  
a. chop      b. peel      c. remove      d. wrap
32. You can talk to the ..... director. He is the one in charge المسئول here.  
a. locked      b. immediate      c. tight      d. executive
33. It is necessary for a football pitch ملعب to be ..... with no slopes انحدار.  
a. flat      b. fat      c. fit      d. float
34. You need to put a/an ..... on the cut to stop the bleeding.  
a. injury      b. bandage      c. allowance      d. muscle
35. Your headache will surely ..... to this strong painkiller مُسكِّن.  
a. press      b. act      c. rise      d. respond

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

<b>do</b>	an action      يتصرف - يتخذ إجراء	<b>have</b>	good hygiene يتبع قواعد النظافة الجيدة
	a sport      يمارس رياضة		severe injuries      لديه إصابات بالغة
<b>do / perform</b>	a job      يؤدي مهمة عمل	<b>make</b>	sure      يتأكد
	CPR      يقوم بالإنعاش القلبي الرئوي	<b>miss</b>	the chance      يُضَيِّع الفرصة
	first aid      يقوم بعمل الإسعافات الأولية	<b>pass</b>	an exam      يجتاز امتحان
<b>get</b>	an infection      يُصاب بمرض مُعدِي	<b>stay</b>	safe      يبقى بأمان
<b>give</b>	infection      يعدي - يصيب بعدوي	<b>suggest</b>	solutions to      يقترح حلول لـ

## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
collaboration	تعاون	partnership, cooperation
disease	فَرَض	illness
guide	يُرشد - ينصح	direct, advise, lead
normal	طبيعي - مألوف	usual, regular, ordinary, average
normal	عاقل - سوي	sane, rational
perform	يقوم بـ - يؤدي	act, take action, carry out
react	يستجيب	respond
reaction	استجابة	response
severe	شديد - حاز	acute, serious, grave, dangerous, profound
severe	عنيف - قوي	fierce, violent, strong

## 3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
disease/illness	فَرَض	health, well-being	الصحة
encourage ... to	يشجع ... أن	discourage ... from	يثنى ... عن
guide	يُرشد - ينصح	mislead, misguide	يضل
lock	يشبك - يقفل	unlock	يفتح - يفك
move closer to	يدنو من / يقترب من	move away from	يبتعد عن
normal	طبيعي - مألوف	abnormal, unusual	غير طبيعي - غير مألوف
normal	عاقل - سوي	insane, irrational	غير عاقل - معنوه
react	يستجيب	cease	يمنتع / يتوقف
severe	عنيف - قوي	gentle, mild	لطيف - معتدل

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

infect		
<b>infect (ed) (v)</b>	يعدي - يلتهب	- Coronavirus patients can <b>infect</b> others.
<b>infection (n)</b>	عدوى - مرض مُعدِي	- Coronavirus patients can give others the <b>infection</b> .
<b>infectious (adj)</b>	مُعدِي - مسبب للعدوى	- Coronavirus disease is <b>infectious</b> .
<b>infected (adj)</b>	فلتهب - مُصاب بالعدوى	- He is well. He is no longer <b>infected</b> .
Perform		
<b>perform (ed) (v)</b>	يقوم بـ - يؤدي	- I can <b>perform</b> CPR.
<b>performance (n)</b>	اداء - عرض	- The <b>performance</b> of CPR needs skill.
<b>performer (n)</b>	مُؤدّي - مُمثل	- He is a good <b>performer</b> .



react		
react (ed) (v)	يستجيب - يتصرف	- She reacted angrily to my suggestion.
reaction (n)	استجابة - رد الفعل	- She showed an angry reaction to my suggestion.
reactor (n)	مفاعيل	- Nuclear reactors المفاعلات النووية are dangerous to people's health.
reactionary (adj)	متحفّظ	- He is a reactionary person who refuses any change.
severe		
severity (n)	شِدَّة - جِدَّة	- I didn't expect the severity of her reaction.
severe (adj)	شديد - حادّ	- I didn't expect her severe reaction.
severely (adv)	بشدة - بحدّة	- I didn't expect she would react severely.

### 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

be right to	يكون محقاً في	on a flat surface	على سطح مستوٍ
call for help	يطلب المساعدة	on top of	فوق
explanation of / for	تفسير / توضيح لـ	send blood around	يضخ الدم خلال
in the correct way	بالطريقة الصحيحة	small enough to	صغير بما يكفي لكى
keep the heart strong	يحافظ على القلب بصحة جيدة	stay fit	يظل لائقاً بدنياً
		sudden death	الموت المفاجئ
		take up a sport	يبدأ ممارسة رياضة

### 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

allow ... to	يعد / يترك / يسمح لـ ... أن	look around	يبحث في المكان المحيط
care about	يهتم بـ	place ... on	يضع ... على
disagree about	يختلف على	press down	يضغط لأسفل - يُدك
forget about	ينسى أمر	pull ... out	يرفع - ينزع / يخلع
forget to	ينسى أن	rise up	يرتفع - يعلو
get into	يدخل إلى	take up	يقبل القيام بـ - يبدأ ممارسة ...
get on	يركب (وسيلة مواصلات)		

### 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

#### breathe - breath

#### • breathe (d) (v)

- The performance of CPR helped the injured man breathe normally.

يتنفس

#### • breath (n)

- It is normal for your breath to be warm.

الأنفاس

### encourage - discourage

- **encourage + object** مفعول **to + inf.** يشجع شخص علي القيام بشيء  
- His mother **encourages** him **to do** a sport to keep fit.
- **encourage + ( inf. + ing ) / n.** يشجع علي  
- The government **encourages starting** private businesses.
- **discourage + object** مفعول **from + ( inf. + ing )** يُثني ... عن / يصرف ... عن  
- I **discourage** Rodayna **from** listening to bad songs.

### infection - illness - disease - sickness

- **infection (n)** عدوي / مرض (ناتج عن الفيروسات والبكتيريا)  
- Smallpox الجدري and COVID- 19 are dangerous **infections**.
- **illness (n)** مرض / إعياء (خلل بالجسد أو العقل)  
- She suffers from a serious **illness**.
- **disease (n)** مرض (من نوع معين مثل الأنفلونزا أو السرطان ...)  
- Flu is a common **disease** in winter.
- **sickness (n)** إعياء (يمنع من القيام بالعمل مثلا)  
- My **sickness** stopped me from going to school.

### raise - rise

- **raise (d) (v) +** مفعول يرفع - يجمع مال - يُربّي - يطرح موضوع أو سؤال  
- Wars **raise** prices. ترفع  
- This charity **raises** money for the poor. تجمع مال  
- Parents work hard to **raise** their children. يُربّي  
- Sama **raised** an important question during the lecture. طرحت
- **rise (rose - risen) (v)** يرتفع - يزداد - تُشرق - ينهض (بدون مفعول)  
- Prices **rise** during wars. ترتفع / تزداد  
- The sun **rose** and warmed the area. أشرقت  
- I **rose** to welcome my guests. نهضت

### sign - signal

- **sign (n)** لافتة (يافطة)  
- You can know the distance from road **signs**.
- **signal (n)** إشارة (تردد موجات الراديو والهاتف المحمول ...)  
- There is no **signal** in this remote area.
- **sign/signal (n)** إشارة/علامة (على شيء / بداية شيء/ نهاية شيء ...)  
- He paid some of the price in advance مقدماً as **a sign** (=signal) of readiness الجاهزية/ الاستعداد.



## Exercise On Vocabulary study

• ❁ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It is necessary to know how to ..... CPR in case you should help in an emergency. (البحرية - إدكو ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. perform                      b. make                      c. allow                      d. guide
2. I must learn how to ..... CPR so I can help others. (الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. make                      b. take                      c. reform                      d. do
3. The child ..... the flu to his brother. They both became ill. (المنوفية - أشمون ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. made                      b. gave                      c. did                      d. had
4. You don't realise the ..... of the weather in rainforests. (القليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. guide                      b. guidance                      c. severe                      d. severity
5. Firefighters must be trained well to ..... quickly when they hear the alarm.  
 a. reactionary                      b. react                      c. reaction                      d. reactor
6. If your child wants to take ..... a new sport, a doctor must check his heart pulse first. (الغربية - قطور ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. in                      b. up                      c. out                      d. off
7. A good teacher should always ..... students to think independently.  
 a. make                      b. discourage                      c. encourage                      d. prevent
8. When there's a pandemic جائحة, you may ..... an infection.  
 a. do                      b. get                      c. suggest                      d. make
9. You can do .....  
 a. a sport                      b. sure                      c. safe                      d. the chance
10. "Coronavirus is a severe disease." In this sentence, 'severe' is antonymous with .....  
 a. serious                      b. mild                      c. tired                      d. acute
11. "From her behaviour, it is clear that she is not normal". The word "normal" here can be replaced by .....  
 a. sane                      b. insane                      c. irrational                      d. unusual
12. "You are obliged to follow the law". In this sentence, 'follow' is the antonym of .....  
 a. carry out                      b. boost                      c. obey                      d. break
13. If you want to succeed in life, never ..... any chance to learn.  
 a. miss                      b. get                      c. a & b                      d. cause
14. She encouraged me to save my money. She ..... me from buying unnecessary things.  
 a. wanted                      b. supported                      c. discouraged                      d. forced
15. A: Do you want to move it ..... the wall ?                      B: No, move it closer.  
 a. nearer to                      b. away from                      c. a & b                      d. towards

16. A : Is your offer still available ? B: Forget ..... it. I've changed my mind.

- a. to                      b. from                      c. about                      d. to

17. You ..... to leave this job. It is boring.

- a. right                      b. are right                      c. have no right                      d. righter

## PART III

# READING & LISTENING

## 1 Reading Texts

### How to Perform First Aid كيف تقوم بالإسعافات الأولية



Step (1)



Step (2)



Step (3)

(SB page 7)

1 If you find an ill or **injured**<sup>(1)</sup> person, you must **check**<sup>(2)</sup> the area around them first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then **move closer to**<sup>(3)</sup> the person and look carefully at him/her. Does he/she **seem**<sup>(4)</sup> to be very ill? Does he/she have **severe**<sup>(5)</sup> **injuries**<sup>(6)</sup>?

2 If the person is **awake**<sup>(7)</sup> but not **bleeding**<sup>(8)</sup>, you have to ask him/her how he/she feels and what happened. Check his/her body for **signs**<sup>(9)</sup> of injury or **infection**<sup>(10)</sup>. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.

3 If the person doesn't reply, touch his/her **shoulder**<sup>(11)</sup> or foot and shout to see if he/she **reacts**<sup>(12)</sup>, and remember to check for **normal**<sup>(13)</sup> **breathing**<sup>(14)</sup>.

4 If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the **emergency**<sup>(15)</sup> **services**<sup>(16)</sup> **immediately**<sup>(17)</sup> (123).

5 If you know how to **perform**<sup>(18)</sup> **CPR**<sup>(19)</sup>, you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is **lying**<sup>(20)</sup> on his/her **back**<sup>(21)</sup> on a **flat**<sup>(22)</sup> surface such as the floor.

6 **Place**<sup>(23)</sup> your hand on the **centre**<sup>(24)</sup> of the person's **chest**<sup>(25)</sup>. Put your other hand **on top of**<sup>(26)</sup> the first hand and **lock**<sup>(27)</sup> your fingers **together**<sup>(28)</sup>. Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.

- (1) مُصاب
- (2) يفحص
- (3) يدنو من
- (4) يبدو
- (5) شديد
- (6) إصابات
- (7) مُستيقظ - واعي
- (8) ينزف
- (9) علامات - إشارات
- (10) عدوى
- (11) كتف
- (12) يستجيب
- (13) طبيعي
- (14) التنفس
- (15) الطوارئ
- (16) خدمات
- (17) في الحال
- (18) يقوم بـ
- (19) الإنعاش القلبي
- (20) مُستلقي
- (21) الظهر
- (22) مسطح - مستوي
- (23) ضع
- (24) منتصف - وسط
- (25) الصدر
- (26) فوق
- (27) يقفل
- (28) مغا



7 You don't have to **press**<sup>(29)</sup> down on the person's chest very much – only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on his/her chest and **allow**<sup>(30)</sup> it to **rise up**<sup>(31)</sup> again. You have to do this 100 to 120 **times**<sup>(32)</sup> a minute until the person starts breathing again.

- يضغط (29)  
يدع (30)  
يرتفع (31)  
مرات (32)

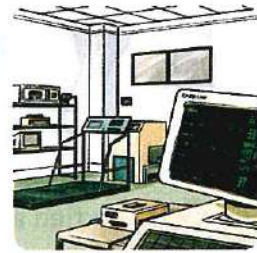
## 2 Listening Texts



(SB page 8)

### Athletic Heart Centre (AHC)

Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But some young **athletes**<sup>(1)</sup> believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. **However**<sup>(2)</sup>, health experts agree that athletes must get a **special**<sup>(3)</sup> heart examination before they can be **completely**<sup>(4)</sup> sure that they don't have a problem.



**For example**<sup>(5)</sup>, in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian **footballer**<sup>(6)</sup> from Fayum who seemed to be very healthy. At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab **fell down**<sup>(7)</sup> while he was training. **Sadly**<sup>(8)</sup>, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't **survive**<sup>(9)</sup>.

**Fortunately**<sup>(10)</sup>, Egypt became a **pioneer**<sup>(11)</sup> in athletic heart **care**<sup>(12)</sup> in 2018 when it **established**<sup>(13)</sup> the first Athletic Heart Centre in the **Middle East**<sup>(14)</sup> in Wadi el Nil Hospital.

It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check every **detail**<sup>(15)</sup> of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes **abroad**<sup>(16)</sup>.

- رياضيون (1)  
مع ذلك (2)  
خاص (3)  
تماماً (4)  
علي سبيل المثال (5)  
لاعب كرة قدم (6)  
يسقط (7)  
من الشجن (8)  
يبقي حياً (9)  
لحسن الحظ (10)  
راند (11)  
رعاية (12)  
ينشئ (13)  
الشرق الأوسط (14)  
تفاصيل (15)  
بالخارج (16)

Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the **Executive Director**<sup>(17)</sup> of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national team take full tests of their hearts before major competitions, such as the World Handball Championships. And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have **published**<sup>(18)</sup> a book together so that everyone can understand the importance of having a healthy heart. It's called *Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death*.

Young athletes, and their families, mustn't **miss this chance**<sup>(19)</sup> to learn about the importance of heart **examinations**<sup>(20)</sup> to stay fit and healthy.

- (17) المدير التنفيذي
- (18) ينشر
- (19) يضيع الفرصة
- (20) فحوصات

## Keeping a healthy heart

(WB page 3)

Of course, not everyone will become an athlete or a footballer, but that does not mean we should forget about our hearts. So, what should parents do to help their children **stay free from**<sup>(1)</sup> heart disease?



Your heart **pumps**<sup>(2)</sup> about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. This is a lot of work. In fact, your heart has to work harder than any other muscle in your body. That is why we need to keep it fit and healthy.

- (1) يظل معافي من
- (2) يضخ
- (3) بالإضافة إلى
- (4) يركب دراجة
- (5) كثيراً قدر المستطاع
- (6) يبدأ
- (7) بخير
- (8) بطريقة صحية
- (9) ملصقات
- (10) مدى الحياة

We all need to exercise for 30 minutes every day if we can. We should all get lots of exercise – that means mum and dad **as well as**<sup>(3)</sup> the children.

Try to walk, **cycle**<sup>(4)</sup>, swim or play games outside **as often as you can**<sup>(5)</sup>. Play together as a family and it will be more fun. If a child decides to **take up**<sup>(6)</sup> a new sport, send them to visit a doctor to check their heart first. They'll probably **be fine**<sup>(7)</sup>, but the doctor will need to do some tests to check.

Eat **healthily**<sup>(8)</sup> too. Show your children that they need to look at the **labels**<sup>(9)</sup> before they buy something. They mustn't eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or fat in it.

Eat well, do lots of exercise and you should have healthy hearts **for life!**<sup>(10)</sup>



## PART IV LANGUAGE

## must / have to

## 1 must

يجب أن / من الضروري أن / من اللازم أن

<b>Active Statement</b> الجملة الخبرية المبنية للمعلوم	<b>Subj. المفاعل + must / mustn't + inf. المصدر...</b> - I <b>must follow</b> the school rules. - You <b>mustn't drive</b> a car without a licence.
<b>Yes / No Question</b> السؤال بـ «هل»	<b>Must + subj. + inf. ...?</b> - <b>Must you speak</b> loudly all the time?
<b>(Wh-) Question</b> السؤال بأداة استفهام	<b>Q.W. أداة استفهام + must + subj. + inf. ...?</b> - What <b>must we do</b> when the traffic light is red?
<b>Passive Statement</b> المبنى للمجهول	<b>Obj. المفعول + must / mustn't + be + p.p. ...</b> - The school rules <b>must be followed</b> . - A car <b>mustn't be driven</b> without a licence.

## Brief Notes ملاحظات موجزة

١ يُستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد (must) :

- Students **must to follow** the school rules. (X)
- Students **must follow** the school rules. (✓)

٢ يُمكن استخدام (must) كإسم بمعنى (ضرورة / فُرْض) :

- Following the school rules is **a must**.
- Working hard is **a must to reach** your goals.

لاحظ استخدام (to) بعد (must) في المثال السابق لكن (must) هنا اسم وليست فعل.

٣ لا توجد صيغة ماضي لـ (must) للتعبير عن الضرورة وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم (had to) لتؤدى

نفس الغرض في الماضي :

- I **must take** my driving test yesterday. (X)
- I **had to take** my driving test yesterday. (✓)

كما يمكن استخدام تعبيرات بديلة في الماضي لتعطي معنى قريب من (must) مثل :

- It was necessary to + inf. ... .
- It **was necessary to take** my driving test yesterday.
- It was a necessity to + inf. ... .
- It **was a necessity to take** my driving test yesterday.
- It was a must to + inf. ... .
- It **was a must to take** my driving test yesterday.

**Mini Test 1**

● Apply

● \* Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A driver must ..... a driving licence.  
a. holds                      b. to hold                      c. hold                      d. holding
2. One ..... obey the law.  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. must be                      d. mustn't be
3. One ..... break the law.  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. must be                      d. mustn't be
4. The law ..... broken.  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. must be                      d. mustn't be
5. The law ..... followed.  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. must be                      d. mustn't be
6. Defending homeland الدفاع عن الوطن is a ..... .  
a. must                      b. necessary                      c. necessity                      d. a & c
7. In the past, people ..... hunt for food.  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. had to                      d. had

**Uses of "must"**

- تُستخدم (must + inf.) في زمنى المضارع والمستقبل فى الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن القوانين والقواعد العامة (وليس فى وقت محدد) :

ex. - Drivers **must wear** seatbelts.

٢ التعبير عن الالتزام الداخلى التابع من رغبة شخصية إذا كان الفاعل (I – We) :

ex. - I **must work** hard for the exams. (رغبتى الشخصية فى النجاح هى التى تفرض على ذلك)- I **must buy** a present for my mother tomorrow. (أمى لم تفرض على شراء هدية لها)- We **must buy** souvenirs for our friends here. (أصدقائنا لم يطلبوا هدايا)

٣ إعطاء نصيحة قوية (لشخص مُقَرَّب أو من طبيب لمرضى مثلا) :

ex. - You **must stop** smoking.- You **must wash** your hands before you eat.

٤ توجيه الدعوة بقوة (دعوة حارة لشخص مُقَرَّب) :

ex. - Sama, you **must come** to my birthday party tonight.- You **must come** and see us at the weekend.

٥ تُستخدم صيغة الاستفهام للانتقاد أو اللوم :

ex. - **Must you talk** while you are eating? (انتقاد سلوك غير مقبول)- **Why must you shout** at me all the time? (لوم أو عتاب)



## Uses of "mustn't"

- تُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) في زمنى المضارع والمستقبل فى الحالات التالية :

١ التعبير عن المنع أو التحريم (prohibition) أو عدم السماح (طبقاً للقوانين والقواعد والأعراف) :

- ex. - You **must not park** outside the entrance.  
 - You **must not make** loud noise after 9 o'clock.

٢ إعطاء نصيحة قوية (لشخص مقرب أو من طبيب لمرضى مثلاً) :

- ex. - You **mustn't waste** your time, son.

٣ التحذير من القيام بشيء قد يترتب عليه ضرر أو خطورة :

- ex. - You **mustn't tell** this news to anyone. It's a secret.

## Other ways to say "mustn't"

- هناك طرق عديدة للتعبير عن المنع / التحريم مثل :

1 - It isn't / legal قانونى / permitted مسموح + to + inf. مصدر ... .

= It is illegal غير قانونى / against the law + to + inf. ... .

= Subj. + be + not + allowed / permitted + to + inf. ... .

= (Inf. + ing) + be + (not allowed / against the law) ... .

ex. - It **isn't permitted (legal) to** park your car here.

= It is **illegal (against the law) to** park your car here.

= You **aren't allowed to** park your car here.

= **Parking** your car here **isn't allowed (legal / permitted)**.

= **Parking** your car here **is illegal (against the law)**.

2 - It is banned / prohibited / forbidden محظور / ممنوع + to + inf. ... .

= Subj. + be + banned / prohibited / forbidden + from + (inf. + ing) ... .

= (Inf. + ing) + be + banned / prohibited / forbidden ... .

ex. - It is **banned / prohibited / forbidden to** park your car here.

= You are **banned / prohibited / forbidden from parking** here.

= **Parking** your car here **is banned / prohibited / forbidden**.

### Mini Test 2

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A visitor to a hospital ..... smoke. It is banned.

a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. should                      d. shouldn't

2. A visitor to a hospital ..... stop smoking there. It is banned.

a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. should                      d. shouldn't

3. "You must come and have dinner with me." This is a ..... .  
 a. must                      b. necessity                      c. suggestion                      d. warm invitation
4. "You ..... stop taking this medicine until I tell you to do so," said Dr Mustafa  
 a. banned to                      b. must be                      c. mustn't                      d. don't have to
5. Having got a red card in the last match, you are ..... from taking part in the tomorrow's match.  
 a. permitted                      b. banned                      c. obliged                      d. licensed

## 2 have to / has to

يجب أن / من اللازم أن

<b>Active Statement</b> المبنى للمعلوم	<b>Subj.</b> الفاعل + <b>have to / has to + inf.</b> المصدر ... . - تستخدم (has) مع الفاعل المفرد والغائب (he - she - it) : - You <b>have to follow</b> the school rules. - Sama <b>has to pay</b> the electricity bill tomorrow.
<b>Negative</b> النفي	<b>Subj.</b> الفاعل + <b>don't / doesn't + have to + inf. ....</b> . - You <b>don't have to get</b> up early. We are on holiday. - Rodayna <b>doesn't have to buy</b> a pen. She has two pens.
<b>Yes / No Question</b> السؤال بـ «هل»	<b>Do / Does + subj. + have to + inf. ....?</b> - <b>Do they have to wait</b> for the manager? - <b>Does Ahmed have to attend</b> the meeting?
<b>(Wh-) Question</b> السؤال بأداة استفهام	<b>Q.W.</b> أداة استفهام + <b>do / does + subj. + have to + inf. ....?</b> - What <b>does Abdu have to do</b> to join the club?
<b>Passive statement</b> المبنى للمجهول	<b>Obj.</b> المفعول + <b>have / has + to be + p.p. ....</b> . - The electricity bill <b>has to be paid</b> .

### Brief Notes ملاحظات موجزة

⚠️ لاحظ أن نفي (have / has to) الشائع هو (don't / doesn't have to) وليس  
 : (haven't / hasn't to)

- Ahmed **hasn't to** get up early on Fridays. (X)
- Ahmed **doesn't have to** get up early on Fridays. (✓)



٢ في الإنجليزية البريطانية تُستخدم (have / has got to) مثل (have / has to) كالتالي :

- Rodayna **has got to check** the inbox every morning. (إثبات مبنى للمعلوم)
- Rodayna **hasn't got to check** the inbox every morning. (نفي)
- **Has** Rodayna **got to check** the inbox every morning? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- How often **has** Rodayna **got to check** the inbox? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- The inbox **has got to be checked** every morning. (مبنى للمجهول)
- تذكر أن صيغة الماضي من (have / has got to) هي (had to) وليس (had got to) :
- Malak **had got to borrow** money after losing her purse. (X)
- Malak **had to borrow** money after losing her purse. (✓)

٣ تُستخدم (need / needs to) مثل (have / has to) كالتالي :

- Yara **needs to take** a language course. (إثبات مبنى للمعلوم)
- Yara **doesn't need to take** a language course. (نفي)
- **Does** Yara **need to take** a language course? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- What **does** Yara **need to take** ? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- A language course **needs to be taken** by Yara. (مبنى للمجهول)
- تذكر أن (needn't) لا يتبعها حرف الجر (to) :
- Mum **needn't to go** shopping every day. (X)
- Mum **needn't go** shopping every day. (✓)

### Mini Test 3

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have ..... the baby.

- a. to feed                      b. feed                      c. to be fed                      d. be fed

2. The baby has .....

- a. to feeding                      b. feed                      c. to be fed                      d. be fed

3. .... to leave now ?

- a. Have you                      b. Have you got                      c. Do you have                      d. b & c

4. Ayman ..... to do all these jobs alone.

- a. hasn't                      b. doesn't have                      c. haven't                      d. don't have

5. Ayman and Ashraf ..... to do all these jobs alone.

- a. hasn't                      b. doesn't have                      c. haven't                      d. don't have

## Uses of "have to / has to"

١ التعبير عن الالتزام المفروض من الخارج (أى يوجد إجبار) مثل الالتزام بالقوانين والقواعد في مواقف محددة في زمنى المضارع والمستقبل :

ex. - I **have to pay** the bill الفاتورة or the internet service will be disconnected.

- My children **have to study** ancient history at school next year.

٢ تُستخدم (will have to + inf.) للتعبير عن شئ من المهم القيام به فى المستقبل :

ex. - The flight is at six in the morning, so we'll **have to get** up very early.

٣ تُستخدم (had to + inf.) كصيغة الماضى من (have to / must) للتعبير عن الضرورة والالتزام بصفة عامة فى الماضى :

ex. - Aya **had to cook** the family dinner yesterday. (إثبات مبنى للمعلوم)

- Aya **didn't have to cook** the family dinner yesterday. (نفي)

- **Did Aya have to cook** the family dinner yesterday? (سؤال بـ «هل»)

- What **did Aya have to do** yesterday? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)

- The family dinner **had to be cooked** (by Aya) yesterday. (مبنى للمجهول)

## mustn't & don't / doesn't + have / need to + inf.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (mustn't) و (don't / doesn't + have / need to) :

١ تعبر (mustn't) عن الإلزام (لا يجب - غير مسموح - ممنوع) :

ex. - Students **don't have to** make noise in the exam room. (X)

- Students **don't need to** make noise in the exam room. (X)

- Students **mustn't** make noise in the exam room. (✓)

٢ تعبر الصيغ التالية عن عدم الضرورة :

- **don't / doesn't have to + inf. ....**

- **don't / doesn't need to + inf. ....**

- **needn't + inf. ....**

ex. - Students **mustn't** get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (X)

- Students **don't have to** get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✓)

- Students **don't need to** get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✓)

- Students **needn't** get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✓)



### didn't need / have to & needn't have + p.p.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't + need / have to + inf.) و (needn't have + p.p.)  
 ١) تعتبر (didn't + need / have to + inf.) عن شيء كان الفاعل يعلم أنه ليس ضرورياً لذلك لم يقم به :

ex. - It was raining, so I **didn't need to water** the flowers.

(It wasn't necessary, so I didn't do that.)

٢) تعتبر (needn't have + p.p.) عن شيء لم يكن الفاعل يعلم أنه ليس ضرورياً ولذلك تم القيام به :

ex. - Ali **needn't have bought** meat. We have enough in the freezer.

(Ali didn't know that we have enough meat, so he bought more unnecessarily.)

#### Mini Test 4

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You ..... to renew your driving licence next month.

- a. have                      b. will have                      c. must                      d. a & b

2. I ..... to stay up late last night to look after my baby sister who was ill.

- a. have                      b. must                      c. had                      d. needn't

3. Mr Abdulrahman ..... to buy a tenth-generation laptop because his old one had become old-fashioned.

- a. had got                      b. had                      c. has                      d. have

4. You ..... smoke in a public place.

- a. mustn't                      b. must                      c. haven't to                      d. don't have to

5. You ..... buy a new pen. You can borrow mine.

- a. mustn't                      b. don't have to                      c. haven't to                      d. didn't have to

6. You needn't ..... out in this bad weather. You can get what you need delivered to your home.

- a. go                      b. to go                      c. have to go                      d. b & c

7. I knew I had enough time. So, I .....

- a. needn't have hurried                      b. needn't to hurry  
 c. needn't hurry                      d. didn't have to hurry

## Exercises On Language

● Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Exercises from Previous Exams

1. I ..... to wash my father's car; my brother had already washed it.  
(الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٣)  
a. don't have    b. didn't have    c. doesn't have    d. had
2. You ..... phone me at work. We aren't allowed personal calls.  
(القليوبية - غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. needn't    b. have to    c. need to    d. mustn't
3. Yesterday, I ..... stay at home with my little sister as my parents weren't out.  
(المنيا - شمالوط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. must    b. didn't have to    c. need to    d. had to
4. You ..... leave your luggage with someone you don't know.  
(المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. have to    b. mustn't    c. had to    d. don't have to
5. You ..... turn on the air conditioning; it's automatic.  
(القليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٣)  
a. has to    b. should    c. must    d. don't have to
6. At hospitals, we ..... speak quietly.  
(القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤)  
a. needn't    b. didn't have to    c. must    d. had to
7. I ..... pay the bill to get the internet service back.  
(الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. should    b. must    c. could    d. have to
8. You ..... try my sister's cake. It's really delicious.  
(المنوفية - اشمون ٢٠٢٤)  
a. needn't    b. need    c. must    d. mustn't
9. You ..... take a taxi to the station, I'll give you a lift.  
(الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. mustn't    b. can't    c. needn't    d. had to
10. If we don't pay much care for the environment, we ..... face a lot of problems in the future.  
(المنيا - مطاي ٢٠٢٣)  
a. needn't    b. must    c. will have to    d. should
11. I ..... go to a specialized hospital because I had a heart attack.  
(أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. have to    b. must    c. had to    d. didn't have to
12. It is ..... to turn off your electronic devices during the flight.  
(أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. should    b. necessity    c. have to    d. a must
13. You ..... get a ticket with your name on or you can't travel.  
(البحيرة - إدكو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. had    b. have to    c. must    d. needn't



14. You ..... take a taxi. I will take you in my car. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. must                      b. needn't                      c. don't have                      d. mustn't
15. You ..... all that bread yesterday. We had already had a lot of bread in the Fridge. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. didn't need to buy                      b. don't have to buy  
 c. needn't buy                      d. needn't have bought
16. I ..... walk to school yesterday as my friend gave me a ride. (الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. won't have                      b. had to                      c. didn't have to                      d. don't have to
17. I can easily hear you. You ..... shout. (الدقهلية - بلفاس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. mustn't                      b. needn't to                      c. don't have to                      d. haven't to
18. I..... send the report to the General Manager; he needed it urgently. (الدقهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. didn't have to                      b. don't have to                      c. had to                      d. mustn't
19. We didn't have a test today, so I ..... for it last night. (الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. needn't revise                      b. mustn't revise  
 c. needn't have revised                      d. don't need to revise
20. At my school, all the students ..... wear black trousers and blue shirts. They have the right to choose what to wear. (القاهرة - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. needn't                      b. have to                      c. don't need                      d. don't have
21. You are not late. You ..... hurry. (الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. had to                      b. didn't have to                      c. don't have to                      d. have to
22. Employees ..... accept the new conditions or they will be dismissed. (الغربية - قطور ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. will have to                      b. don't have to                      c. needn't                      d. can't
23. He set off early in the morning, so he ..... hurry. (الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. doesn't have to                      b. needn't to                      c. didn't have to                      d. mustn't
24. What a wasteful lady! She ..... more meat; she had a lot in the fridge. (القليوبية - ينها ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. didn't have to buy                      b. needn't have bought  
 c. should have bought                      d. could have bought
25. Nobody ..... to cheat during the exam. It is banned. (القليوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is allowed                      b. mustn't                      c. needs                      d. must
26. It was..... first aid. (المنوفية - الباجور ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. must to do                      b. must to doing  
 c. a necessity to do                      d. a necessity to doing

27. **A:** ..... it a must to attend the meeting last week ? (المنيا - مغافة ٢٠٢٣)

**B:** Yes, I had to be there.

- a. Was                      b. Did                      c. Had                      d. Will

28. .... you leave your dirty dishes in the sink? This is really annoying.

(المنيا - مَلْوَي ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Needn't                      b. May                      c. Ought                      d. Must

## 2 Check your understanding

29. We use the "....." for prohibition.

(القليوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٤)

- a. mustn't                      b. needn't                      c. hadn't to                      d. shouldn't

30. You must come and have dinner with me. This is a .....

(القليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٤)

- a. must                      b. necessity                      c. warm invitation                      d. suggestion

31. He mustn't park here as it is a (No Parking) area. This means that he .....

(المنيا - مَلْوَي ٢٠٢٤)

- a. parked                      b. didn't park  
c. isn't allowed to park                      d. will park

32. In which statement did the action not take place because it was not necessary?

(السوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. He shouldn't have taken a taxi.                      b. He didn't have to take a taxi.  
c. He needn't have taken a taxi.                      d. He mustn't take a taxi.

33. You mustn't eat things with a lot of fat or salt in them. The previous statement expresses .....

(السوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. something forbidden by law                      b. lack of necessity  
c. strong negative advice                      d. a necessity in the past

34. **A:** ..... I park here? **B:** No, you .....

- a. Can/may                      b. May/mustn't                      c. May /need                      d. Can/needn't

35. He needn't have written this long essay. This means .....

(الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)

- a. he was about to write a long essay.  
b. he had to write a long essay.  
c. he wrote a long essay.  
d. he didn't write a long essay.

36. Which of the following sentences is correct?

(القاهرة - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. You doesn't have to come early. You have a plenty of time.  
b. You don't have to come early. You have penalty of time.  
c. You don't have to come early. You have plenty of time.  
d. You needn't to come early. You have plenty of time.





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

boost (ed) (v)	يُعزِّز - يوطِّد - يدعم	immune (adj)	ذو مناعة - مُحصَّن
boost (n)	تعزير - توطيد - دعم	organ (n)	عضو (بالجسم)
cell (n)	خلية	viral (adj)	فيروسى - واسع الانتشار
immune system (n)	ال جهاز المناعى	virus (n)	فيروس

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

brain (n)	المخ	ordinary (adj)	عادي- معتاد
brilliant (adj)	بارع/ ذكى - لامع	perfect (adj)	كامل/ تام- ممتاز
champion (n)	بطل	persuade (d) (v)	يُفَيِّع
championship (n)	بطولة	persuading (n)	الإقناع
cough (ed) (v/n)	يسعل / يكح - السعال	persuasive (adj)	مُفَيِّع
course (n)	مقرر تعليمي	pleasure (n)	سعادة/ سرور
cover (ed) (v/n)	يُغَطِّي - غطاء	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
diet (n)	نظام غذائي	reason (n)	سبب
explanation (n)	شرح - تفسير	regular (adj)	مُنْتَظِم
flu (n)	إنفلونزا	regularly (adv)	بالتظام
improve (d) (v)	يُحَسِّن - يتحسن	remind (ed) (v)	يُذَكِّر
join (ed) (v)	يلتحق بـ - يُلصق إلى	separate (d) (adj - v)	منفصل - يفصل - ينفصل
label (n)	مُلصق	serious (adj)	خطير- جاد
lie - lay - lain (v)	يستلقي - يتمدد	sick (adj)	مريض
lying (n)	الاستلقاء / التمدد / الكذب	situation (n)	موقف
lung (n)	الرئة	support (ed) (n - v)	الدعم - يدعم
microscope (n)	ميكروسكوب	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
mistake (n)	خطأ		
muscle (n)	عضلة		

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>boost (v)</b> يُعزِّز - يوطِّد - يدعم	to help someone or something to improve or get better يتحسن
<b>cell (n)</b> خلية	the smallest separate part of a plant or animal منفصل

<b>immune system (n)</b> الجهاز المناعي	a way that your body protects you from disease المرض
<b>organ (n)</b> (بالجسم)	a part of your body that performs a job, e.g. the brain or heart
<b>virus (n)</b> فيروس	very small living thing that causes disease كائن حي

## Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

### • Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

- A/An ..... is a part of your body that performs a job, e.g. the brain.  
(المنوفية - قويسنا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. organ                      b. member                      c. cell                      d. infection
- The ..... system is the way that your body protects you from disease.  
(القاهرة - دار السلام ٢٠٢٣)  
a. infection                      b. immune                      c. virus                      d. boost
- A/An ..... is the smallest separate part of a plant or animal.  
a. sell                      b. organ                      c. immune system                      d. cell
- To ..... is to help someone or something to improve or get better.  
a. infect                      b. boost                      c. perform                      d. react
- A/An ..... is a very small living thing that causes disease.  
a. infection                      b. operation                      c. virus                      d. guidance

#### 2 Key vocabulary

- Greater consumer access to the internet has ..... the sale of electronic goods online.  
(السوان - كوم إمبو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. boasted                      b. boosted                      c. reduced                      d. decreased
- According to law, no one is ..... from legal punishment.  
(الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. immune                      b. respiratory                      c. prohibited                      d. allowed
- Some people agree to donate some of their ..... when they die.  
(الإسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)  
a. organs                      b. members                      c. organdy                      d. orchid
- You can see a/an ..... of an onion using a simple microscope.  
(كفر الشيخ - بياد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. cell                      b. immune                      c. virus                      d. organ
- A/An ..... can make a lot of people very ill.  
(دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. muscle                      b. orange                      c. virus                      d. brain
- Coronavirus "COVID 19" is a ..... disease.  
(كفر الشيخ - سيدى سالم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. bacteria                      b. viral                      c. viruses                      d. fungi
- COVID-19 attacks and destroys the ..... of the lungs.  
a. virus                      b. cells                      c. allowance                      d. bandage



## 3 Important Vocabulary

13. Remas is fluent and very ..... . She can make you do what she likes.  
(الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. helpful      b. cruel      c. aggressive      d. persuasive
14. Waleed paid ..... visits to his grandfather while he was ill.  
(القليوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. regular      b. regulate      c. regularity      d. regularly
15. You have to use your ..... if you want to solve this puzzle.  
(المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٣)  
a. drain      b. sword      c. brain      d. duty
16. I decided to go on a ..... before my holiday to look smarter on the beach.  
(المنيا - مطاي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. trip      b. business      c. deal      d. diet
17. I should have been here an hour ago, but ..... I missed the train.  
(المنيا - قُلُوبِي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. luckily      b. fortunately      c. unfortunately      d. lucky
18. Can you explain the ..... why the climate changes in the world?  
(المنوفية - طنوف ٢٠٢٣)  
a. reason      b. result      c. cause      d. effect
19. You shouldn't smoke, it is very bad for your ..... .  
(السيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٣)  
a. muscle      b. cell      c. surface      d. lungs
20. I strongly ..... the view that education should be available to everyone.  
(الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)  
a. support      b. risk      c. disrespect      d. disagree
21. She has one of the most ..... minds in the country. She's really one of a kind فريدة من نوعها.  
(القاهرة - مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. horrific      b. brilliant      c. horrible      d. a & b
22. The ..... on the packet shows the ingredients المكونات.  
a. champion      b. flu      c. label      d. diet
23. Cancer is a/an ..... disease.  
a. serious      b. flat      c. infected      d. gentle
24. He was ....., so he took two days off إجازة لمدة يومين.  
a. infection      b. disease      c. sickness      d. sick
25. It's normal for a person who has flu to ..... .  
a. operate      b. lock      c. cough      d. smell
26. You need to rest in bed if you have a bad ..... .  
a. champion      b. flu      c. label      d. diet
27. The heart is the ..... that does most of the work in the body.  
a. medicine      b. boost      c. muscle      d. hand
28. I'd like to get a clear ..... for your negative situation. I want to understand.  
a. allowance      b. explanation      c. performance      d. examination

29. The charger is a ..... piece of equipment attached with the mobile in the same package.

- a. separate      b. regular      c. persuading      d. persuasive

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلذزمات لفظية

<b>do</b>	exercise	يتدرب	<b>have</b>	flu	يعانى من الإنفلونزا
<b>get</b>	a cold	يصاب بنزلة برد	<b>make</b>	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
	a virus	يصاب بعدوى فيروسية	<b>sound</b>	perfect	يبدو ممتازا
	better	يتحسن	<b>stay</b>	calm	يظل هادئا
	enough sleep	يحصل على نوم كاف	<b>take/do</b>	a course	يأخذ دورة تدريبية

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
boost	يُعزِّز - يدعم
boost	يزيد - يروج لـ
brilliant	بارع / ذكي - لامع
persuasive	مقنع
improve	يُحسن - يتحسن
separate	منفصل
	improve, enhance, support
	increase, promote, publicise
	excellent, intelligent
	convincing
	enhance
	disconnected, isolated

### 3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
boost	decrease, hinder
brilliant	ordinary, common
find it hard to	find it easy to
improve	deteriorate, decline
persuasive	unconvincing
separate	connected, related
	يقلل - يعوق
	عادي
	يجد من السهل أن
	يتدهور - يتلاشى
	غير مقنع
	متصل - مرتبط

### 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

boost	
<b>boost (ed) (v)</b>	يُعزِّز / يوطِّد / يدعم
<b>boost (n)</b>	تعزير / دعم
	- The new hotel will <b>boost</b> tourism in our area.
	- The new hotel will be an important <b>boost</b> to tourism in our area.



immune	
<b>immunize/ise (d) (v)</b> [يُطعَم] ضد الأمراض - يُحصِّن	- This vaccine <b>immunizes</b> us against coronavirus.
<b>immunity (n)</b> المناعة - الحصانة	- This vaccine provides us with <b>immunity</b> against coronavirus.
<b>immune (adj)</b> ذو مناعة - ذو حصانة	- This vaccine makes us <b>immune</b> to coronavirus.
virus	
<b>virus (n)</b> فيروس	- This disease is caused by a <b>virus</b> .
<b>viral (adj)</b> فيروسي - واسع الانتشار	- This is a <b>viral</b> disease.

### 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as possible	بقدر الإمكان	living thing	كائن حي
come very close to	يدلو جداً من	move closer to	يدنو من / يقترب من
exercise regularly	يتدرب بانتظام	stays up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
get ill more often	يمرض كثيراً	such as	مثل
get sick from	يصاب بالإعياء من	think fast	يفكر بسرعة
in the first place	في المقام الأول	two-day course	برنامج تدريبي مدته يومان

### 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

fall down	يسقط / يقع	protect ... from / against	يحمي ... من
fight against	يكافح / يقاتل ضد	remember to	يتذكر أن
go out	يخرج	reply to	يرد علي
hear from	يسمع من (يتواصل مع)	stay up	يسهر
look forward to + (inf. + ing)	يتطلع إلي	talk to	يتحدث إلى / مع
		worry about	يقلق علي

### 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

#### boost - boast

- **boost (ed) (v)** يُعزِّز - يدعم - يُقوّي  
- Eating fresh fruit and vegetables **boosts** the immune system.
- **boast (ed) (v)** يفتخر - يتباهى - (يُفَسِّر)  
- He is a boring person. He **boasts** about his rich family all the time.

#### lie - lay

- **lie - lay - lain - lying (v)** يرقد / يتعمد - يكمن في - يقع / يوجد  
- He **lay** in bed to rest. (رقد / تمدد)  
- The problem **lies** in that he doesn't want to work hard. (تُكْمَن في)  
- Egypt **lies** in the north of Africa. (تقع / توجد)

• **lay - laid - laid - laying (v)**

يضع - تبيض - يُعدّ / يُجفّر

- He **laid** the glass carefully on the floor. (وضع)
- The bird has **laid** two eggs. (وضع البيض)
- Mum started to **lay** the table for lunch. (تعدّ)

• **lie - lied - lied - lying (v)**

يُخدّب - يُضللّ

- He **lied** when he said that his uncle is an ambassador. (سفير)

• **lie to + شخص**

يُخدّب علي

- Don't **lie to** your mother again.

• **lie about + شئ**

يُخدّب بخصوص

- He **lied about** his job. He is a driver, not a lawyer.

**organ - member**

• **organ (n)**

عضو من أعضاء الجسم

- The heart and the brain are the most important **organs**.

• **member (n)**

عضو (في فريق أو مجموعة أو نادي ... إلخ)

- The manager welcomed the new **members** of the staff.

**Exercise On Vocabulary study**

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You aren't allowed to enter. You are not a /an ..... in the club.

(الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. part                      b. individual                      c. member                      d. organ

2. We can achieve much by ..... than by using force. This is the modern approach.

(الشرقية - مشتول السوق ٢٠٢٤)

- a. persuade                      b. persuasion                      c. persuasive                      d. persuaded

3. My brother ..... the same mistakes as I did.

(الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)

- a. did                      b. returned                      c. tried                      d. made

4. "This advertisement will help boost the sales." "Boost" here is the synonym of .....

(القليوبية - بلها ٢٠٢٣)

- a. promote                      b. increase                      c. fail                      d. a & b

5. He was ..... on the sofa when I saw him.

(القاهرة - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤)

- a. lie                      b. laying                      c. lied                      d. lying

6. He was so tired that he ..... down under the shade of a tree.

(الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)

- a. lie                      b. lay                      c. laid                      d. lied

7. You shouldn't stay ..... late at night. You'll be ill. (الاسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)

- a. down                      b. up                      c. on                      d. forward

8. We should follow the precautionary measures الاحترازية or we'll ..... the virus.

- a. miss                      b. get                      c. play                      d. cause



9. Rodayna ..... a language course.  
a. made                      b. did                      c. stayed                      d. increased
10. We sat under a tree to protect us ..... the burning sun.  
a. with                      b. against                      c. to                      d. for
11. **A** : Do you find it ..... to work abroad ? **B** : Not in the least. It is interesting.  
a. hard                      b. hardly                      c. common                      d. persuasive
12. The exercise I have ..... is enough for today.  
a. stayed                      b. done                      c. made                      d. called
13. Don't ..... to others. People always appreciate those who tell the truth.  
a. lay                      b. lain                      c. lie                      d. laid
14. She looks forward ..... Paris for the first time.  
a. to visiting                      b. visit                      c. to visit                      d. visited
15. Try to keep away from direct sunlight ..... much as possible.  
a. by                      b. for                      c. as                      d. like
16. I'm worried about my brother in Italy. I haven't heard ..... him for ages.  
a. with                      b. that                      c. of                      d. from
17. It is important for a driver to think .....  
a. fastly                      b. fast                      c. quickness                      d. quiet
18. Your encouragement تشجيع has given me .....  
a. boost                      b. boosts                      c. a boost                      d. boosted
19. Some scientists think that people who have caught COVID-19 do not have complete ..... from catching it again.  
a. immune                      b. immunity                      c. react                      d. reaction

## PART III READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

Hi Fares,

How are you?

It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course next week! I really think you should join them because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will **injure**<sup>(1)</sup> themselves and you'll have to help them. You would want other people to help you too, **right**<sup>(2)</sup>?

(SB page 11)



(1) يصاب - يؤذي

(2) هل هذا صحيح

I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can **think fast**<sup>(3)</sup> and you know how to stay calm in difficult **situations**<sup>(4)</sup>, You don't have to become an **expert**<sup>(5)</sup>, just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The **two-day course**<sup>(6)</sup> your friends want to do **sounds**<sup>(7)</sup> **perfect**<sup>(8)</sup>.

Talk to you soon!  
Mahmoud

- (3) يفكر بسرعة
- (4) مواقف
- (5) خبير
- (6) دورة تدريبية مدتها يومان
- (7) يبدو
- (8) رائع / جيد

**To : Healthtoday@mail.com**  
**From : Shady@mail.com**

Dear Health Today,

My cousins, Imad and Munir, are visiting me again for a few days, and it's always a **pleasure**<sup>(1)</sup> to see them. **Unfortunately**<sup>(2)</sup>, because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget how important it is to **keep clean**<sup>(3)</sup> and **stay healthy**<sup>(4)</sup>.

At the moment, many people in my area have the **flu**<sup>(5)</sup> and so these things are even more important than **usual**<sup>(6)</sup>. What can I do to **persuade**<sup>(7)</sup> my cousins to change how they behave?

They often come very close to show me things, like photos they have taken on their phones or something funny that they have found. And when they **cough**<sup>(8)</sup>, they do not **cover**<sup>(9)</sup> their mouths. They don't seem to understand why it is so important and it worries me a lot.

I'm also worried when I see them come inside because I don't think that they always wash their hands after they have been playing outside, touching things and **getting dirty**<sup>(10)</sup>.

They will clean their hands when I ask them, but I always have to **remind**<sup>(11)</sup> them to do it.

I have heard that young children don't usually get very sick from flu and so they don't **give the flu to**<sup>(12)</sup> older people, but I don't know if that is true. Do you think that I am right to worry?

I **look forward to**<sup>(13)</sup> hearing from you.

Yours,  
Shady



(WB page 5)

- (1) سعادة - بهجة
- (2) لسوء الحظ
- (3) يحافظ على النظافة
- (4) يحافظ علي الصحة
- (5) نزلة البرد
- (6) معتاد / مالوف
- (7) يقنع
- (8) يكح - يسعل
- (9) يغطي
- (10) يتسخ
- (11) يذكّر
- (12) ينقل عدوى البرد لـ
- (13) يتطلع إلى



## 2 Listening Text

## The Immune System

Our **organs**<sup>(1)</sup> are the parts of our bodies that help us to do things, like the **brain**<sup>(2)</sup> that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The **immune system**<sup>(3)</sup> comes from the cells and organs that work together to **protect us from**<sup>(4)</sup> diseases.



The immune system does this by **destroying**<sup>(5)</sup> things that get into our bodies like viruses. A virus is a very, very small thing that causes a disease. The disease could be something **ordinary**<sup>(6)</sup>, like the kind of **cold**<sup>(7)</sup> we all get sometimes, or it could be something **serious**<sup>(8)</sup> like the COVID-19, which first appeared at the end of 2019.

When a virus **gets into**<sup>(9)</sup> a part of the body, a **message**<sup>(10)</sup> is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system **reacts**<sup>(11)</sup> by sending **cells**<sup>(12)</sup> to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, separate living things in our bodies and they are small enough to **fight against**<sup>(13)</sup> a disease.

Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be strong so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

We can **boost**<sup>(14)</sup> our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green **leaves**<sup>(15)</sup>. We also need to exercise **regularly**<sup>(16)</sup>. We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as **active**<sup>(17)</sup> as **possible**<sup>(18)</sup>.

We also need to **make sure**<sup>(19)</sup> that we get enough sleep. For most people that means **at least**<sup>(20)</sup> seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands regularly, which will help us to **avoid**<sup>(21)</sup> getting a virus or an infection **in the first place**<sup>(22)</sup>.

We also need to do things like **covering**<sup>(23)</sup> our mouths when we cough to stop other people getting an infection or virus.

(5B page 10)

- (1) أعضاء
- (2) المخ
- (3) الجهاز المناعي
- (4) بحمينا من
- (5) تدمير
- (6) عادي
- (7) نزلة برد
- (8) خطير
- (9) يدخل
- (10) رسالة
- (11) يستجيب
- (12) ظلياً
- (13) يكافح - يحارب ضد
- (14) يعزز
- (15) أوراق النباتات
- (16) بانتظام
- (17) نشيط
- (18) قدر المستطاع
- (19) يتأكد
- (20) علي الأقل
- (21) يتجنب
- (22) في المقام الأول
- (23) تغطية

## Exercises On Language



- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Step-by-step exercises

- He ..... tell me again. I can remember everything he said.  
a. doesn't have to                      b. haven't got to  
c. mustn't                                  d. needn't to
- Nada ..... buy a new tablet. Her old one is still very good.  
a. mustn't                      b. don't need to    c. hasn't got              d. doesn't have to
- My aunt was in hospital. I ..... visit her yesterday.  
a. had got to                      b. needn't                      c. must                      d. had to
- I've warned you before. You ..... play football in the street.  
a. don't have to                      b. needn't                      c. mustn't                      d. don't need to
- Ahmed can't come out with us this evening. He ..... work.  
a. need                      b. has to                      c. need to                      d. should
- He hasn't been asked to do more jobs, so I think he ..... to.  
a. don't have                      b. haven't got                      c. don't need                      d. hasn't got
- I'm sorry. You ..... bring your pet into school.  
a. haven't got to                      b. mustn't                      c. don't have to                      d. needn't
- It's a secret, OK? You ..... tell anyone else.  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. have to                      d. don't have to
- You aren't allowed to stop here. You ..... do that.  
a. don't have to                      b. needn't                      c. mustn't                      d. haven't got to
- I'm not deaf. You ..... shout.  
a. are not permitted                      b. are prohibited  
c. aren't allowed                      d. don't have to
- In most parks, you ..... walk on the grass.  
a. needn't to                      b. aren't allowed to  
c. don't have                      d. haven't got
- If you come to Britain, you ..... visit us. We'd love to see you.  
a. would                      b. must                      c. need                      d. ought
- He had to come early because it ..... necessary.  
a. is                      b. was                      c. will be                      d. had
- I ..... be at work at 8 a.m. or my boss will be furious.  
a. should have                      b. must                      c. need                      d. have to
- I ..... phone my friend this evening. I promised him I would.  
a. need                      b. have to                      c. should have                      d. must
- You ..... buy a pen. I can lend you one.  
a. don't have                      b. needn't                      c. don't need                      d. haven't to



17. We ..... forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.  
a. haven't got to    b. mustn't    c. should    d. have to
18. You ..... any more salt to the food. Now, we can't eat it.  
a. needn't have added    b. should add  
c. didn't have to add    d. need to add
19. We ..... give our homework to the teacher until next week. We still have time.  
a. mustn't    b. don't have to    c. should    d. need to
20. You ..... such a long essay. The teacher asked for 300 words and you have written 700.  
a. needn't have written    b. had to write  
c. didn't have to write    d. should have written
21. Here's your present. You ..... open it before your birthday! Let it be a surprise.  
a. don't have to    b. needn't    c. mustn't    d. don't need to
22. It's a holiday today, so we ..... go to school. However, the school library is open.  
a. don't have to    b. mustn't    c. have got to    d. have to
23. You can't turn right here. You ..... to turn left.  
a. must    b. have    c. has got    d. should
24. If you go to Egypt, you ..... forget to go to the Pyramids. They are great.  
a. don't have to    b. needn't    c. don't need to    d. mustn't
25. You ..... be noisy. Dad is trying to listen to important news.  
a. needn't    b. don't have to    c. mustn't    d. haven't got to
26. She's really a nice person. You ..... meet her.  
a. must    b. have to    c. have got to    d. need

## 2 Exercises from Previous Exams

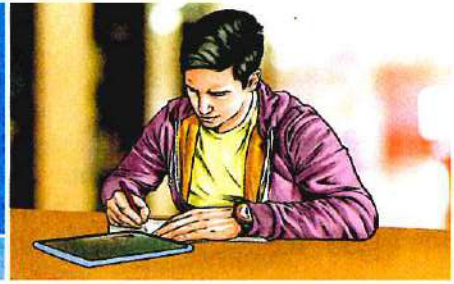
27. The airline ..... postpone the flight to Cairo last week owing to the bad weather. (سوهاج - أخصيم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. has to    b. had to    c. didn't have to    d. doesn't have to
28. The airline ..... postpone the flight to Cairo tomorrow owing to the bad weather.  
a. has to    b. had to    c. didn't have to    d. doesn't have to
29. It was not raining yesterday, so we ..... to take a taxi. (الحيزة - العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. don't have    b. have    c. had    d. didn't have
30. Since his car has been repaired, he ..... to go to Alex by train.  
a. has    b. had    c. didn't have    d. doesn't have
31. Since his car was being repaired, he ..... to go to Alex by train.  
a. has    b. had    c. didn't have    d. doesn't have
32. Since his car had been repaired, he ..... to go to Alex by train.  
a. has    b. had    c. didn't have    d. doesn't have
33. Your brother ..... get his passport before flying to the Netherlands. (الحيزة - العمرانية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. needn't    b. has to    c. needs    d. had got to

34. Your brother ..... get his visa before flying from Cairo to Aswan. It is an internal flight.  
 a. needn't                      b. has to                      c. needs                      d. had got to
35. We ..... wash these tomatoes. They have been already washed. (القاهرة - الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. must                      b. don't have to                      c. mustn't                      d. have to
36. We ..... wash these tomatoes. It is important to do so.  
 a. must                      b. don't have to                      c. mustn't                      d. needs to
37. She ..... come with us if she doesn't want to. (الأقصر - الزينية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. has to                      b. needn't                      c. mustn't                      d. must
38. She ..... come with us because she had a role to play.  
 a. had to                      b. needn't                      c. mustn't                      d. needn't have
39. I ..... see the head teacher. I want to discuss something with him. (السيوط - الفتاح ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. needn't                      b. don't have to                      c. mustn't                      d. must
40. I ..... see the head teacher. I have already discussed everything with him.  
 a. needn't                      b. don't have                      c. mustn't                      d. must
41. Using mobiles is prohibited here. You ..... use them. (القاهرة - مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. have to                      b. don't have to                      c. must                      d. mustn't
42. A visitor to a hospital ..... smoke. It is banned.  
 a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. don't have to                      d. needn't
43. We ..... talk together. It was an exam. (الاسكندرية - العامرية ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. mustn't                      b. didn't have to  
 c. weren't allowed to                      d. needn't

### 3 Check your understanding

44. Tomorrow is a public holiday, so you .....  
 a. mustn't get up early                      b. needn't have got up early  
 c. have to get up late                      d. needn't get up early
45. I wasted much money on that food. ....  
 a. I needn't buy it                      b. I needn't have bought it  
 c. I didn't need to buy it                      d. I didn't have to buy it
46. Which of the following best suits one of the written items of a law?  
 a. Students must wear the school uniform.  
 b. Students have to wear the school uniform.  
 c. Students need to wear the school uniform.  
 d. Students had to wear the school uniform.
47. Which of the following is most appropriate when you talk to a schoolmate who isn't wearing the school uniform?  
 a. You mustn't wear the school uniform.  
 b. You have to wear the school uniform.  
 c. You can wear the school uniform.  
 d. You needn't wear the school uniform.





تنويه للمزيد من اتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

PART I

LANGUAGE HINTS

stop + obj.

- stop + obj. يمنع .... من أن ... (inf.+ ing) + مفعول + stop + obj. مفعول + from + (inf.+ ing) + مفعول
- ex. - We must stop people from polluting the river.  
= We must stop people polluting the river.

stop + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

- stop + to + inf. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً
- ex. - On my way home, I stopped to buy some fruit.
- stop + (inf. + ing) يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم - أو مؤقت)
- ex. - My uncle has stopped smoking and his health is better now.

he or she versus they

- هناك أسماء وضمائر تستخدم كمذكر أو كمؤنث مثل:
- person - child - teacher - researcher - doctor - student ... etc.
  - someone - somebody - everyone ... etc.

وعندما نشير إلى أي من الأسماء والضمائر السابقة وما يشبهها بضمير يمكن أن نتبع أي من الطرق التالية :

1. استخدم ضمائر أو صفات الجمع التالية : (they - them - their - theirs)
2. استخدم ضمائر المذكر و المؤنث كالتالي : (he or she - him or her - his or her - his or hers)
3. استخدم ضمير المذكر فقط أو المؤنث فقط إذا كان المتحدث متأكداً من النوع :

- ex. - I hear a child crying. They may be hungry. Their mother must feed them.
- ex. - I hear a child crying. He or she may be hungry. His or her mother must feed him or her.

start / begin + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

- يأتي بعد (start / begin) المصدر مضافاً له (ing) أو (to + inf.) دون فرق في المعنى:
- ex. - He began working / to work for this company last year.
- لكن بعد (starting / beginning) نستخدم (to + inf.) فقط :
- ex. - I was starting to do my homework when the phone rang. (Not : starting doing)

## as

١. يُستخدم بعدها اسم يدل علي الوظيفة أو المرحلة العمرية أو الدور أو المظهر:

ex. - As a boy, he worked in a bakery.

- He works as a police officer.

٢. يأتي التصريف الثالث بعد (as) ويكون اختصاراً لجملة مبنية للمجهول:

ex. - He works hard as required. (= as it is required)

٣. تُستخدم (as) وبعدها جملة كرابطة بين الجمل بمعاني مختلفة:

ex. - She broke the cups as she was taking them to the kitchen. (= when /while)

- As he makes a lot of mistakes, he doesn't get good marks. (= Because)

## like

١. تُستخدم كحرف جر بمعنى (مثل / يشبه) مع أفعال منها :

(be / look / sound / feel / taste / seem / eat / drink / grow) ....

ex. - She looks like her aunt. - He eats like a horse.

٢. تُستخدم لإعطاء أمثلة بعدها بمعنى : (for example / such as)

ex. - Colours like green, pink, and red are suitable for you.

## Sentence adverb

هناك بعض الظروف التي يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغيير معني الجملة بالكامل ، و غالباً تُستخدم في بداية

الجملة مثل:

Fortunately/Luckily - من المحزن Sadly - من الغريب Strangely - لحسن الحظ

Interestingly - من المدهش Surprisingly - من المثير للإهتمام

ex. - Fortunately, I had enough money.

- Strangely, he agreed to help us.

## Verb + adj.

يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدون الموصوف بعد:

be - يعطي مذاق taste - يبدو sound - يبدو appear - يبدو seem - يبدو look - يكون

feel - يعطي رائحة smell - يعطي شعوراً أو ملمس

ex. - Ahmed looks happy. - He seems a nice boy. = He seems nice.

- Mum's food smells delicious.

## Exercise On Language Hints

● ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If there is emergency, call 123 and ..... will tell you what to do.

(الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٣)

a. he                      b. they                      c. each                      d. all

2. You must try this cake, it tastes ....., and I'm sure you will like it.

(بورسعيد - بورفؤاد ٢٠٢٤)

a. awful                      b. awfully                      c. delicious                      d. deliciously



3. The traffic policeman stopped me ..... in front of the bank.  
a. to park            b. from parking    c. parking            d. b & c
4. The child looked ..... with his new toy.  
a. happy            b. happily            c. happiness            d. happening
5. ...., my team lost the match.  
a. Sad            b. Sadness            c. Sadly            d. Saddened
6. Viruses ..... COVID-19 and SARS have caused thousands of deaths.  
a. as            b. like            c. such            d. as if
7. .... a student, you should study hard  
a. As            b. Like            c. Such            d. As from
8. Because she was hungry, she stopped ..... a cold drink and a snack from the supermarket.  
a. from buying    b. buying            c. to buying            d. to buy
9. She stopped ..... junk food because it is harmful.  
a. buy            b. buying            c. to buying            d. to buy
10. It will start .....  
a. to rain            b. raining            c. to raining            d. a & b
11. It is starting .....  
a. to rain            b. raining            c. to raining            d. a & b
12. A person should know what ..... goal in life is.  
a. his            b. her            c. their            d. our

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (اسلوب - ساجل سليم ٢٠٢٤)

If you want to be healthy and fit, you need to follow certain rules, whether you are a boy, a girl, young or old. People are advised to eat healthy food. It is really important if they want to be healthy. You don't need to go on a diet, just pay attention to what you are putting in your body. You can eat three meals a day or 5-6 meals a day. NEVER skip meals. Try healthy alternatives instead of having a bowl of ice cream, go for a frozen yogurt. Drink more water. This is the most important thing of all. If you drink more water, you will be much healthier because it gives your skin a healthy glow.

It's important to exercise more whether it's walking in the park or cycling. Do at least 20 minutes of physical activity several times a week. Exercise will make you stronger and strengthen your muscles. You can go to the gym and swim or run. Exercising will make you healthier and happier about your body. It also reduces stress and helps to calm the mind.

During teenage, you will find you need more sleep. It's tempting to stay up late chatting with friends on the phone or computer, but the next morning

you will be miserable. You need to get a minimum of 8 hours of sleep every night. It may be tough if you get back late and have to wake up early on a normal school day, but if you put things in the right way, you will be much more refreshed the next morning. This will help your concentration and you will be in a much happier and more friendly mood.

1. How many meals can we eat a day?
  - a. We can eat less than three meals.
  - b. We can eat only two meals.
  - c. We can't eat any meals.
  - d. We can eat more than three meals.
2. According to the passage, what do you need to be healthy?
  - a. To go on a diet.
  - b. To follow certain rules.
  - c. To neglect meals.
  - d. To drink little water.
3. What can you eat instead of ice cream?
  - a. 5-6 meals.
  - b. A kilo of meat.
  - c. A frozen yogurt.
  - d. Supper.
4. Why is water important to our bodies?
  - a. It gives your skin a healthy glow.
  - b. It makes you healthier.
  - c. It's useful for your kidneys
  - d. All of these.
5. The most suitable title for the passage is ".....".
  - a. How to keep healthy
  - b. Exercise makes us stressed
  - c. Good food and its effect on health
  - d. Less water is useful for bodies
6. What can exercising do to us?
  - a. It can reduce the peace of mind
  - b. It can give us stress
  - c. It can weaken our muscles
  - d. It can make us healthier and happier
7. The expression "pay attention" means .....
  - a. take care of
  - b. take off
  - c. take place
  - d. take turn
8. The synonym of the verb 'reduce' is .....
  - a. increase
  - b. decrease
  - c. strengthen
  - d. boost

## 2 Writing Tips - Persuading إرشادات خاصة بالكتابة - الإقناع

- عند محاولة إقناع شخص ما بالقيام بشئ ما يمكن الاستعانة بالأساليب التالية :

- **It's great that + جملة ...** إنه لشئ عظيم أن ...  
- It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course!
- **I really think you should + inf. ....** ... أعتقد فعلاً أنه يجب عليك أن ...  
- I really think you should join the course.
- **Everyone has to + inf. ....** ... يجب على الجميع أن ...  
- Everyone has to know how to do first aid.
- **You never know when + جملة ...** ... لا يمكنك أن تعلم متى ...  
- You never know when someone you know will injure themselves and you'll have to help them.



- **You would want ....., right?** إنك قد تريد أن ... هل هذا صحيح؟
  - You would want other people to help you too, right?
- **I'm sure you would + inf. ....** إلى متأكد أنك سوف ...
  - I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast and you know how to stay calm in difficult situations.
- **You don't have to + inf. ....** إنك لست مضطراً لأن ...
  - You don't have to become an expert, just learn enough so you can help someone.
- **..... sounds perfect.** إن ... يبدو رائعاً.
  - The two-day course your friends want to do sounds perfect.

### Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

#### Model email

- ✪ Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words to your friend John to persuade him to learn how to perform first aid. Your name is Ashraf and your email is ashraf@mail.com and your friend's email is john@mail.com.

**From:** ashraf@mail.com

**To:** john@mail.com

Dear John,

How are you ? I hope you are your best. I have heard they are starting a course in the local hospital to teach the citizens in the neighbourhood how to do first aid. I write this email to you to try to persuade you to join the course with me.

Perhaps you know it is great to learn a new skill that is very useful. I really think you should join the course. First of all, I would like to tell you why it is important to learn how to perform first aid.

Everyone has to learn this skill because they may need it one day. You never know when an accident happens. When accidents happen, there are people who are badly injured. Some of them may not be able to breathe. What would you do then?

Perhaps you would say that you would call the emergency services, right? Of course, you must call the emergency services. But what if the nearest emergency service centre is far away? What would you do then? Would you stand there doing nothing for the people that were dying because you could not help ?

I'm sure you would want to help. However, you can't help unless you know how to help. Performing first aid needs special skills you should learn. The first aid course is a golden chance you should never miss. By the way, the course is free. I hope very much that you would agree to join the course with me.

I'm looking forward to your positive reply.

Yours,  
Ashraf

## Writing practice

✪ Write an essay of about **ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words** on the following topic:

(المثيا - ملوئى ٢٠٢٤)

### "Keeping a healthy heart"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 3 Translation الترجمة

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Some people wrongly think that blood donation is something useful to the patient and harmful to the donor, so they are always afraid to donate their blood.

(الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)

- a. عن طريق الخطأ يعتقد بعض الناس أن التبرع بالدم شيء مفيد للمريض والمتبرع، لذا هم دائما لا يخشون أن يتبرعوا بدمائهم.
- b. يعتقد بعض الناس بشكل خاطئ أن التبرع بالدم شيء مفيد للمريض وضار للمتبرع، ولذلك دائما ما يخشون أن يتبرعوا بدمائهم.
- c. بعض الناس يخطئ باعتقاده أن التبرع بالدم شيء ضار للمريض وضار للمتبرع، ولذلك دائما ما يخافون أن يتبرعوا بدمائهم.
- d. يعتقد بعض الناس بشكل خاطئ أن التبرع بالدم شيء ضار للمريض ومفيد للمتبرع، ولذلك هم دائما ما يخشون ألا يتبرعوا بدمائهم.

2. Sports have become one of the most effective means of achieving peace and stability throughout the world. They also teach us noble values such as co-operation, patience and teamwork.

(الغربية - قطور ٢٠٢٤)

- a. لقد أصبحت الرياضة أحد الوسائل الأكثر فاعلية لتحقيق السلام والاستقرار في جميع أنحاء البلاد، كما أنها تُعلِّمنا قيماً نبيلة مثل التعاون والصبر والعمل الجماعي.
- b. لقد أصبحت الرياضة أحد الوسائل الأكثر فاعلية لتحقيق السلام والاستقرار في جميع أنحاء العالم، كما أنها تُعلِّمنا قيماً نبيلة مثل التعاون والصبر والحلول الفردية.
- c. ستصبح الرياضة أحد الوسائل الأكثر فاعلية لتحقيق السلام والاستقرار في جميع أنحاء العالم، كما أنها تُعلِّمنا قيماً نبيلة مثل التعاون والصبر والعمل الجماعي.
- d. لقد أصبحت الرياضة أحد الوسائل الأكثر فاعلية لتحقيق السلام والاستقرار في جميع أنحاء العالم، كما أنها تُعلِّمنا قيماً نبيلة مثل التعاون والصبر والعمل الجماعي:



3. If you seek to achieve more success in life, you are in need of a lot of determination. So, if you fail at the beginning, never lose hope or give up.
- a. إذا كنت تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح في الحياة، أنت بحاجة إلى الكثير من التصميم. لذا لا تفقد الأمل إذا فشلت في البداية واطلب النصيحة من الآخرين.
- b. إذا كنت ترغب في تحقيق المزيد من النجاح في الحياة، أنت بحاجة إلى الكثير من المجهود. لذا لا تفقد الأمل أو تستسلم إذا فشلت في البداية.
- c. إذا كنت ترغب في تحقيق المزيد من النجاح في الحياة، أنت بحاجة إلى الكثير من التصميم. لذا لا تفقد الأمل أو تستسلم إذا فشلت في البداية.
- d. إذا كنت تحاول تحقيق المزيد والمزيد من النجاح في الحياة، أنت بحاجة إلى الكثير من الصبر. لذا لا تفقد الأمل أو تستسلم إذا فشلت في البداية.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. يُعدّ تلوث المياه من أخطر القضايا التي تشغل عقول العلماء في الوقت الحاضر. هذا النوع من التلوث عادة ما يكون نتيجة للنشاط البشري في البحيرات والأنهار والمحيطات. (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Water pollution is one of the most tolerable issues of concern to scientists at the present time. This type of pollution is usually the result of human activities in lakes, rivers and canals.
- b. Water pollution is one of the most serious issues that occupies the minds of scientists at the present time. This type of pollution is usually the result of human activities in lakes, rivers and oceans.
- c. Water pollution is one of the most serious issues of concern to scientists at future time. This type of pollution is usually the result of human activities outside lakes, rivers and oceans.
- d. Water pollution is one of the most serious issues that occupies the minds of thinkers at the present time. This type of pollution is usually the cause of human activities in lakes, rivers and oceans.

٢. تختلف القدرات الجسدية والعقلية من شخص لآخر، وينبغي العمل على تنميتها منذ الطفولة. (الدهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Mental and physical abilities differs from one person to other and we should develop them starting from childhood.
- b. Mental and physical abilities differ from one person to another and they should be developed starting from infancy.
- c. Mental and physical skills differ from one person to other and they should be developed starting from infancy
- d. Mental and physical abilities differs from one person to another and they should develop them starting from childhood.

٣. تُسهم المشروعات القومية الكبرى التي يجري تنفيذها في كل أنحاء مصر في حل الكثير من المشكلات الاقتصادية، وتوفير فرص عمل للشباب الطامح إلى حياة أفضل. (القيوم - إطنسا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. The major international projects that are being implanted throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
- b. The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solve many economic problems and provide job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.

- c. The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
- d. The major global projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economical problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.

## PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط ◀

### 1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

#### boost

- **boost (ed) (v)** يُعزِّز - يُعشِّش - يُقوِّي  
 - The new decisions of the government have **boosted** the economy.  
 - The new advertisement will surely **boost** the sales. المبيعات
- **boost someone's confidence / ego** للاحظ التعبيرات التالية:  
 يُعزِّز ثقة ... بنفسه  
 - My father's encouraging words **boosted** Sama's **confidence**.
- **boost someone's morale** يرفع معنويات ...  
 - The first goal **boosted** the team's **morale**.
- **boost / boost up = raise (v)** يرفع / يرفع إلى أعلى  
 - The child wanted me to **boost** him to look out from the window.
- **boost (to / for) (n)** تعزير - إنعاش  
 - The tourist season is a real **boost** to the economy.  
 للاحظ التعبيرات التالية:  
 - provide / give a boost يعطي دفعة - get / receive a boost يتلقى دعم  
 - morale / ego boost دعم معنوي - دفعة معنوية

#### cell

- **cell** خلية (حيوانية / نباتية)  
 - Our bodies consist of a great number of **cells**.
- **cell** زنزانة (حجرة داخل سجن)  
 - The dangerous criminal was locked alone in a **cell**.
- **cell** جهاز لتوليد الكهرباء  
 - Some street lights depend on solar **cells**. الخلايا الشمسية
- **cell** تنظيم سرى صغير  
 - The police have arrested some terrorist **cells**. الخلايا الإرهابية



• **cell phone**

تليفون محمول (في الإنجليزية الأمريكية)

- The battery of my **cell phone** was empty, so I couldn't **call** you.

**immune**

• **immune (adj)**

لديه مناعة ضد - مُحَصَّن ضد (لا تُستخدَم قبل الاسم)

- He has caught smallpox **before**, so he is **immune** for life

• **immune response / reaction**

الاستجابة المناعية - رد فعل جهاز المناعة

- Because he is healthy, his **immune response** succeeded in fighting the virus.

• **immune (to / from) (adj)**

لديه حصانة ضد - لا يتأثر به (لا تُستخدَم قبل الاسم)

- Old people are sometimes **immune to** new ideas.

- Parliament members are **immune from** arrest.

• **immunity (to / from) (n)**

المناعة ضد - الحصانة ضد

- People who have got the virus before have **immunity to** it.

• **immunize (against) (v)**

يُحَصِّن ضد

- In Egypt, all children are **immunized against** infectious diseases.

• **immunology (n)**

علم المناعة

- He is expert in **immunology**.

• **immunologist (n)**

عالم متخصص في علم المناعة

- He is an **immunologist**.

**infect**

• **infect (ed) (with) (v)**

يُعَدِّي - يصيب بمرض ≠ disinfect يُعَقِّم / يَطَهِّر

- A lot of people have been **infected with** COVID- 19.

• **infect (ed) (with) (v)**

يلوث به (غالبًا تكون الجملة مبنية للمجهول)

- The vegetables from this farm are **infected with** harmful chemicals.

• **infect (ed) (with) (v)**

يُعَدِّي - ينتقل بالإبحاء

- Keep your children away from that bad boy. His bad behaviour will **infect** them.

• **infection (of / in) (n)**

عدوى - مرض مُعَدِّي

- He has a bad **infection in** the right eye.

**لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:**

- suffer from an infection

يعاني من عدوى

- get / develop an infection

يُصاب بعدوى

- treat / fight / combat an infection

يعالج / يكافح عدوى

- spread an infection

ينشر عدوى

- be exposed to an infection

يعاني من عدوى

- clear up an infection

يزيل العدوى / التلوث

- serious / severe / acute infection

عدوى شديدة

• **infectious (adj)**

ناقل للعدوي - مُعدِي

- Flu is an **infectious** disease.

• **infected (adj)**

مُصاب بالعدوي

- I didn't know I was **infected** until I had been examined by a doctor.

**virus**

• **virus (n)**

فيروس (كائن دقيق يسبب المرض)

- This **virus** does not infect people.

• **virus (n)**

فيروس حاسوبي (برنامج ضار)

- It was a **virus** sent in an email that destroyed my laptop.

• **virulent (adj)**

شديد العدوي

- Coronavirus is so **virulent**.

• **viral (adj)**

فيروسي

- She has a **viral** infection.

**لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:**

- carry a virus

حامل للفيروس

- get / contract a virus

يُصاب بفيروس

- be infected with a virus

يُصاب بفيروس

- be exposed to a virus

مُعرض للإصابة بفيروس

- pass on / transmit a virus

يعدي بفيروس

- a virus spreads

ينتشر الفيروس

- go viral

ينتشر بسرعة (على وسائل التواصل)

**2 Word Formation تكوين الكلمات**

**-ion / -ance**

تُستخدم النهايتان (**-ion**) و (**-ance**) لتكوين الأسماء من بعض الأفعال :

<b>-ion</b>		<b>-ance</b>	
<b>Verb</b>	<b>Noun</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Noun</b>
act يؤدي / يتصرف	<b>action</b> أداء - حدث	allow يسمح	<b>allowance</b> سماح - علاوة
infect يعدي - يلهب	<b>infection</b> عدوي	guide يرشد	<b>guidance</b> إرشاد
operate يُشغّل	<b>operation</b> تشغيل	perform يؤدي	<b>performance</b> أداء - عرض
لاحظ حذف حرف (e) غير المنطوق عند إضافة النهايات ( <b>-ion / -ance</b> )			



**Advanced Exercise** on Vocabulary

• ⚡ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- His strength as a politician ..... in that he is a good speaker.  
a. lies                      b. lays                      c. lain                      d. laid
- He was arrested because he joined a criminal .....  
a. severity                      b. organ                      c. muscle                      d. cell
- These children have been vaccinated تم تطعيمهم. They are .....  
a. immune                      b. immune people  
c. immune children                      d. b & c
- Ibrahim is really a good student. His energy and enthusiasm حماس have ..... all the students in the class.  
a. spoiled                      b. diseased                      c. infected                      d. a & c
- Once I tweeted the news, it went ..... It was retweeted by thousands of people.  
a. various                      b. viral                      c. infected                      d. infectious

**Advanced Exercise** on Language

• ⚡ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- You ..... to the office. It wasn't necessary.  
a. had to go                      b. needed to go  
c. needn't have gone                      d. have to go
- Policemen ..... wear a uniform. It is a rule.  
a. have to                      b. should                      c. need to                      d. must
- I ..... get up early on school days.  
a. mustn't                      b. have to                      c. don't have to                      d. must
- Owing to the fact that tomorrow is a national holiday, I ..... get up early.  
a. needn't to                      b. haven't to                      c. mustn't                      d. won't have to
- More money has been wasted. You ..... bought all these toys.  
a. can't have                      b. should have                      c. need have                      d. needn't have

# Test on Unit 1

تدوينه

\* التقييمات الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب  
\* تحريبات الأزهر الشريف  
بنك الأسئلة



● Understand

● Apply

● Create

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The immune system can ..... when there is a virus in the body.  
(الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)  
a. boast                      b. react                      c. provide                      d. revolve
2. Don't be strict all the time. You need some ..... to be able to adapt to different situations.  
(الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)  
a. sickness                      b. flexible                      c. sick                      d. resilience
3. I think he has got a/an ....., so he needs to rest.  
a. effect                      b. infect                      c. infectious                      d. infection
4. I am exhausted. I feel a ..... pain all over my body.  
a. sever                      b. severe                      c. several                      d. severity
5. We can ..... our immune system by eating fruit and vegetables.  
(أسبوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. boat                      b. boost                      c. boast                      d. post
6. Healthy food can help to support our ..... system.  
a. immune                      b. inheritance                      c. crop                      d. device
7. In a ..... essay, you try to convince the reader of your point of view.  
(الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٣)  
a. descriptive                      b. critical                      c. narrative                      d. persuasive
8. You ..... take photos here; it is a military area.  
(القاهرة - مصر القديمة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. needn't                      d. shouldn't
9. You ..... to pay to go to the museum. It is free to enter.  
(المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٤)  
a. must                      b. needn't                      c. don't have                      d. needn't have
10. I ..... get up very early on school days.  
(القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٣)  
a. have to                      b. mustn't                      c. needn't                      d. has to
11. The operation will ..... done under an anesthetic.  
(الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. needn't be                      b. must be                      c. have to be                      d. have had to be
12. She ..... worry about the traffic; she has plenty of time to get there.  
(المنيا - مغاغة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. has to                      b. needn't                      c. needs to                      d. mustn't
13. I missed the train this morning, so I ..... go to Alex by bus.  
(الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. has to                      b. had to                      c. didn't have to                      d. must
14. Believing it wasn't necessary, in the past football clubs ..... players' hearts.  
a. needn't check                      b. didn't have to check  
c. had to check                      d. needn't have checked







3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Experts believe that Egypt has the potentials to become a global hub for producing green hydrogen. It is a renewable source of energy that causes no pollution.

(الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يعتقد الخبراء أن مصر لديها القدرة على أن تصبح مركزاً عالمياً لإنتاج الهيدروجين الأخضر. إنه مصدر متجدد للطاقة ولا يسبب أي تلوث.
- b. يعتقد الخبراء أن مصر لديها القوة على أن تصبح مركزاً عالمياً لإنتاج الهيدروجين الأخضر. إنه مصدر متجدد للطاقة ولا يسبب أي تلوث.
- c. يعتقد الخبراء أن مصر لديها القدرة على أن تصبح مركزاً عالمياً لاستهلاك الهيدروجين الأخضر. إنه مصدر متجدد للطاقة ولا يسبب أي تلوث.
- d. يعتقد الخبراء أن مصر لديها القدرة على أن تصبح مركزاً عالمياً لإنتاج الهيدروجين الأخضر. إنه مصدر غير متجدد للطاقة ولا يسبب أي تلوث.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

يجب على العلماء ابتكار أساليب خلاقية لتوفير الغذاء لعالم متزايد السكان، فلم تعد الطرق التقليدية في إنتاج الغذاء فعالة ولا حتى كافية.

(الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Scientists must devise creative ways to provide food for a growing world. Traditional methods of food introduction are no longer effectively or even sufficient.
- b. Scientists mustn't devise creative ways to provide food for a growing world. Traditional methods of food production are no longer effective or even efficient.
- c. Scientists must advise creative ways to provide food for a growing world. Traditional methods of food production are no longer effective or even efficient.
- d. Scientists must devise creative ways to provide food for a growing world. Traditional methods of food production are no longer effective or even sufficient.

4. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think King Lear asked his daughters to show how much they love him?

(أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٤)

2. What does Cordelia represent in King Lear?

(الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)

3. Do you think King Lear was wise? Why? Why not?

(الإسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)

5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

(الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)

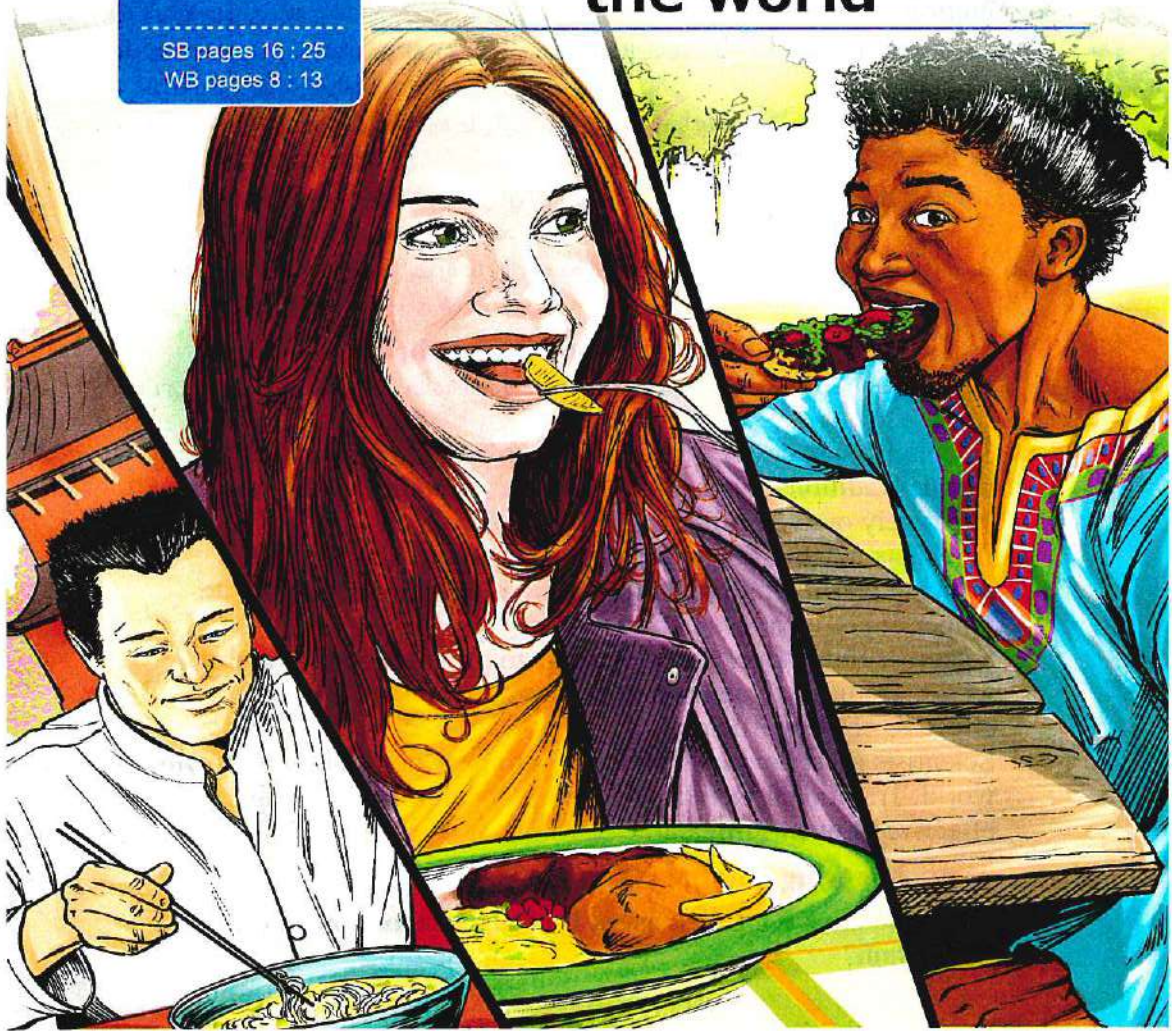
*Suggested ways to overcome the food shortage problem.*



# UNIT 2

SB pages 16 : 25  
WB pages 8 : 13

## Eating around the world



**Objectives :** \_\_\_\_\_ : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

❖ **Reading** : An excerpt from Aunt Jo's Scrap-Bag : An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving by Louisa M. Alcott; Two articles about ways of eating around the world

❖ **Writing** : A questionnaire on young people's food preferences

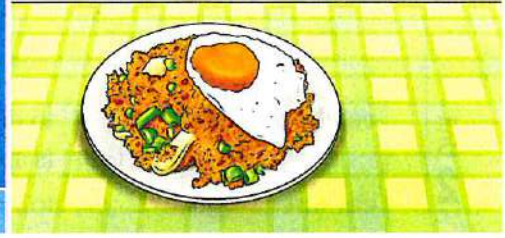
❖ **Listening** : Descriptions of international meals

❖ **Speaking** : Communicating opinions and beliefs

❖ **Language** : Comparative and superlative adjectives

❖ **Life skills** : Critical thinking; Respect for diversity; Negotiation





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amount (n)	كمية	prepare (d) (v)	يُعدّ / يجهّز
celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل بـ / يحيي مناسبة	rare (adj)	نادر
eat out	ياكل خارج المنزل	salty (adj)	مالح
expensive (adj)	غالي الثمن	serve (d) (v)	يخدم / يقدم طعام أو شراب
get together	يلتقى - يتجمّع	spicy (adj)	مُتبل - به توابل
occasion (ed) (n - v)	مناسبة - يُسبب	strong (adj)	نفاذ (ذو رائحة قوية)
popular (adj)	منتشر - شائع	traditional (adj)	تقليدي

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

cornbread (n)	خبز الذرة	prawns (n)	جمبري كبير - قريدس
curious (adj)	فضولي	pumpkin (n)	البقطين
curry (n)	(الكاري) [نوع من البهارات الهندية]	recent (adj)	حديث
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	roast lamb (n)	لحم ضأن مشوي
dessert (n)	(الحلوى) [بعد الوجبة]	roast (n/adj)	(لحم) مشوي
dish (n)	صنف من الطعام - طبق	roasted (adj)	مشوي - محمص
event (n)	مناسبات هامة - حدث	seafood (n)	طعام البحر
exist (ed) (v)	يوجد	shellfish (n)	الصدفيات - المحاريات
extract (ed) (n - v)	اقتباس - يقتبس	smell (n)	الرائحة
festival (n)	عيد - مهرجان	snow (n)	الجليد
fried (adj)	محمّر - مقليّ	survive (d) (v)	ينجو/ يبقى على قيد الحياة
gather (ed) (v)	يلتقي - يتجمع	sweet potatoes (n)	بطاطا
herring (n)	الرنجة	takeaway (n)	وجبات جاهزة
laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك - يقول ضاحكاً	Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر
native (adj)	محلي - أصلي	turkey (n)	الديك الرومي
old-fashioned (adj)	عتيق - قديم جدًا	vegetable (n/adj)	أحد الخضروات - متعلق بالخضروات
oysters (n)	المحار	whatever (adj)	أيًا كان / مهما كان
pie (n)	فطيرة		

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
amount (n) كمية	- a quantity كمية of something - how much of something there is



<b>celebrate (d) (v)</b> يحتفل بـ - يحيي مناسبة	to do something fun is special	مناسبة خاص
<b>eat out</b> يأكل خارج المنزل	to have a meal outside your home	وجبة
<b>get together</b> يلتقي	- to meet people and spend time with them - to meet with other people	
<b>occasion (n)</b> مُناسبة	a time when something special happens	
<b>prepare (d) (v)</b> يُعدّ / يجهّز	to get something ready for use	
<b>serve (d) (v)</b> يخدم / يقدم طعام أو شراب	to give someone food or drinks as part of a meal	
<b>traditional (adj)</b> تقليدي	following a way of doing something that has existed for a long time	موجودة

### Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

1. To ..... is to do something fun to show that an event is special.

(بنى سوفيف - الفشن ٢٠٢٤)

- a. repair                      b. get together      c. celebrate              d. eat out
2. A/An ..... is a quantity of something or how much of something there is.
- a. tradition                      b. amount              c. prawn                      d. option
3. To ..... is to have a meal outside your home.
- a. serve                              b. get together      c. celebrate                      d. eat out
4. To ..... is to meet people and spend time with them.
- a. prepare                              b. get together      c. celebrate                      d. eat out
5. A/An ..... is a time when something special happens.
- a. occasion                              b. amount              c. prawn                              d. option
6. To ..... is to get something ready for use.
- a. prepare                              b. get together      c. celebrate                              d. eat out
7. To ..... is to give someone food or drinks as part of a meal.
- a. cook                                      b. get together      c. serve                                      d. eat out
8. To be ..... means following a way of doing something that has existed for a long time.
- a. traditional                              b. personal              c. fried                                      d. simple
9. .... is a day when people in the USA and Canada give thanks to God for the good harvest and for health.
- a. Thanksgiving                              b. Celebration  
c. Sham El-Nessim                              d. The Big Friday

## 2 Key vocabulary

10. Which is the most ..... boy's name in your class? (السوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. healthy      b. immune      c. popular      d. athletic
11. Oysters are a ..... type of seafood in our area. They are not seen or found very often. (السوان - كوم ابو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. rare      b. rear      c. well-known      d. popular
12. The war against civilians has attracted an enormous ..... of public sympathy. (الاسكندرية - غرب الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. mountain      b. amount      c. immune      d. mount
13. The food is quite ..... but it's really nice. (المنيا - مفاغة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. tasty      b. delicious      c. expensive      d. tasteful
14. I'm meeting my old friends today on the ..... of Omar's wedding. (الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. tradition      b. occasion      c. funeral      d. b & c
15. In Greenland, it is a custom that men ..... a special meal of whale for women to enjoy. (البحيرة - الدلتجات ٢٠٢٤)  
a. surf      b. survive      c. serve      d. spend
16. Photographers are keen on taking photos of ..... (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)  
a. difficulties      b. celebrities      c. options      d. amounts
17. The two brothers have just finished their exams and have gone out to ..... (الجيزة - العجوة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. celebrate      b. reward      c. expect      d. report
18. My old friend and I often get ..... once a week. (القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤)  
a. up      b. in      c. together      d. away
19. In Spain, it is ..... to eat twelve grapes to welcome the New Year. (الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. tradition      b. traditional      c. occasion      d. celebration
20. I must ..... for the exams to pass them. (كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. prepare      b. survive      c. celebrate      d. trust
21. I got tired of .....; I miss homemade meals.  
a. serving      b. celebrating      c. getting together      d. eating out
22. The water in this lake is ....., not fresh.  
a. tasty      b. spicy      c. fried      d. salty
23. I can't help eating mum's ..... food.  
a. rotten      b. spicy      c. nasty      d. dusty
24. Healthy food makes us ..... and fit.  
a. stressed      b. weak      c. bad      d. strong

## 3 Important vocabulary

25. Science gives us hope that many diseases will not ..... in our future world. (الجيزة - العجوة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. damage      b. disappear      c. exist      d. cure



26. The new student at our class isn't rich, so he wears ..... clothes.  
(الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Luxurious      b. old-fashioned      c. splendid      d. recent
27. She speaks French fluently, but it isn't her ..... language.  
(القليوبية - غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. foreign      b. native      c. modern      d. dead
28. Our parents are very ..... about the food we eat.  
(المنوفية - أشمون ٢٠٢٤)  
a. curious      b. complicated      c. ignorant      d. careless
29. Of the six people injured in the crash, only two .....  
a. survived      b. served      c. existed      d. ate out
30. Some ..... from trees, like cinnamon, can be used as drinks.  
a. constructs      b. abstracts      c. distracts      d. extracts
31. The 6<sup>th</sup> October Victory is a great ..... in our contemporary history.  
a. series      b. accident      c. event      d. episode
32. We have a vegetable garden in our house. In this sentence, the word "vegetable" is a/an .....  
(السوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. noun      b. adverb      c. adjective      d. determiner
33. The boys ..... at nine to watch the match at the café.  
a. roasted      b. existed      c. gathered      d. fried
34. To ..... meat is to cook it without liquid in an oven.  
a. roast      b. exist      c. gather      d. wake
35. This chef has created this delicious .....  
a. bowl      b. pot      c. dish      d. plate
36. Fish, shellfish and oysters are .....  
a. seabed      b. seafood      c. sea level      d. sea life
37. A: How do you like your fish, Sir? B: ....., please.  
a. Fry      b. Fried      c. Frying      d. Grilling
38. A/An ..... is a type of shellfish that can be eaten, and that produces a jewel called a pearl اللؤلؤ.  
a. oyster      b. pie      c. pumpkin      d. cornbread

PART II

VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>bring</b>	good luck	يجلب الحظ السعيد	<b>get</b>	together	يلتقي - يتجمّع
<b>do</b>	something fun	يقوم بشيء مبهج	<b>make</b>	noise	يحدث ضجيجا
<b>fall</b>	asleep	يستغرق بالنوم	<b>serve</b>	the food	يقدم الطعام
<b>have</b>	... for dessert	يأكل ... كطوي	<b>spend</b>	time with	يقضي وقتا مع
	a meal	يتناول وجبة	<b>take</b>	place	تخذت
	whatever we liked	نحصل على ما نشاء			

## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
delicious	لذيذ	tasty, mouthwatering
gather	يلتقي - يجمع	collect, crowd, meet up, get together
old-fashioned	عتيق - قديم جدًا	traditional, conventional, outdated
popular	منتشر - شائع	famous, renowned
rare	نادر	unique, scarce, uncommon
traditional	تقليدي	conventional, customary, old-fashioned

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)
delicious	لذيذ	tasteless بلا طعم
gather	يلتقي - يجمع	scatter يلتشر
old-fashioned	عتيق - قديم جدًا	modern, fashionable, new حديث - على الموضة
popular	منتشر - شائع	unknown, unpopular, obscure غير معروف
rare	نادر	ordinary, usual, common عادي/شائع
traditional	تقليدي	unconventional, modern, novel غير تقليدي - حديث

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

celebrate		
<b>celebrate (d) (v)</b>	يحتفل بـ - يُخي مناسبة (v)	- We <b>celebrated</b> Sama's success yesterday.
<b>celebration (n)</b>	احتفال	- We gave a <b>celebration</b> on the occasion of Sama's success yesterday.
<b>celebrity (n)</b>	شخص مشهور	- Mohammed Salah is a football <b>celebrity</b> .
<b>celebrated (adj)</b>	مشهور	- Mohammed Salah is a <b>celebrated</b> footballer.
occasion		
<b>occasion (ed) (v)</b>	يُسبب	- Your success has <b>occasioned</b> us real happiness.
<b>occasion (n)</b>	مناسبة	- We were really happy on the <b>occasion</b> of your success.
<b>occasional (adj)</b>	متقطع - عابر	- I pay my uncle <b>occasional</b> visits.
<b>occasionally (adv)</b>	أحياناً	- I <b>occasionally</b> visit my uncle.



prepare		
prepare (d) (v)	يُعدّ / يجهّز	- I <b>prepared</b> well for my presentation.
preparation (n)	تجهيز - تحضير	- I made good <b>preparations</b> for my presentation.
prepared (adj)	مُعدّ - مستعد - جاهز	- I was <b>well-prepared</b> for my presentation.

### 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a bit worried about	فَلِق قَلِيلاً عَلِي	it's a lot like	إنه يشبه كثيرًا
a Thanksgiving dinner	عشاء عيد الشكر	late at night	في وقت متأخر من الليل
all the time	طوال الوقت	me too	وأنا أيضًا
almost all	تقريبًا كل	Native Americans	سكان أمريكا الأصليين
almost none	تقريبًا لا أحد / لا شيء	on different occasions	في مناسبات مختلفة
at a time	في القَرّة الواحدة	on the menu	في القائمة
at least	علي الأقل	on the side of	علي جانب
at Thanksgiving	في عيد الشكر	ready to/for	جاهز/مستعد لـ
be curious about	يشعر بالفضول / لديه حب استطلاع بخصوص	that sounds great	ذلك يبدو عظيمًا
get ... ready	يجهز شيئًا ما	there's such a lot to do	لدينا الكثير لنقوم به
I can't wait!	أنتظر بفارغ الصبر	visit ... for Thanksgiving	يزور ... في عيد الشكر
in different colours	بالوان مختلفة	with help from	بمساعدة من
in fact,	في الحقيقة		

### 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

belong to	يخص - ينتمي إلى	keep out of	يتعد عن الطريق
catch up with	ينضم إلى / يتواصل مع - يلحق بـ	look after	يرعى - يعتني بـ
choose to	يختار أن	look like	يشبه
choose from	يختار من بين	tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
dig .... out of	يستخرج ... من	wait for	يلتظر

### 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

#### amount – quantity – level

- **amount (n)** كمية / مقدار (من شيء ما)  
- The doctor advised me to reduce the **amount** of salt in my food.
- **quantity (n)** كمية / مقدار محدد من شيء ما (تستخدم غالبًا في الأوامر والتعليمات المكتوبة)  
- Add the right **quantity** of salt to your food.
- **level (n)** مستوي أو نسبة محددة من شيء ما  
- I want to measure **the level** of cholesterol in my blood.

### decide – (to/on/that)

- **decide to + inf.** (يقدر أن - يتخذ قرارًا بأن (+ مصدر الفعل))
  - We **decided to spend** the mid-year holiday in Aswan.
- **decide that + subj. + verb** (يقدر أن - يتخذ قرارًا بأن (+ جملة))
  - We **decided that we will spend** the mid-year holiday in Aswan.
- **decide on + (n) / (inf. + ing)** (يختار (+ اسم))
  - We **decided on Aswan** to spend the mid-year holiday in.
  - = We **choose Aswan** to spend the mid-year holiday in.

### event - occasion - opportunity

- **event (n)** حدث هام / مناسبة هامة
  - The match between Al Ahly and Zamalek is the main **event** this week.
- **occasion (n)** مناسبة اجتماعية أو احتفال
  - Sham El-Nessim is an important **occasion**.
- **opportunity / chance (n)** فرصة
  - Go and talk to the manager. Don't miss the **opportunity**.

### traditional - old-fashioned - modern

- **traditional (adj)** تقليدي / تراثي (قد يكون مقبول أو غير مقبول الآن)
  - Bedouins البدو still wear **traditional** clothes.
  - I don't like his **traditional** way of thinking.
- **old-fashioned (adj)** عتيق الطراز / عفا عليه الزمن (لم يعد مقبولاً أو مُفضلاً الآن)
  - She looks strange in her **old-fashioned** dress.
- **modern (adj)** عصري - حديث
  - The mobile is a **modern** invention.

### serve - surf

- **serve (d) (v)** يخدم / يقدم (طعام أو شراب)
  - She is trained to **serve** meals in five-star hotels.
- **surf (ed) (v)** يركب الأمواج (علي اللوح)
  - You need a lot of training to be able to **surf** safely.
- **surf (ed) (v)** يتصفح (الإنترنت)
  - Don't waste your time in **surfing** the Net.

## Exercise On Vocabulary study

- ⚙️ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My cousin ..... visits me in my distant village.

(العربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. occasion      b. occasionally      c. occasional      d. regular



2. My little sisters ..... asleep during the film. (الاسكندرية - المنزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)  
a. filled                      b. fell                      c. fail                      d. feels
3. Let's ..... together this weekend. It would be nice to see you!  
(البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. go                      b. come                      c. get                      d. do
4. Make sure you have added the correct ..... of water to the food recipe.  
(الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. quality                      b. number                      c. equality                      d. quantity
5. A meal that is 'delicious' is .....  
a. tasteless                      b. tasty                      c. hot                      d. chilli
6. "Luxor and Aswan are popular tourist attractions." This means that Luxor and Aswan are not .....  
a. unknown                      b. well-known                      c. famous                      d. familiar
7. Something that is traditional is .....  
a. fashionable                      b. modern                      c. conventional                      d. unconventional
8. The accident ..... place in front of the cinema.  
a. got                      b. brought                      c. made                      d. took
9. The food ..... in this restaurant is nice.  
a. fallen                      b. spent                      c. served                      d. done
10. Your company ضحبة ..... me good luck.  
a. goes                      b. brings                      c. makes                      d. takes
11. Sama laughs loudly whenever her brother ..... something fun.  
a. spends                      b. uses                      c. gets                      d. does
12. This machine used to ..... loud noise.  
a. get                      b. bring                      c. make                      d. take
13. He pays me ..... visits in my distant farmhouse.  
a. occasion                      b. occasional                      c. occasionally                      d. regularly
14. You must have at ..... five years' experience to get the job.  
a. least                      b. last                      c. list                      d. lost
15. Farmers dig potatoes ..... the earth.  
a. for                      b. out                      c. of                      d. out of
16. **A:** You will meet all your close friends tomorrow. - **B:** I can't wait!  
This means that 'B' ..... his / her close friends.  
a. doesn't want to meet                      b. doesn't like  
c. wants very much to meet                      d. isn't yet ready to meet
17. He still finds himself a stranger who does not belong ..... this place or these people.  
a. to                      b. for                      c. into                      d. a & b
18. You have three colours to choose .....  
a. of                      b. from                      c. for                      d. to

## 1 Reading Texts

**An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving** (SB page 17)

In September 1620, a ship called the Mayflower arrived in North America with 102 passengers<sup>(1)</sup>. Many<sup>(2)</sup> died, but some<sup>(3)</sup> were able to grow food and survive<sup>(4)</sup> with help from Native<sup>(5)</sup> Americans.

Thanksgiving<sup>(6)</sup> is a day when families get together<sup>(7)</sup> to remember these events<sup>(8)</sup>. It is celebrated<sup>(9)</sup> in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.



In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called An Old-Fashioned<sup>(10)</sup> Thanksgiving. Here is an extract<sup>(11)</sup>:

When they woke<sup>(12)</sup>, there was still a large amount of<sup>(13)</sup> snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

“Now, about dinner,” she said as they all finished eating. “Ma<sup>(14)</sup> said that we could have whatever we liked,<sup>(15)</sup> but she didn’t expect us to have a traditional<sup>(16)</sup> Thanksgiving dinner.”

“Have you ever cooked a turkey<sup>(17)</sup>?” asked Roxy.

“Ma said I should decide what to do,” replied Tilly. All you children have to do is keep out of the way<sup>(18)</sup>, and let<sup>(19)</sup> Prue and me work.”

The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare<sup>(20)</sup> the big meal,<sup>(21)</sup> they got out all the spoons<sup>(22)</sup>, dishes, pots<sup>(23)</sup> and pans that they could find.

“Now, sister, we’ll have dinner at five,” said Tilly. “Pa<sup>(24)</sup> will be here by that time<sup>(25)</sup> and he’ll be surprised to find us ready to serve<sup>(26)</sup> the food. There’s such a lot to do, and I’m a bit<sup>(27)</sup> worried about the turkey. It’s so big!”

“I know,” said Prue. “I fed<sup>(28)</sup> it all summer and now it will feed me,” she laughed<sup>(29)</sup>.

- (1) المسافرين
- (2) الكيرون
- (3) البعض
- (4) يبقى حيًا
- (5) محلي-أصلي
- (6) عيد الشكر
- (7) يلتقي
- (8) مناسبات هامة
- (9) يحتفل
- (10) عتيق
- (11) اقتباس
- (12) استيقظوا
- (13) كمية كبيرة من
- (14) أمي
- (15) كل ما نشاء
- (16) تقليدي
- (17) الديك الرومي
- (18) يغادر المكان
- (19) يترك / يدع
- (20) يُعد
- (21) وجبة
- (22) ملاعق
- (23) إناء
- (24) أبي
- (25) قبل ذلك الوقت
- (26) يقدم
- (27) قليلاً
- (28) أطعم
- (29) ضحك



## New Year Celebrations around the World

(WB page 8)

As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to **celebrate**<sup>(1)</sup> the **start**<sup>(2)</sup> of the New Year with special food. However, different countries eat very different things to enjoy the **occasion**<sup>(3)</sup>.

In Mexico, for example, many people **eat out**<sup>(4)</sup> at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day. The most popular **dish**<sup>(5)</sup> is always **tamales**<sup>(6)</sup>, which is made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

However, when the New Year arrives in Japan, people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they **get together**<sup>(7)</sup> with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate.

In Spain, it is **traditional**<sup>(8)</sup> to eat twelve **grapes**<sup>(9)</sup> to welcome the New Year. The Spanish people eat this **particular**<sup>(10)</sup> **amount**<sup>(11)</sup> of grapes **late at night**<sup>(12)</sup>, when the clock reaches **midnight**<sup>(13)</sup>, or twelve o'clock, and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.

In Poland, people start to **prepare**<sup>(14)</sup> a fish called '**herring**'<sup>(15)</sup> at **least**<sup>(16)</sup> five days before they eat it. They put the fish in a jar with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.

Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of **whale**<sup>(17)</sup> for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and people say the **smell**<sup>(18)</sup> is very **strong**<sup>(19)</sup>.

- (1) يحتفل بـ
- (2) بداية
- (3) مناسبة
- (4) يأكل خارج المنزل
- (5) صنف من الطعام
- (6) تاماليس (وجبة مكسيكية)
- (7) يلتقي - يتجمع
- (8) تقليدي
- (9) العنب
- (10) فعيّن
- (11) كم - مقدار
- (12) في وقت متأخر من الليل
- (13) منتصف الليل
- (14) يُعد
- (15) الرنجة
- (16) علي الأقل
- (17) الحوت
- (18) الرائحة
- (19) نفاذه

## 2 Listening Texts



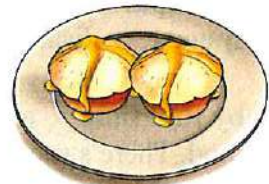
(SB page 17)

### A Thanksgiving invitation

**Amy** : So, did you ask your parents about visiting our home for Thanksgiving, Hoda?

**Hoda** : Yes. They like me to try new things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very **curious**<sup>(1)</sup> about the food you eat.

**Amy** : You'll love the food at Thanksgiving, Hoda. Have you had turkey before? It's a **lot like**<sup>(2)</sup> chicken but it's very big.



- (1) فضولي
- (2) يشبه كثيرا

**Hoda** : Well, I like chicken, so that should be okay. What **else**<sup>(3)</sup> do you have?

**Amy** : We have a **special**<sup>(4)</sup> kind of bread, called **cornbread**<sup>(5)</sup>. It's **delicious**<sup>(6)</sup>. And we have **sweet potatoes**<sup>(7)</sup>. They're like **normal**<sup>(8)</sup> potatoes, but much nicer.

**Hoda** : That sounds great. What do you have for **dessert**<sup>(9)</sup> ?

**Amy** : My mum makes the most wonderful **pumpkin**<sup>(10)</sup> **pie**<sup>(11)</sup>. It's very sweet and **heavy**<sup>(12)</sup>. Sometimes I **fall asleep**<sup>(13)</sup> after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too much.

**Hoda** : Now, I'm feeling hungry.

**Amy** : Me too. But the best thing about Thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to meet and **catch up with**<sup>(14)</sup> friends and family. **That's why**<sup>(15)</sup> we're all really looking forward to seeing you.

**Hoda** : Great. I can't wait!

- (3) أيضا
- (4) خاص - مميز
- (5) خبز الذرة
- (6) لذيذ
- (7) بطاطا
- (8) عادي
- (9) الحلوى
- (10) اليقطين
- (11) فطيرة
- (12) كثيف
- (13) يستغرق في النوم
- (14) ينضم إلى
- (15) لهذا السبب

## Meals from around the world

### Nasi goreng

**Nasi goreng**<sup>(1)</sup> is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words 'nasi goreng' mean '**fried**<sup>(2)</sup> rice' in **Indonesian**<sup>(3)</sup>. Many people believe that Nasi goreng is one of the **spiciest**<sup>(4)</sup> meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's **simply**<sup>(5)</sup> the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by **frying**<sup>(6)</sup> rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or **prawns**<sup>(7)</sup> to the pan. It's a bit **saltier**<sup>(8)</sup> than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually **cheaper**<sup>(9)</sup> than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it **either**<sup>(10)</sup> in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.



(SB page 18)

- (1) نازي جورينج (أكلة الإندونيسية)
- (2) محفّر
- (3) اللغة الإندونيسية
- (4) الأكثر تبيلاً
- (5) ببساطة
- (6) تحمير
- (7) جمبري كبير - فريديس
- (8) أكثر ملوحة
- (9) أرخص
- (10) إما



## Oysters

**Oysters**<sup>(1)</sup> are a type of **shellfish**<sup>(2)</sup> that people **dig**<sup>(3)</sup> out of the earth under the sea. They're **rarer**<sup>(4)</sup> than most other types of **seafood**<sup>(5)</sup> and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the **menu**<sup>(6)</sup> in **French**<sup>(7)</sup> restaurants.

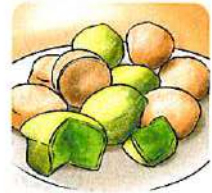


- (1) المآثر
- (2) الصدفيات
- (3) يستخرج بالحفر
- (4) أكثر ندرة
- (5) طعام البحر
- (6) قائمة طعام
- (7) فرنسي

## Mochi

**Mochi**<sup>(1)</sup> are sweet, **round**<sup>(2)</sup> rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most **popular**<sup>(3)</sup> type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good **luck**.<sup>(4)</sup>

Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions. For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, **flat**,<sup>(5)</sup> white mochi is the most popular type of mochi to eat.



- (1) موشني (طوي يابانية)
- (2) مستديرة
- (3) منتشر - شائع
- (4) الحظ
- (5) مستو - مسطح

## Food in the UK

The UK did not used to be **known for**<sup>(1)</sup> its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and **chips**<sup>(2)</sup>.

The fish and potatoes are fried and they are usually very salty. Fish and chips is usually cheaper than most other **takeaway food**<sup>(3)</sup>, too. **The British**<sup>(4)</sup> also like spicy food. **Indian**<sup>(5)</sup> food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular.

One of the most traditional dishes in the UK is **roast**<sup>(6)</sup> **lamb**<sup>(7)</sup>, which people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice creams. They **mostly**<sup>(8)</sup> eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.



(WB page 9)

- (1) مشهور بـ
- (2) رقائق البطاطس
- (3) الوجبات السريعة
- (4) البريطانيون
- (5) هندي
- (6) مشوي
- (7) لحم الضأن
- (8) في الغالب

## 1

## Adjectives

## الصفات

١ الصفة هي كلمة نصف اسم و تأتي غالباً قبله :

- ex. - He bought an **expensive mobile** yesterday.  
- I saw a **frightening animal** in the fields.

٢ يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدون الموصوف بعد الأفعال التقريرية مثل :

- be - look يبدو - **appear** يبدو - **sound** يبدو - **taste** يعطي مذاق - يبدو **seem** يبدو - يبدو **look**  
feel ..... يعطي رائحه **smell** - يعطي شعوراً أو ملمس **feel**

- ex. - Leen **felt cold**. - Ahmed **looks happy**.  
- Mum's food **smells delicious**.

٣ الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقاً :

- afraid** حي **alive** - فضاء **alight** - وحيد **alone** - نائم **asleep** - مستيقظ **awake** - خائف **afraid**

- ex. - She was kind to the **afraid child**. (X)  
- She was kind to the **child who was afraid**. (✓)

٤ تأتي الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها :

- **someone** - **somebody** - **something** - **somewhere**  
- **noone** - **nobody** - **nothing** - **nowhere**  
- **anyone** - **anybody** - **anything** - **anywhere**  
- **everyone** - **everybody** - **everything** - **everywhere**

- ex. - I met **somebody** important. (Not: important somebody)  
- He needs to buy **everything** necessary. (Not: necessary everything)

## Mini Test 1

## Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- My brother has got a .....  
a. mobile good    b. good mobile    c. well mobile    d. mobile well
- You look ..... You must have passed your driving test.  
a. happy    b. happily    c. happiness    d. unhappy
- I was surprised to see a/an ..... in the dark street.  
a. afraid boy    b. boy afraid  
c. boy who was afraid    d. a & c



4. He knows .....
- a. an evil nobody  
c. an evil anybody

- b. an anybody evil  
d. nobody evil

## 2

## Comparative and Superlative Forms صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل

	المقارنة Comparative	التفضيل Superlative
Use الإستخدام	تقارن صفة المقارنة بين طرفين: - Arabic is <b>easier than</b> English. - A lion is <b>more dangerous than</b> a fox. - Chicken is <b>less expensive than</b> meat.	تُميِّز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أكثر من طرفين): - French is <b>the easiest</b> subject. - The lion is <b>the most dangerous</b> animal. - The rabbit is <b>the least dangerous</b> animal.
Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة: - fast - faster - old - older يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة الملتهبة بـ (e): - large - larger - close - closer يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة: - big - bigger - thin - thinner - hot - hotter - fit - fitter	يُضاف (the ... + est) إلى الصفة القصيرة: - fast - the fastest - old - the oldest يُضاف (the ... + st) فقط إلى الصفة القصيرة الملتهبة بـ (e): - large - the largest - close - the closest يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (the ... + est) إلى الصفة القصيرة: - big - the biggest - thin - the thinnest - hot - the hottest - fit - the fittest
Adjectives ending in (y) الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y)	تتحول (y) المسبوقه بحرف ساكن إلى (ier): - easy - easier - happy - happier - lazy - lazier - healthy - healthier	تتحول (y) المسبوقه بحرف ساكن إلى (the ... + iest): - easy - the easiest - happy - the happiest - lazy - the laziest - healthy - the healthiest
Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة	تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالي: صفة. adj. + أقل/أكثر more/less - more/less beautiful - أكثر/أقل جمالاً	تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي: + الأقل/the least/الأكثر the most صفة. adj. - the most/the least beautiful - الأكثر/الأقل جمالاً

## Mini Test 2

Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The cheetah is ..... the deer غزال.  
a. fast                      b. faster                      c. faster than                      d. the fastest
2. The cheetah is ..... animal ever.  
a. fast                      b. faster                      c. faster than                      d. the fastest
3. The environment in the countryside is ..... that in the city.  
a. healthier                      b. healthier than                      c. healthiest                      d. the healthiest
4. The countryside has ..... environment ever.  
a. healthier                      b. healthier than                      c. healthiest                      d. the healthiest
5. The tortoise is ..... animal.  
a. the least fast                      b. fastest                      c. the fastest                      d. the faster

### ملاحظات عامة على صفات المقارنة

١ يمكن أن نستخدم (less) قبل الصفات القصيرة (ولا يمكن استخدام (more) ) :

- ex. - Ahmed is **stronger than** Ali. (✓) - Ali is **less strong than** Ahmed. (✓)  
- Ahmed is **more strong than** Ali. (X)

٢ يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية قبل صفات المقارنة لتقوية أو إضعاف الصفة:

- ..... - كثيرًا **far** - كثيرًا **a lot** - كثيرًا **much** - كثيرًا **even**  
ex. - Travelling by train is **much slower than** travelling by plane.  
..... قليلاً **a little** - قليلاً **a bit** - بدرجة طفيفة **slightly**  
ex. - The weather today is **a little colder than** yesterday.

٣ لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد (than) :

(يُفضل استخدام ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل وضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل)

- ex. - He is taller **than I am**. = He is taller **than me**.  
- We earn more money **than they do**. = We earn more money **than them**.

٤ يمكن استخدام (the) مع صفات المقارنة إذا كان بعدها (of) وكانت تشير إلى طرفين :

- ex. - Hadeer is **the taller of the two sisters**.

### ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية :

(first/second/third/fourth/only/ last...etc.)

- ex. - Cairo is **the first largest** city in Africa.

٢ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو (s) الملكية:

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - ..... 's

- ex. - Naguib Mahfouz is **Egypt's best** novelist.  
- Is Ahmed **your youngest** brother?



٣ لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل :

(أ) تستخدم (in) قبل الأسماء المفردة :

ex. - He is **the best** player **in** the team.

- Everest is **the highest** mountain **in** the world.

(ب) تستخدم (of) قبل الأسماء الجمعة :

ex. - Sama is **the cleverest** of her sisters.

(ج) يُفضل استخدام (of) قبل السلوات :

ex. - The death of my uncle is **the worst** event **of** 2016.

3

### Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل غير المنتظمة

Adj./adv.	Comparative	Superlative
- bad - badly	- worse أسوأ / بشكل أسوأ	- the worst الأسوأ / بالطريقة الأسوأ
- far	- farther - further	- the farthest - the furthest
- good - well	- better أفضل / بطريقة أفضل	- the best الأفضل / بالطريقة الأفضل / الأكثر
- little	- less أقل	- the least الأقل
- many - much - a lot of	- more أكثر	- the most الأكثر

#### Mini Test 3

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ali is 65 kg and Omar is 72, so Ali is ..... than Omar.

- a. heavier      b. more heavy      c. less heavier      d. less heavy

2. An elephant is ..... than a cow.

- a. the biggest      b. much big      c. much bigger      d. less big

3. A modern BMW is ..... expensive than this old Fiat.

- a. much more      b. much      c. the most      d. a lot

4. Sama is ..... of the two sisters.

- a. younger      b. the younger  
c. youngest      d. the more young

5. Dubai has the first ..... building in the world.

- a. bigger      b. the bigger      c. biggest      d. the biggest

6. Green is my wife's ..... favourite colour.  
 a. most                      b. the most                      c. the more                      d. the less
7. Rodayna is the most helpful person ..... the family.  
 a. of                      b. with                      c. a & b                      d. in
8. My car is ..... than yours.  
 a. good                      b. well                      c. better                      d. best

## 4 Expressing equality/inequality

صيغ التعبير عن التساوي / عدم التساوي :

١ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن التساوي:

→ **as + adj.** الصفة + as

**ex.** - Aya is **as old as** Nada. They are both 17.

- Drinking fresh juice is nearly **as useful as** eating fresh fruit.

٢ في حالة النفي تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي:

→ **not + as/so + adj.** الصفة + as

**ex.** - I am not **as old as** Omar. = - I am not **so old as** Omar.

٣ لاحظ أن :

→ **as + adj.** الصفة + **as = the same +** الصفة من الاسم

**ex.** - Ahmed is **as old as** Hussein. = - Ahmed is **the same age as** Hussein.

لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (**the same + noun** اسم + as) من الصفات الآتية:

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
big / small	size حجم	long	length طول مسافة أو مدة
deep	depth غُفَق	old / young	age عُمر
expensive / cheap	price سعر	strong	strength قوة
far / near	distance مسافة	wide	width غرض / اتساع
high / tall	height ارتفاع / غُلُو / طول		

**ex.** - The green blouse is **as expensive as** the red blouse.  
 = The green blouse is **the same price as** the red blouse.

### Mini Test 4

Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Amir is as ..... as Omar.

a. old                      b. older                      c. the oldest                      d. oldest

2. Mr Mohammed and his cousin Adel were born on 26<sup>th</sup> September, 1976. This means that Adel is ..... Mohammed.

a. older                      b. older than                      c. as old as                      d. so old as



3. This old car is not ..... that modern one.  
a. as fast as      b. so fast as      c. less faster than      d. a & b
4. Omar is as tall as Ahmed. Ahmed is the same ..... as Omar.  
a. high      b. height      c. tall      d. length

### ✓ Check your understanding

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة المقارنة بدون (than) :

- Hany is **more intelligent than** Samy.  
= Samy is intelligent, but Hany is **more intelligent**.

٢ لاحظ استخدام صيغة (كلما ..... كلما ....) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة:

- **The + صفة مقارنة + صفة مقارنة + the +** جملة السبب + **جملة النتيجة**  
- Studying hard makes you get higher marks.  
= The **harder you study, the higher marks you get**.

٣ لاحظ الصيغ التالية:

- **1.** جملة تساوي + **No** = جملة تفضيل  
- The Nile is **the longest** river in the world.  
= No river in the world is **as long as** the Nile.
- **2.** جملة تفضيل + **subj. + have/has + ever + p.p. ....**  
= **Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. .... + such + (a/an) + adj. + noun** اسم صفة  
= **Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. .... + (a/an) + noun** اسم + **as + adj. + noun** اسم صفة  
+ **as + noun** اسم  
- She is **the most beautiful** girl I **have ever seen**.  
= I **have never seen such a beautiful** girl.  
- Ali is **the cleverest** boy I **have ever known**.  
= I **have never known a boy as clever as** Ali.
- **3.** طرف ثان + **as + صفة + as + be + طرف أول**  
- **الطرف الثاني + as + الاسم من الصفة + the same + have / has + الطرف الأول**  
= **الاسم من الصفة + the same + have + الطرف الثاني + and + الطرف الأول**  
= **الاسم من الصفة + of the same + be + الطرف الثاني + and + الطرف الأول**  
- Aya is **as beautiful as** Mariam.  
= Aya **has the same beauty as** Mariam.  
= Aya and Mariam **have the same beauty**.  
= Aya and Mariam are **of the same beauty**.

**Mini Test 5****Apply**

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- My grandmother is old, but my grandfather is .....  
a. as old                      b. older                      c. older than                      d. the oldest
- The more you exercise, ..... you get.  
a. the fittest                      b. fitter                      c. the fitter                      d. more fit
- Ahmed is the cleverest student in class. No student in class is ..... him.  
a. as clever as                      b. as cleverer as                      c. a & b                      d. the cleverest
- I am as old as you. We both are ..... the same age.  
a. to                      b. on                      c. as                      d. of

**Exercise On Language****Apply**

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

**1 Exercises from Previous Exams**

- There were ..... people at the stadium than expected. (المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٣)  
a. many                      b. much                      c. more                      d. most
- I don't like this dress. It is ..... than I have expected. (الاسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)  
a. as large                      b. large                      c. largest                      d. larger
- This book was ..... than the last one she wrote. I didn't like it. (السيوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. good                      b. best                      c. worst                      d. worse
- In France, Oysters are ..... most other types of seafood. (القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٣)  
a. the rarest                      b. rarer                      c. rarer than                      d. rare
- Khaled is not as tall as other basket players but he is ..... (الفيوم - اطسا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. clever                      b. cleverer                      c. cleverest                      d. the cleverer
- January is ..... month in Egypt. (الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. the coldest                      b. most cold                      c. coldest                      d. cold
- This is ..... expensive restaurant I've ever been to. (المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٤)  
a. much                      b. more                      c. most                      d. the most
- This is the ..... book I have ever read; I learned so much about athletes' hearts. (الغربية - قطور ٢٠٢٣)  
a. most valuable                      b. least valuable                      c. much valuable                      d. more valuable
- Let's leave now. This is ..... film I've ever watched. (الاسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)  
a. a worse                      b. bad                      c. the worst                      d. worst



10. Mona did well in the exam, Salma did better, but Aya got .....  
grade. (السيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. good                      b. the best                      c. better                      d. as good as
11. He's ..... organized than he used to be. (انسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. a lot more                      b. fewer more                      c. a little                      d. least
12. My brother ran faster than ..... . (انسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. I did                      b. I am                      c. I was                      d. I do
13. My youngest son's ..... interest nowadays is the internet.  
(انسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. biggest                      b. the biggest                      c. bigger than                      d. a big
14. Salma is wearing her ..... dress today. (القاهرة - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)  
a. more new                      b. the newest                      c. newest                      d. newer than
15. It was ..... of Mr Hussein to stop arguing with the manager.  
(القليوبية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٣)  
a. wisest                      b. less wise                      c. more wise                      d. wise
16. Today's weather is ..... than yesterday's. (الغربية - قطور ٢٠٢٣)  
a. much warm                      b. more warmer                      c. a bit warm                      d. a little warmer
17. In my opinion, fish tastes ..... oyster. (الاسكندرية - غرب الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. as better as                      b. not as good than  
c. a lot better than                      d. more better than
18. The more carbohydrates you eat, ..... you become. (الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)  
a. the fatter                      b. the fattest                      c. the fat                      d. fatter than
19. The second game didn't go as ..... as the first one. (الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٣)  
a. good                      b. better                      c. best                      d. well
20. My uncle speaks English as ..... as native speakers of English.  
(الأقصر - إسا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. efficiency                      b. efficient                      c. efficiently                      d. inefficient
21. This car is very good, but ours is ..... . (الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٣)  
a. much better                      b. more better                      c. best                      d. much best
22. Ali is 65 kg and Omar is 72, so Ali is ..... than Omar. (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. heavier                      b. more heavy                      c. less heavier                      d. less heavy
23. The stronger the horse is, the ..... it is for long races. (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. better                      b. best                      c. good                      d. worst
24. I am afraid his state is going from bad to ..... . (الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٣)  
a. badly                      b. worst                      c. worse                      d. more worse

25. Manal is ..... of the two sisters. (الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٣)
- a. old                      b. more old                      c. the older                      d. oldest
26. There is not ..... mountain in the world than Everest. (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٤)
- a. the highest                      b. higher                      c. a higher                      d. high
27. Football is an outdoor game but squash is played ..... . (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٣)
- a. indoor                      b. outdoor                      c. outdoors                      d. indoors
28. .... houses are cheaper than big ones. (المنيا - مغاغة ٢٠٢٤)
- a. Little                      b. Few                      c. A lot                      d. Much

## 2 Check your understanding

29. Which of the following sentences is grammatically correct? (المنيا - شمالوط ٢٠٢٣)
- a. Rachel and Mai are the same height.  
b. Rachel is as taller as Mai.  
c. Mai is more taller than Rachel.  
d. Rachel isn't so taller as Mai.
30. Hoda is a better player than Mona. This means ..... (الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)
- a. Hoda can't play as good as Mona.  
b. Hoda isn't as a good player as Mona.  
c. Hoda can play as badly as Mona.  
d. Mona can't play as well as Hoda.
31. By the end of the story, the protagonist has changed and sees life in a ..... way. (المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤)
- a. complete different way                      b. complete differently  
c. completely different                      d. completely differently



**EL-MOASSER**

إحرص على اقتناء  
كتب المعاصر  
في اللغة الانجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

difficult (adj)	صعب	personal (adj)	شخصي
give ... a taste of their own medicine	يسقى ... من نفس الكأس	personally (adv)	شخصياً/ بشكل شخصي
option (n)	اختيار - بديل	remember (ed) (v)	يتذكر
optional (adj)	إختياري	repeat (ed) (v)	يكرر - يعيد
past (n - adj)	الماضي	simple (adj)	بسيط

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

achieve (d) (v)	يحقق / يُنجِز	heavy (adj)	ثَهِيم (تصف الطعام)
attractive (adj)	جذاب	lamb (n)	لحم الضأن - حقل
beef (n)	لحم بقري	light (adj - n)	خفيف - ضوء
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية
bowl (n)	سلطانية	name (d) (v)	يُسَمِّي / يذكر اسم
chopsticks (n)	عِصَان الأكل (يستخدمها الصينيون)	phrase (n)	عبارة
complicated (adj)	مُعقَّد - مُركَّب	questionnaire (n)	استبيان
confused (adj)	متحير	relatives (n)	أقارب
consider (ed) (v)	يَعتَبِر أن - يفكر في	respect (ed) (v - n)	يحترم - احترام
design (ed) (v)	يُصمِّم/ يضع تصميم	rest (ed) (n - v)	المُتَبقي - راحة - يستريح
distant (adj)	بعيد	taste (d) (v/n)	يتذوق - مذاق
foreigner (n)	شخص أجنبي	the British (n)	البريطانيون
general (adj)	عام	type (n)	نوع
		vertically (adv)	رأسياً

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>option (n)</b> خيار - بديل	a choice اختيار you can make in a particular معين situation
<b>personal (adj)</b> شخصي	belonging يخص or relating يتعلق ب to one person, rather than وليس to other people or to people in general بصفة عامة
<b>simple (adj)</b> بسيط	not difficult or complicated معقد to do or understand

## Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Definitions

- To be ..... means not difficult or complicated to do or understand.  
a. traditional      b. personal      c. fried      d. simple
- A/An ..... is a choice you can make in a particular situation.  
a. occasion      b. amount      c. prawn      d. option
- To be ..... means belonging or relating to one person, rather than to other people or to people in general.  
a. traditional      b. personal      c. fried      d. simple

### 2 Key vocabulary

- You don't need to answer this question. It is ..... (الاسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)  
a. urgent      b. optional      c. obligatory      d. required
- It's rude to interfere with my ..... life. (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. common      b. general      c. special      d. personal
- The team has no other ..... but to win the match. (القاهرة - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤)  
a. prefer      b. caption      c. option      d. choose
- It is foolish of you to ..... your mistakes. (الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. repeat      b. apologise for      c. learn from      d. avoid
- The best punishment for them is to make them have a/an ..... of their own medicine. (الدقهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. meat      b. taste      c. amounts      d. award
- It is ..... for me to do all these jobs alone. I need somebody to help me.  
a. easy      b. simple      c. difficult      d. different
- What happened in the ..... can't be changed.  
a. future      b. past      c. days to come      d. b & c
- Keep a diary to help you ..... what you are supposed to do.  
a. forget      b. remind      c. remember      d. avoid
- ....., I prefer we go to Alexandria for the summer holiday.  
a. Personally      b. Personal      c. Vertical      d. Vertically

### 3 Important vocabulary

- He gets ..... when I give him several instructions at a time. (القليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٤)  
a. confused      b. confusing      c. simple      d. traditional
- All religions ask their believers to accept people who have different ..... from theirs. (سوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. believe      b. believes      c. beliefs      d. believable



15. .... are a pair of thin sticks that are used for eating with, especially in China.  
a. Forks                      b. Choppers                      c. Spoons                      d. Chopsticks
16. I need help with this lesson because I find it .....  
a. simple                      b. traditional                      c. personal                      d. complicated
17. About sixty-five close friends and ..... attended the wedding.  
a. officers                      b. enemies                      c. relatives                      d. passengers
18. Rokaya was ..... after her grandmother who had the same name.  
a. considered                      b. named                      c. achieved                      d. introduced
19. He lives in a/an ..... village, which makes it difficult to visit him very often.  
a. light                      b. heavy                      c. distant                      d. attractive
20. .... are people who do not change their traditions easily.  
a. The British                      b. British                      c. British city                      d. British man
21. He is healthy and fit because he eats ..... food and does regular exercise.  
a. heavy                      b. light                      c. tight                      d. a & c
22. He ..... his new friend to us.  
a. considered                      b. rested                      c. achieved                      d. introduced
23. I can't eat anything else. I've already had a ..... meal.  
a. light                      b. heavy                      c. distant                      d. simple
24. He has ..... great success as a surgeon. He is well-known all over the country.  
a. considered                      b. named                      c. achieved                      d. introduced
25. A good writer is supposed to have a/an ..... style to make him popular among readers.  
a. rude                      b. heavy                      c. distant                      d. attractive
26. A/An ..... is a written list of questions that are answered by a number of people so that information can be collected from the answers.  
a. research                      b. questionnaire                      c. test                      d. examination
27. It is good behaviour to show ..... to old people.  
a. respect                      b. disrespect                      c. rudeness                      d. greed
28. Buying all these toys is ..... a waste of money.  
a. considered                      b. named                      c. achieved                      d. introduced

## PART II

# VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>get</b>	confused	يتحير	<b>make</b>	a choice	يختار
<b>go</b>	abroad	يسافر إلى الخارج		a good breakfast	نُعد إفطارًا جيدًا
<b>show</b>	respect	يُظهر الاحترام		a lot of difference	يحدث فرقًا كبيرًا
<b>sound</b>	nice	يبدو لطيفًا		noise	يُحدث ضجيجًا

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
confused	متحير	puzzled, perplexed, mystified
difficult	غير ملائم	inconvenient, inappropriate, unsuitable
difficult	صعب	hard, confusing, mystifying - mysterious - complicated
heavy	ثقل الوزن	weighty, overweight
heavy	قوي	forceful, strong
personal	شخصي - خاص	private, individual
respect (n)	احترام	esteem, regard
respect (v)	يطيع - يلتزم بـ	obey, follow
respect (v)	يحترم	esteem, show regard for

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة		Antonym (= Opposite)	
difficult	صعب	easy, simple	سهل - بسيط
difficult	غير ملائم	convenient	ملائم
heavy	ثقيم	light	خفيف - ضوء
heavy	قوي	gentle	لطيف
heavy	ثقل الوزن	thin, light	نحيف
heavy	غزير (تصف المطر)	light	خفيف
personal	شخصي - خاص	general, public	عام
respect (n)	احترام	contempt, disrespect	احتقار - ازدراء
respect (v)	يطيع - يلتزم بـ	ignore, disobey	يخالف - يعصي
respect (v)	يحترم	scorn	يحقر - يزدري
simple	بسيط	complicated, complex	مُعقد



## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

option		
option (n)	اختيار - بديل	- I had two <b>options</b> .
optional (adj)	اختياري (ليس إجباري)	- This offer is <b>optional</b> .
personal		
personify (v)	يُجسّد	- Salah <b>personifies</b> the values of self-dependence and perseverance. الاعتماد على النفس والمثابرة
person (n)	شخص	- Mr Khalid is a good <b>person</b> .
personality (n)	شخصية	- She has got a strong <b>personality</b> .
personal (adj)	شخصي	- He has some <b>personal</b> problems
personally (adv)	بشكل شخصي	- <b>Personally</b> , I don't want to go out.
simple		
simplify (v)	يبسط	- A good teacher can <b>simplify</b> complicated information.
simplicity (n)	البساطة	- I like <b>the simplicity</b> of your style أسلوب
simple (adj)	بسيط	- I like your <b>simple</b> style.
simply (adv)	ببساطة	- This essay is <b>simply</b> very good.

## 5 Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a great deal of	كثير من	distant past	الماضي البعيد
as part of	كجزء من	in general,	بصفة عامة
at all	على الإطلاق	light food	طعام خفيف
at the weekends	في العطلات الأسبوعية	likely to	أكثر عُرضة لـ / من الممكن أن
be careful about	يحرص علي	small changes to	تعديلات صغيرة في

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

come from	يأتي من	help with	يساعد في
decide on	يختار / يحدد	relate to	يتعلق بـ
expect ... to	يتوقع من ... أن	start with	يبدأ بـ
find out (about)	يكتشف (عن)	think about	يفكر في

## fried - grilled

- **fried (adj)** مقلّي / مُحمَّر (في الزيت)  
- She likes **fried** potatoes.
- **grilled (adj)** مشوي (في شواية أو علي الفحم)  
- I like **grilled** fish.

## optional - free

- **optional (adj)** اختياري (ليس إجباري)  
- This question is **optional**. You don't have to answer it.
- **free (adj)** مجاني (بدون مقابل)  
- The drinks are **free** on Fridays only.
- **free (adj)** حُر (غير محبوس أو مقيد)  
- I want to hear your **free** opinion.
- **free (adj)** متفرغ (غير مشغول)  
- We can meet at the weekend. We both will be **free**.

## personal - private - public

- **personal (adj)** شخصي (يخص الحياة الشخصية للفرد)  
- Don't ask a lot of **personal** questions. People don't like to talk about that.
- **private (adj)** خاص (غير عام - لا تريد إطلاع الآخرين عليه)  
- He goes to work in his **private** car. (تخصه هو / ملكه)  
- She doesn't want to discuss her **private** life with you. (تخصها هي)
- **public (adj)** عام  
- Mass media affect **public** opinion.

## Exercise On Vocabulary study

## • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "She shows much respect to her neighbour." The word "respect" can be replaced by .....  
(القليبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٤)  
a. disrespect      b. rudeness      c. esteem      d. forwardness
- Adel hates to work in distant areas. "Distant" is the opposite to .....  
(المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)  
a. remote      b. far      c. crowded      d. close
- They found the instructions ..... as they were too many at a time.  
(المنيا - مفاغة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. confusion      b. confusing      c. confuse      d. confused



4. "Hot pepper has a strong taste." The adjective 'strong' in this sentence is antonymous with .....
- a. gentle      b. sweet      c. powerful      d. mighty
5. "You have to respect the law." In this sentence, 'respect' can be replaced by .....
- a. disobey      b. break      c. scorn      d. obey
6. "She shows much respect to her husband." The word 'respect' can be replaced by .....
- a. disrespect      b. regard      c. rudeness      d. cowardly
7. The choice you have recently ..... was not the best one.
- a. fallen      b. made      c. served      d. gone
8. It is better if a teacher ..... simple language to explain the lesson.
- a. shows      b. uses      c. gets      d. does
9. "He looked confused and didn't know what to say." The word 'confused' here means .....
- a. clear-headed      b. confident      c. puzzled      d. a & b
10. .... is to complicated as unconventional is to traditional.
- a. Simple      b. Conventional      c. Modern      d. Novel
11. Something that is not personal is .....
- a. public      b. private      c. special      d. local
12. As a writer, he is famous for the ..... of his style.
- a. simplify      b. simplicity      c. simple      d. simply
13. As a writer, he is famous for his ability to express his ideas quite .....
- a. simplify      b. simplicity      c. simple      d. simply
14. His strong ..... makes him influential.
- a. person      b. personality      c. personal      d. a & b

## PART III

## READING &amp; LISTENING

## 1 Reading Texts

Can you find three ways that people show respect when they have meals together?

(SB page 21)

A. Personally, I think it's important to **respect**<sup>(1)</sup> our older **relatives**<sup>(2)</sup>. When **South Korean**<sup>(3)</sup> families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first.



(1) يحترم  
(2) أقارب  
(3) من دولة كوريا الجنوبية

The **rest**<sup>(4)</sup> of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this **shows**<sup>(5)</sup> your respect for the most important people in your family.

**B.** As you probably know, people in China usually use **chopsticks**<sup>(6)</sup> to eat their food. However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you're eating there. It is **considered**<sup>(7)</sup> very **rude**<sup>(8)</sup> to put your chopsticks **vertically**<sup>(9)</sup> into your **bowl**<sup>(10)</sup> of food, for example. I understand that this is a Chinese **tradition**<sup>(11)</sup>, but for me, **foreigners**<sup>(12)</sup> who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

**C.** In my opinion, **lunchtime**<sup>(13)</sup> isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in **Russia**<sup>(14)</sup> it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some **light**<sup>(15)</sup> food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

- (4) بقية
- (5) يُظهر
- (6) عيدان الأكل
- (7) يُعتبر
- (8) وقح
- (9) رأسياً
- (10) سلطانية
- (11) تقليد
- (12) أجانب
- (13) وقت الغداء
- (14) روسيا
- (15) خفيف

## Writing a professional questionnaire

(WB page 10)

When you write a questionnaire, the type of questions you use is important. The questions should use simple language and shouldn't be difficult to understand. You don't need to repeat the question. Don't give too many options as this will confuse people. And never ask personal questions. People generally won't want to answer these. Ask one thing at a time. Make sure you don't have two questions in one, for example, 'Do you go abroad often with your friends?' And don't ask about things which happened a long time in the past. It can be difficult for people to remember. When you are ready, decide on the best time to ask your questions - before people start to forget!

## What do people eat for breakfast in your country? (WB page 11)

**Adam:** As you probably know<sup>(1)</sup>, people eat very different things for breakfast around the world.

**Shady:** Yes, they do. In my opinion<sup>(2)</sup>, breakfast is the best meal of the day. What do people eat in other countries?



- (1) لعلك تعلم أن
- (2) هي رأيي



**Adam :** Let's start with the UK. **It is thought that**<sup>(3)</sup> the British have the most unhealthy traditional breakfast. They have fried eggs, beans, toast and fried meat.

**Shady :** **Personally**<sup>(4)</sup>, I wouldn't want to eat such a big meal in the morning. What about the French ?

**Adam :** **I understand that**<sup>(5)</sup> the French have a much smaller breakfast : just a croissant or piece of bread.

**Shady :** That sounds nice, but **for me**<sup>(6)</sup>, I'm happy with my usual breakfast of bread, cheese and an egg ! One piece of bread would be too little.

- (3) يُعتقد أن  
(4) شخصياً  
(5) إنني أدرك أن  
(6) بالنسبة لي

## 2 Listening Text

### Tips on writing a questionnaire

(SB page 20)

When you're writing a **questionnaire**<sup>(1)</sup>, you need to ask the **right**<sup>(2)</sup> questions. Some questions are a lot more **useful**<sup>(3)</sup> than others. And, very often, small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of **difference**<sup>(4)</sup>.



Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always **helpful**<sup>(5)</sup> to use simple language. If you use **complicated**<sup>(6)</sup> language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear **meanings**<sup>(7)</sup>. Words like 'most' and 'many' mean different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as 'almost all' and 'almost none' **instead**<sup>(8)</sup>.

Thirdly, don't have too many **options**<sup>(9)</sup>. People get **confused**<sup>(10)</sup> when there are more than six options to **choose from**<sup>(11)</sup>.

Don't ask **personal**<sup>(12)</sup> questions, like questions about money. People don't like talking about these things.

Remember to ask one question **at a time**<sup>(13)</sup>. Don't put two questions into one, for example: 'How often do you eat out with your family?' Some people will eat out quite often, but not with their family. And others might eat with their family all the time, but only at home.

- (1) استبيان  
(2) صحيح  
(3) مفيد  
(4) اختلاف  
(5) مفيد  
(6) معقد  
(7) معاني  
(8) بدلاً من ذلك  
(9) خيارات  
(10) متحير  
(11) يختار من بين  
(12) شخصي  
(13) في المرة الواحدة

Finally, make sure the answers to your questions are easy to remember. Don't ask about events in the **distant**<sup>(14)</sup> past, especially if they are about something that was **boring**<sup>(15)</sup>.

بعيد (14)  
ممل (15)

Then, when you know the questions you want to ask, think about the best time to ask people. If you're going to ask people about a recent event, for example, do it before they start to forget.

## PART IV LANGUAGE

### Exercises On Language

● Apply

- ✦ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Step-by-step exercises

- Football is..... popular game in Egypt.  
a. the most      b. less      c. most      d. more
- This computer is not ..... expensive as the one I bought yesterday.  
a. most      b. as      c. less      d. more
- She is as ..... as Sama. They are the same height.  
a. long      b. heavy      c. high      d. tall
- A chair is..... comfortable than a sofa.  
a. least      b. little      c. the least      d. less
- This is the ..... company in the world.  
a. more big      b. biggest      c. bigger      d. most big
- English is ..... than any other language.  
a. the easiest      b. more easy      c. easier      d. easy
- You look much..... than yesterday.  
a. the happiest      b. more happy      c. happier      d. happy
- He is not ..... reliable as his friend.  
a. most      b. less      c. more      d. so
- Food is not nearly so ..... as it was in the past.  
a. the best      b. worse      c. better      d. good
- Alaa is a ..... doctor than Omar.  
a. the best      b. best      c. better      d. good
- Bill is much..... than Tom.  
a. the most intelligent      b. least intelligent  
c. more intelligent      d. intelligent
- Nobody in our company is ..... Abdulrahman.  
a. as efficient      b. most efficient than  
c. as efficient as      d. efficient



13. He has much ..... friends than me.  
a. more                      b. the least                      c. most                      d. many
14. He thinks that women are ..... divers than men.  
a. worst                      b. the worst                      c. worse                      d. bad
15. Which is ....., the Nile or the Amazon?  
a. as long                      b. the longest                      c. longer                      d. long
16. You didn't do as ..... work as I did.  
a. much                      b. least                      c. less                      d. more
17. The warmer the weather is, the ..... I feel.  
a. more good                      b. best                      c. better                      d. good
18. I don't read as ..... books as you do.  
a. many                      b. most                      c. more                      d. much
19. Of the four students, Bassim is .....  
a. clever                      b. cleverer                      c. cleverest                      d. the cleverest
20. The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even .....  
a. most pretty                      b. prettier                      c. prettiest                      d. pretty
21. He was the team's ..... player.  
a. the best                      b. best                      c. better                      d. the better
22. It was ..... of her to waste all her money.  
a. least foolish                      b. foolish  
c. less foolish                      d. more foolish than
23. Tablets are becoming ..... popular nowadays.  
a. more and more                      b. much and more  
c. more and less                      d. less and more
24. That is the most beautiful scene I .....  
a. has ever seen                      b. ever see  
c. have ever seen                      d. ever seen
25. The more books she reads, ..... ignorant she is.  
a. more                      b. the less                      c. much                      d. less
26. Perhaps I looked bad this morning, but she looked .....  
a. badly                      b. more badly                      c. the worst                      d. worse
27. This is my first ..... successful book.  
a. more                      b. most                      c. the most                      d. the least

## 2 Exercises from Previous Exams

28. This is ..... exam I have ever taken. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)  
a. the most difficult                      b. much more difficult  
c. more difficult than                      d. less difficult than
29. Water is the ..... expensive of all liquids. (دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. little                      b. less                      c. least                      d. more

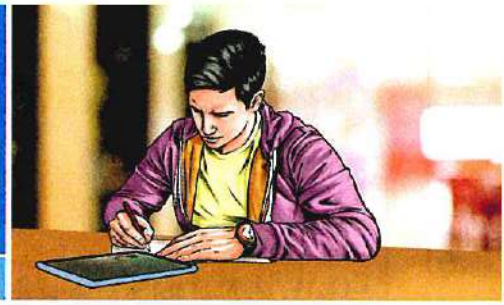
30. Mrs Azza is tall, but Mrs Fareeda is ..... . (الغربية - شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٤)
- a. less tall      b. more tall      c. more taller      d. less taller
31. The giraffe is ..... animal of all. (كفر الشيخ - سيدي سالم ٢٠٢٣)
- a. tall      b. the tallest      c. taller      d. more tall
32. She is a really nice person; one of ..... people I know. (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)
- a. the nicer      b. the nice      c. the most nice      d. the nicest
33. It's a very valuable painting. It's ..... painting in the gallery. (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)
- a. the most valuable      b. more valuable  
c. the more valuable      d. a valueless
34. The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't ..... I thought. (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٤)
- a. near      b. far as      c. as far as      d. farthest
35. There are ..... people at the meeting than at the last one. (الدقهلية - ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٣)
- a. fewer      b. fewest      c. few      d. the fewest
36. This question is too hard to grasp. Can't you make it ..... ? (دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٣)
- a. simply      b. simpler      c. more simpler      d. as simple
37. I think she is still ill. She looks even ..... than last week. (المنيا - مطاى ٢٠٢٣)
- a. worst      b. more      c. most      d. worse
38. Please, could you speak ..... ? (البحيرة - ايتاى البارود ٢٠٢٣)
- a. slowness      b. slowest      c. more slowly      d. the slowest
39. Her dress was ..... more expensive than mine. (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
- a. lots of      b. a lot      c. a lot of      d. few
40. In the last few months, competition has become ..... . (بنى سويف - الواضحة ٢٠٢٣)
- a. much tougher      b. more tough  
c. more tougher      d. much more tougher
41. You should take two aspirins and go to bed. I 'm sure you will feel ..... better in the morning. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٤)
- a. most      b. more      c. a lot      d. as
42. Yesterday was cold but today is ..... . (قنا - نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
- a. much more cold      b. even more colder  
c. such a cold      d. even colder
43. The more you read, the ..... you know. (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)
- a. less      b. most      c. best      d. more
44. .... food he eats, the less healthy he will become. (اسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)
- a. The faster      b. The more fast      c. The much fast      d. The fastest



45. Egypt's ..... important discovery in the last three years is the gas wells in the Mediterranean Sea. (بنات سويف - بيا ٢٠٢٣)
- a. more                      b. much more                      c. the most                      d. most

**3 Check your understanding**

46. Sama doesn't have as long hair as Rodayna. Whose hair is less long?  
a. Sama's                      b. Rodayna's                      c. Both                      d. None
47. Rokaya has the same cleverness as Leen. This exactly means .....  
a. Both Rokaya and Leen are clever  
b. Neither Rokaya nor Leen is clever  
c. Rokaya isn't so clever as Leen  
d. Rokaya is as clever as Leen
48. I have never seen such an intelligent young man. This exactly means .....  
a. this young man is very intelligent  
b. this is the first time I have seen such an intelligent man  
c. I have never seen intelligent young men before  
d. I haven't ever seen intelligent young men before
49. Mohammed Omar is the tallest person at school.  
This exactly means .....  
a. Mohammed Omar is as tall as everyone at school  
b. no one at school is taller than or even as tall as Mohammed Omar  
c. someone at school is as tall as Mohammed Omar  
d. no one at school is less tall than Mohammed Omar
50. If you go on eating a lot of rice, you will put on even more weight.  
This means .....  
a. the more rice you eat, the less weight you put on  
b. the more rice you eat, the more weight you put on  
c. the less rice you eat, the more weight you put on  
d. the more rice you eat, the more weight you lose
51. Naglaa is clever, but Esraa is cleverer. This means .....  
a. Esraa is less clever than Naglaa  
b. Naglaa is much cleverer than Esraa  
c. Naglaa isn't as clever as Esraa  
d. Naglaa is as clever as Esraa
52. This is the youngest tree in my garden. What does this mean?  
a. No other tree in my garden is as young as this one.  
b. Only another tree in my garden is as young as this one.  
c. Some other trees in my garden are as young as this one.  
d. Some other trees in my garden are the same age as this one.



تنويه المزيد من اتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

## PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

### استخدام تعبيرات الكمية كضمائر Using quantifiers as pronouns

يمكن أن تُستخدم تعبيرات الكمية التالية كضمائر تشير إلى عدد أو كمية:  
والضمير يعمل عمل الاسم ويحل محله ويتبعه الفعل.

→ some – any - many - much - little - few - each - either - all - both - none ... etc.

ex. - A ship arrived in North America with 102 passengers. Many (=Many passengers) died, but some (=some passengers) were able to grow food and survive.

ex. - A lot of students dream about joining the Faculty of Medicine, but only few (= few students) can achieve this goal.

### يُسَمَّى / يُدْعَى called

للحظ استخدام (called) في الصيغة التالية:

→ ... noun + who / which / that + be + called ... = ... noun + called ... .

ex. - I have a little daughter who is called Sama.  
= I have a little daughter called Sama.

ex. - Abdulrahman wrote a story which is called Sad Horizon.  
= Abdulrahman wrote a story called Sad Horizon.

### Try + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

• try to + inf.

يحاول أن يفعل شيء مع بذل مجهود

ex. - I tried to answer the question.

• try + (inf. + ing)

يجرب ليرى النتيجة (لا يوجد بها بذل أي مجهود).

ex. - Try taking an aspirin. Your headache might disappear.

### let / allow + obj. مفعول ...

للحظ الفرق بين (let - allow) في الصيغة التالية:

→ ... let + obj. مفعول + inf. ....

→ ... allow + obj. مفعول + to + inf. ....

ex. - The manager does not let anyone smoke in the office.

- The manager does not allow anyone to smoke in the office.

في حالة عدم وجود مفعول بعد (allow) يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing):

ex. - The manager does not allow smoking in the office.



أيضاً / آخر **else**تستخدم (**else**) بعد أدوات الاستفهام بمعنى (أيضاً) :• **Q.W.** ..... أيضاً **else** + أداة استفهام ؟

- Who **else** did you meet?
- Where **else** have you been?

تستخدم (**else**) بعد تراكيب (**some - any - no - every**) بمعنى (آخر) :• **someone / anyone / something / anything .... + else** آخر

- **Someone else** is knocking on the door.
- I don't want **anything else**. Thank you.

كما يمكن استخدام (**else**) بعد (**or**) للتحذير :

- Do your homework **or else** you will be punished.

لذلك جملة + **so** = جملة + **that / which is why**

- She was very ill. **That's why** she stayed at home.
- = She was very ill, **so** she stayed at home.

**The + Nationalities**تستخدم (**the**) قبل صفات الجنسية التالية لتدل على شعب ما بصفة عامة ويتبعها فعل جمع :

- **The British / the English / the Irish / the Welsh / the Spanish / the French / the Dutch / the Swiss**

- **The British are** generally tradition lovers.

كما تستخدم (**the**) بنفس الطريقة قبل صفات الجنسية المنتهية بـ (**ese**) :

- **The Japanese / the Chinese/ the Sudanese**..... etc.

- **The Japanese are** hard-working people.

اما صفات الجنسية الأخرى فيجب ان تجمع بعد (**the**) لتؤدي نفس المعنى :

- **The Egyptians / the Russians/ the Arabs/ the Scots/ the Turks**...etc.

- **The Egyptians have** a great history and a promising future.

**Exercise On Language Hints**

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... English have been using and misusing foreign words ever since.

(الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. No article      b. A      c. An      d. The

2. Our manager doesn't ..... anyone smoke in the office,

(الاسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. get      b. call      c. allow      d. let

3. Never allow yourself ..... at.

(القليوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٤)

- a. be laughed      b. being laughed  
c. to be laughed      d. to laugh

4. I have a close friend ..... Abdalnasser.  
 a. is called            b. who is called    c. called            d. b & c
5. I tried ..... him, but he refused.  
 a. helping            b. to help            c. to helping        d. help
6. I advise you to try ..... another key. It might open the lock.  
 a. using            b. to use            c. to using            d. use
7. My father doesn't allow any of us ..... loud music at night.  
 a. play            b. to play            c. playing            d. played
8. My father doesn't allow ..... loud music at night.  
 a. play            b. to play            c. playing            d. played
9. When I arrived home, I didn't hear the voices of my brothers and sisters. .... were already in bed.  
 a. Every            b. Some            c. All            d. Each
10. I don't want to have pizza. I'll have something .....  
 a. else            b. too            c. also            d. as well
11. Who ..... did you meet at the party yesterday?  
 a. also            b. as well            c. as well as        d. else
12. He was tired. That's why he went to bed early." In this context, 'That's why' can be replaced by '.....'.  
 a. as            b. so            c. also            d. else
13. The French ..... people who like fashion and beauty.  
 a. has            b. is            c. are            d. was

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

\* Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (الفيوم - اطلس ٢٠٢٤)

Our home is usually our favourite place to spend time in. However, many accidents occur at home. There are dangerous things in the house and we should be aware of them. Thus, we can avoid unnecessary pain or injury.

Electricity runs many of our home appliances. It is a very useful thing. It is also very dangerous thing if used carelessly, for it can kill. Electrical sockets and power points are to be handled with utmost care. Young children should never be allowed to go near them. Unless we are very sure of what we are doing, repairs should only be done by a competent electrician. It is only too easy to get electrocuted. Old or faulty appliances should be discarded. If used, **they** are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches it.

The kitchen has many dangerous things. Sharp knives can draw blood,



mishandled gas cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns. Flies and rats can contaminate food. Thus, the kitchen is not a place to be careless in. If we are careful and know how to handle things there, then the chance of an accident occurring is lessened.

The biggest danger in a bathroom is when the floor is slippery with water or soap. I have heard of many incidents of people, especially old folks, falling in the bathroom. Sometimes, the fall is fatal. Often it leaves the victim bedridden. Utmost care is needed here.

Finally, the medicine cabinet should be inaccessible to young children. Dangerous drugs and pills can look like sweets to these young ones. If taken, the consequences can be disastrous. Other dangers do exist. It is up to us to watch out for them.

- Although it is a very useful thing, electricity can ..... .
  - run factories
  - end your life
  - make you happy
  - darken your room
- If there is something wrong with electricity at home, who should do the repair?
  - The electrician
  - The children
  - The parents
  - The neighbours
- Utmost care is needed in the bathroom as ..... .
  - there is much electricity in it
  - you may slip easily and become bedridden
  - hot water can scald your skin
  - fire can break out at any time
- Young children may take dangerous drugs and pills thinking that they are ..... .
  - milk
  - medicine
  - fruit
  - candies
- We should get rid of faulty devices because they ..... .
  - cause bad emissions
  - may cause a fire
  - consume much electricity
  - are bad for our lungs
- The synonym of the underlined word "nasty" is ..... .
  - pleasant
  - mild
  - tough
  - delightful
- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ..... .
  - home appliances
  - electrical sockets
  - young children
  - old devices
- The main idea of the passage is ..... .
  - not to use the electrical devices
  - to be careful in the house
  - to be careless when entering the kitchen
  - it is difficult to be safe at home

## 2 Writing Tips – introducing personal opinion and general belief

### \* التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي والمعتقدات المُتعارف عليها :

عند التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي يمكن الإستعانة بالأساليب التالية:

- **Personally, I think that +** جملة ... شخصيا (أعتقد أن) ...  
- Personally, I think that he will win the race.
- **I understand that ... but for me +** جملة ... إنني أدرك أن ... لكن بالنسبة لي ...  
- I understand that England is a great country, but for me Egypt is the greatest country ever.
- **In my opinion, +** جملة ... في رأيي ...  
- In my opinion, education is the best investment in the country's future.

عند التعبير عن المعتقدات السائدة يمكن الإستعانة بالأساليب التالية:

- **It's believed / thought that +** جملة ... يُعتقد أن ...  
- It's believed (thought) that the Ancient Egyptians discovered America!
- **As you probably know, +** جملة ... لعلك تعلم أن ...  
- As you probably know, no one can travel abroad without having a passport.

### Model Essay

✪ Write an essay of about 180 words about the "the ideal food" :

#### The ideal food

What is your opinion about ideal food? Does it mean delicious food? Does it mean healthy food? Without any doubt, the answer is both. The ideal food is both delicious and healthy. However, it is important for food to be healthy more than being delicious.

What are the qualities of healthy food? There are different qualities of healthy food. The first of these qualities is that it must contain everything the body needs. A healthy diet has the right amounts of protein, fats and carbohydrates. It should also have all the vitamins that the body needs.

Healthy food must be the right amount of everything. Too much food will surely lead to health problems like putting on weight. Too little food will lead to weakness and food-deficiency نقص problems. The rule is: Get enough of everything.

Food needs to be delicious. Food is one of the enjoyments of life. However, don't let your love for delicious food make you forget that food must be healthy in the first place. If tasty of food makes you enjoy your meal, your health makes you enjoy your life. To sum up, ideal food is healthy, delicious and of the right amount.



## Writing practice

- ✪ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

(المفيا - مفاغة ٢٠٢٤)

*Famous Egyptian dishes*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 3 الترجمة Translation

- 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork is something we cannot do without. It is essential for the success of any project.

(السوان - اءفو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. كل الكائنات الحية لا تحتاج إلى التعاون فيما بينها لتحقيق الأهداف، فالعمل الجماعي شيء لا يمكن الاستغناء عنه فهو ضروري لإنجاح أي مشروع.
- b. كل الكائنات تحتاج أن تتعاون لإنجاز أهدافها، فالعمل الفردي شيء لا يمكن الاستغناء عنه، فهو ضروري لإنجاح أي مشروع.
- c. تحتاج كل الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون أهدافها، العمل الفردي شيء لا يمكن الاستغناء عن العمل الجماعي، فهو ضروري لإنجاح أي مشروع.
- d. على كل المخلوقات أن تتعاون لتحقيق أهدافها، فالعمل الجماعي شيء لا يمكن الاستغناء عنه، فهو ضروري لإنجاح أي مشروع.

2. Travelling broadens our minds and polishes our character. When we visit a foreign country, we meet people of different cultures, we exchange our points of view and ideas and make friends with them.

(السوان - اءفو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. السفر يوسع عقولنا ويصقل شخصيتنا، عندما نزرور دولة عالمية نلتقى بأناس من ثقافات مختلفة وتبادل وجهات نظرنا وأفكارنا ونكون صديقين معهم.
- b. السفر يوسع عقولنا ويخفى شخصيتنا، عندما نزرور دولة أجنبية نلتقى بأناس من ثقافات متشابهة، لتبادل وجهات نظرنا وأفكارنا ونكون صداقات معهم.
- c. السفر يوسع عقولنا ويصقل شخصيتنا، عندما نزرور دولة أجنبية نلتقى بأناس من ثقافات مختلفة، لتبادل وجهات نظرنا وأفكارنا ونكون صداقات معهم.
- d. السفر يوسع عقولنا ويصقل شخصيتنا، عندما نزرور دولة أجنبية نلتقى بأناس من حضارات مختلفة، لتبادل وجهات نظرنا وأفكارنا ونكون صداقات معهم.

3. Nobody is perfect and it is natural to make mistakes, so we should meet others' mistakes with forgiveness. (السيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. لا يوجد شخص كامل، ومن الطبيعي أن نخطئ، لذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الآخرين بالتأثر.  
b. لا يوجد شخص مثالي، ومن غير الطبيعي أن نخطئ لذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الآخرين بالانتقام.  
c. لا يوجد شخص كامل، ومن الطبيعي أن نخطئ، ولذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الآخرين بالعفو.  
d. لا يوجد شخص مثالي، وليس من الطبيعي أن نخطئ، لذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الآخرين بالنسيان.

**2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

١. تُولى الحكومة المصرية اهتماماً عظيماً لتحسين معيشة المواطنين في كل أنحاء مصر وخاصة الريف والعشوائيات، وتُعتبر مبادرة حياة كريمة خير دليل على ذلك. (الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. The Egyptian organisations pay great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all cities of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.  
b. The Egyptian government pays great intention to improving the lives of employees in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.  
c. The Egyptian government pays great attention to moving the lives of citizens in upper Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.  
d. The Egyptian government pays great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums; the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.

٢. إن التعليم هو حجر الزاوية في نظام أي مجتمع متطور، فهو يعتبر أداة المعرفة والوعي والتنمية.

(الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Education is the corner stone of the system of any developed country. It is considered the tool for knowledge, awareness and development.  
b. Education is the corner stone of the system of any developed society. It is considered the tool for knowledge, awareness and development.  
c. Education is the corner stone of the system of any developed society. It is considered the tool for knowledge, awareness and progress.  
d. Education is the corner stone of the system of any developing society. It is considered the tool for knowledge, awareness and development.



## المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين Key Vocabulary for Advanced level

## amount

- **amount (of) (n)** كمية / مقدار (من شيء ما)  
- Parents should increase the **amount** of time they spend with their children.  
لأحظ التعبيرات التالية:  
- a considerable amount of كَمّ معقول من  
- a small / tiny amount of كَمّ ضئيل من  
- no amount of ... can / will .... .. فلن ... مهما زادت كمية ...  
- **No amount of medicine will** help you unless you control what you eat.  
- any amount of ما يكفي من  
- The hospital doesn't have **any amount of** oxygen cylinders اسطوانات
- **amount (ed) (v) + to + noun** ما يقرب من / ما يصل إلى حد  
- He spent what **amounted to** three months doing the research.

## celebrate

- **celebrate (d) (v)** يحتفل بـ (بدون حرف جر)  
- We **celebrated** Sama's birthday last Friday.
- **celebrated = famous (adj)** مشهور  
- Professor Magdi Yacoub is a **celebrated** heart surgeon.
- **celebration (n)** احتفال  
- The New Year **celebration** was wonderful.
- **celebrity (n)** شخص مشهور / نجم (اسم يُعد)  
- Messi is a sporting **celebrity**.
- **celebrity (n)** الشهرة (اسم لا يُعد)  
- **Celebrity** isn't all good. Some famous people suffer from it.
- **celebratory (adj)** احتفالي  
- I gave a **celebratory** dinner for the success of the deal. الصفقة

## occasion

- **occasion (n)** مناسبة (اجتماعية أو احتفال)  
- I have met you on several **occasions** before.
- **occasion (for) (n)** وقت مناسب ل  
- When I finished the deal, I knew it was the **occasion for** celebrating it with my family.
- **occasion = cause / reason (n)** سبب (لا تُعد بهذا المعنى)  
- I have my own **occasion** to refuse his offer.
- **If (the) occasion arises** لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:  
إذا استدعت الضرورة  
- **If occasion arises** when I am in Cairo, I will need to borrow some money from you.
- **on occasion** أحياناً (في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)  
- **On occasion**, I go for a walk by the Nile.
- **on the occasion of** بمناسبة  
- **On the occasion of** his success, he was given a BMW as a present.
- **occasion (ed) (v)** يسبب حدوث  
- Our team's great performance has **occasioned** us real happiness.
- **occasional (adj)** غير منتظم / غزضي / قليل  
- Real friends usually forgive **occasional** mistakes.
- **occasionally (adv)** بين الحين والآخر - قلماً  
- My old friends and I meet very **occasionally**.

## traditional

- **traditional = conventional (adj)** تقليدي - تابع من التقاليد  
- He still follows the **traditional** family values.  
- In the countryside, some people still have a **traditional** way of life.
- **tradition - traditions (n)** تقليد - تقاليد  
- He still follows the **traditions** and values of family life.
- **in the tradition of** على نهج / على خطى / متشابه في الاسلوب  
- This man is a politician **in the tradition of** John Kennedy.



**Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary**

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "You have no occasion to be sad. You have got the full mark." The word 'occasion' in this sentence means .....  
a. reason            b. event            c. influence            d. a & c
2. "He enjoys his celebrity." In this sentence, 'celebrity' is a synonym of .....  
a. famous            b. star            c. popularity            d. celebrated
3. When I saw him counting a lot of money, I knew it was the best ..... to ask him to pay back my money.  
a. celebrity            b. event            c. celebration            d. occasion
4. Although it wasn't his fault, he gave what ..... an apology.  
a. amount in            b. amounted to            c. amount of            d. no amount
5. By ....., the bride العروسة wears a white dress.  
a. celebration            b. celebrity            c. tradition            d. traditional

**Advanced Exercise on Language**

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You can swim as fast as .....  
a. hers            b. his            c. him            d. he
2. .... people are entering the competition this year than last year.  
a. Least            b. Little            c. A few more            d. A few
3. It is usual for an apple to taste .....  
a. worst            b. badly            c. good            d. well
4. Don't go any ..... . That dog might be dangerous.  
a. close            b. closer            c. the closest            d. closet
5. Rodayna is quieter than .....  
a. me is            b. I am            c. am I            d. mine

# Test on Unit 2

تدوينه

\* التقييمات الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب  
\* تدريبات الأزهر الشريف  
بنك الأسئلة



● Understand

● Apply

● Create

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Thanksgiving Day is ..... in the USA every year in the fourth Thursday of November. (الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٣)  
a. eaten                      b. celebrated                      c. serviced                      d. served
- ..... of persuasion will make her agree. She is stubborn.  
a. Amount                      b. An amount                      c. No amount                      d. Any amount
- In the USA, it is ..... to eat turkey and cranberry sauce on Thanksgiving. (المنيا - شمالوط ٢٠٢٤)  
a. addiction                      b. traditional                      c. fashion                      d. applicable
- I read only some ..... from the newspaper because I had no time.  
a. addresses                      b. experiments                      c. headlines                      d. extracts
- My grandfather has a very ..... view of women thinking that they shouldn't have higher positions. (المنيا - مطاي ٢٠٢٤)  
a. developed                      b. modern                      c. old-fashioned                      d. common
- You don't need to attend the meeting. It is .....  
a. obligatory                      b. compulsory                      c. optional                      d. banned
- The teacher asked us to..... the experiment to confirm our results.  
a. repeat                      b. avoid                      c. neglect                      d. prevent
- Ahmed is Amjad's ..... friend. (الاسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٣)  
a. good                      b. better                      c. best                      d. the best
- All the other movies in the library are ..... than the movie I'm watching. (المنيا - شمالوط ٢٠٢٤)  
a. more exciting                      b. much exciting  
c. exciting                      d. most exciting
- Your house is wide, but mine is ..... (البحيرة - الدلتجات ٢٠٢٤)  
a. wider than                      b. much wider                      c. more wider                      d. much wide
- Ali runs as ..... as Sammy. (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. the quickest                      b. quickly                      c. quicker                      d. quickest
- In the last few months, competition has become less ..... than it used to be. (الشرقية - مشتول السوق ٢٠٢٤)  
a. tougher                      b. more tough  
c. tough                      d. much more tougher
- In my opinion, travelling by train is ..... comfortable than travelling by bus. (الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. much                      b. a lot                      c. a lot more                      d. a lot most



14. The more you study, ..... mistakes you make. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. the fewer      b. the more      c. the most      d. the least

15. You should wear ..... heavier clothes than these in such cold weather. (المنوفية - طنوف ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. more      b. few      c. a little      d. many

**2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:** (القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤)

On a cold day in winter, a woman was walking home when she noticed a snake lying on the other side of the road. It was hardly moving and was obviously dying of cold. The woman, being kind hearted, took off her scarf, wrapped the snake up in it and went home. There, she put the snake, wrapped in the scarf, next to the cooker where it would get warm and start showing signs of life.

Slowly the snake's body became warm and it left the scarf and started exploring the kitchen, looking for something to eat. The woman found some food for it and the snake, which was very hungry, quickly finished all the food, returned to the scarf next to the cooker and went to sleep. The days went by and the snake fully recovered. The weather remained cold, so the woman hadn't the heart to put the snake outside again. She got used to having the snake around and taking care of it. One day when the woman was busy cooking her lunch, a pain shot through her leg and she dropped the pan of oil she was holding. She looked down at her foot and saw two small holes. The snake had bitten her.

She turned to the snake and cried, "How could you bite me, when I've always been so good to you? Now I'm going to die." The snake seemed to smile at her as it replied "you knew I was a snake when you brought me here, so why are you complaining now?"

- When the woman found the snake, it was .....  
 a. dead      b. nearly frozen      c. injured      d. happy
- The woman took the snake home because she .....  
 a. liked snakes      b. felt sorry for it  
 c. wanted to have company      d. wanted to get its skin
- In spite of being kind to the snake, it ..... the woman on her leg.  
 a. killed      b. bit      c. recovered      d. ate
- Which word in the passage means "searching and discovering"?  
 a. wrapping      b. moving      c. exploring      d. biting
- The snake started showing signs of life when it became .....  
 a. cold      b. warm      c. hungry      d. thirsty
- Which word in the passage means "clearly"?  
 a. Slowly      b. Fully      c. Hardly      d. Obviously



7. According to the passage, we shouldn't. .... what is dangerous.  
 a. kill                      b. slaughter              c. trust                      d. threaten
8. The snake bit the woman in the .....  
 a. bedroom                  b. kitchen                  c. bathroom                  d. dining room

**3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

Modern devices have no longer been a luxury, but it has become a must for every house.

(الجيزة - العجوة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. لم تعد الأجهزة الحديثة متعة، بل هي إضافة لكل بيت.  
 b. لم تعد المعدات الحديثة ترفاً، بل هي ضرورة لكل بيت.  
 c. لم تعد الأجهزة التقليدية ترفاً، بل هي ضرورة لكل بيت.  
 d. لم تعد الأجهزة الحديثة ترفاً، بل هي ضرورة لكل بيت.

**b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

تتمتع الكثير من النساء بقدرة أفضل من الرجال على تربية الأطفال الصغار لما يحظون به من صبر وحنان غريزيين.

(الشرقية - بليس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Most women have a better ability than men to raise all children because of their instinctive patience and tenderness.  
 b. Many men have a better ability than women to bring up young children because of their instinctive patience and tenderness.  
 c. A lot of women have a better strength than men to raise small children because of their instinctive patience and tenderness.  
 d. A lot of women have a better ability than men to bring up young children because of their instinctive patience and tenderness.

**4. Answer the following questions:**

1. Goneril and Regan are different from Cordelia. Illustrate. (السوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)

.....

2. Do you think Gloucester was similar to King Lear? Why? Why not?

(الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)

.....

3. "If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us." How do you think King Lear's anger would be a problem for Goneril and Regan?

(الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٤)

.....

**5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:**

(السوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٣)

***Your Favourite Food***

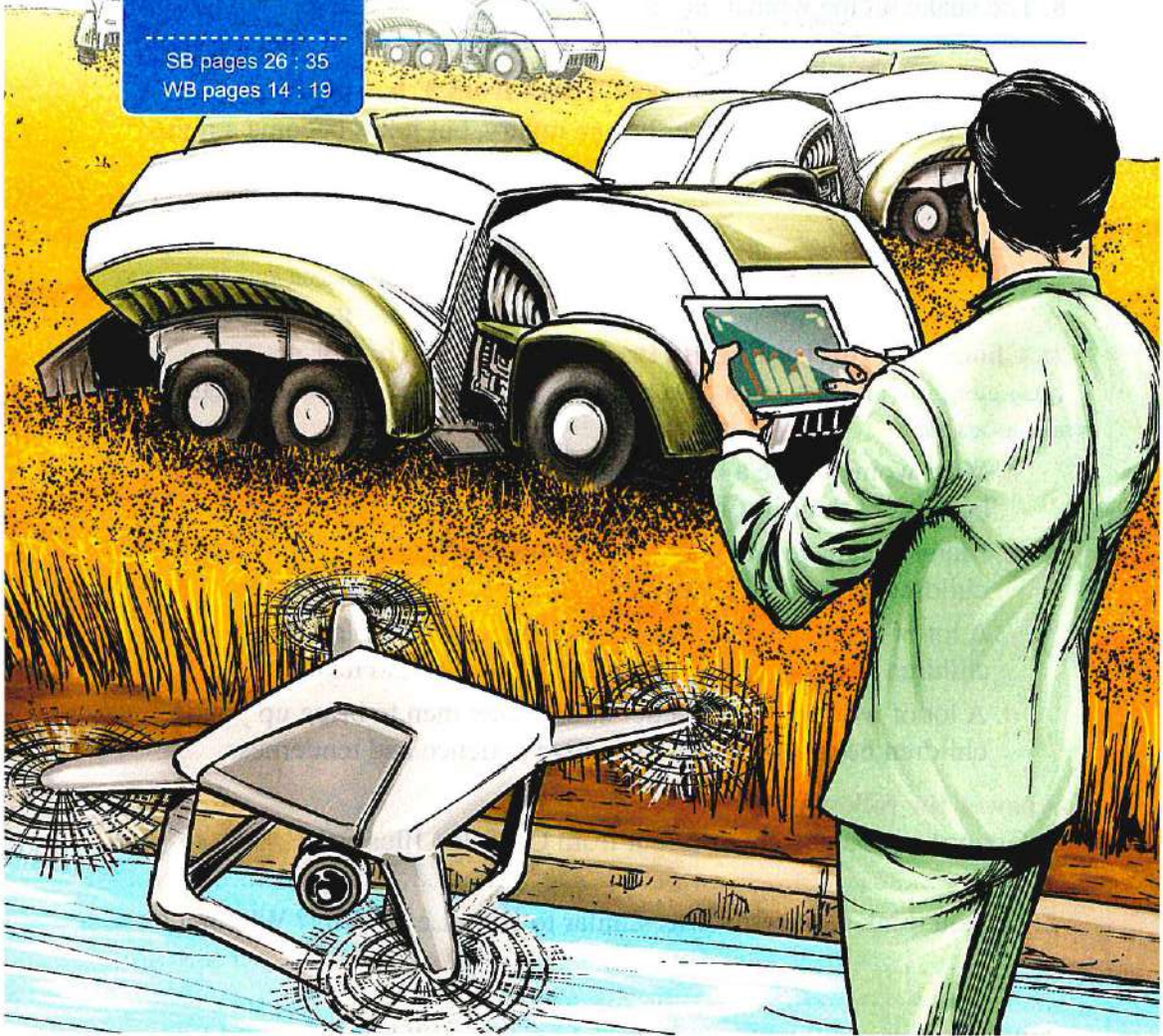
.....  
 .....  
 .....



# UNIT 3

SB pages 26 : 35  
WB pages 14 : 19

## The future of food



**Objectives :** \_\_\_\_\_ : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

🕒 **Reading** : Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming

🕒 **Writing** : Essay with proposals for how to feed people more sustainably in the future; writing a summary

🕒 **Listening** : An interview with an expert on sustainable farming

🕒 **Speaking** : Speculating about the future

🕒 **Language** : Will / Be going to; Future continuous

🕒 **Life skills** : Problem solving





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

agriculture (n)	(علم) الزراعة	percent (adj - adv)	بالمائة (%)
billion (n)	مليار	produce (d) (v)	يُنِج
crop (n)	محصول غذائي	produce (n)	مُنْتَج زراعي
earth (n)	كوكب الأرض - تراب	production (n)	إنتاج
farming (n)	الزراعة	source (n)	مصدر
innovation (n)	ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	sustainable (adj)	مُسْتَدَام / دائم - صديق للبيئة
livestock (n)	حيوانات المزارع	variety (n)	تشكيلة - التنوع - نوع / صنف
million (n)	مليون		

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

cause (d) (v/n)	سبب - يُسَبِّب	keep - kept - kept (v)	يرعى - يستمر في
chemicals (n)	المواد الكيميائية	land (n)	المساحة - الأرض اليابسة
climate (n)	المناخ	level (n/adj)	مُسْتَوِي - مُسْتَوِي
create (d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر	mention (ed) (v)	يذُكِّر - يتحدث عن
destroy (ed) (v)	يُدْمِر - يُخْرِب	organisation (n)	مؤسسة - مُنظَّمة
education (n)	تعليم	proposal (n)	اقترح - عرض
effect (n)	تأثير - أثر	rainforest (n)	غابة استوائية
electric (adj)	كهربائي	remove (d) (v)	يزيل
electricity (n)	الكهرباء	researcher (n)	باحث
elsewhere (adv)	في مكان آخر	run - ran - run (v)	يدري / يشرف علي
energy (n)	الطاقة	save (d) (v)	يُنْقِذ - يَدُخِّر / يُوَفِّر
extraordinary (adj)	استثنائي	seriously (adv)	بشدة - بشكل خطير
gas (n)	غاز	solution (n)	حل
grow - grew - grown (v)	يلمو - يزرع	southern (adj)	جنوبي
growing (adj)	متزايد - نامي	space (n)	مساحة - مُتَسِّع - الفضاء
guest (n)	ضيف	speculate (d) (v)	يتكهن - يتلبأ - يفكر
invest (ed) (v)	يستثمر	stuff (n)	أغراض / حوائج
involve (d) (v)	يشتمل على - يتضمن - يُضَمِّن	vehicles (n)	مركبات



### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>agriculture (n)</b> علم الزراعة	the practice نشاط or science of farming
<b>crop (n)</b> محصول غذائي	a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food
<b>earth (n)</b> كوكب الأرض	the planet كوكب that we live on
<b>farming (n)</b> الزراعة	the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm
<b>innovation (n)</b> ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	(the introduction of الإبتان ب) new ideas or methods
<b>livestock (n)</b> حيوانات المزارع	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
<b>produce (n)</b> انتاج زراعي	food or other things that have been grown or produced on a farm to be sold ليتم بيعها
<b>production (n)</b> انتاج	the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities
<b>source (n)</b> مصدر	a thing, place, activity etc. that you get something from
<b>sustainable (adj.)</b> مُستدام - صديق للبيئة	- able to continue without causing damage to the environment - able to continue for a long time
<b>variety (n)</b> تشكيلة - التنوع	a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in some way

### Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

- ..... is food or other things that have been grown on a farm to be sold.  
(الجيزة - الصف ٢٤)
  - Flour
  - Source
  - Produce
  - Seaweed
- ..... is the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm.
  - Algae
  - Farming
  - Innovation
  - Agriculture
- ..... is the practice or science of farming.
  - Algae
  - Farming
  - Innovation
  - Agriculture

4. A ..... is a thing, place, activity etc. that you get something from.  
a. production      b. source      c. seaweed      d. produce
5. .... is (the introduction of) new ideas or methods.  
a. Algae      b. Farming      c. Innovation      d. Agriculture
6. .... are animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.  
a. Planets      b. Livestock      c. Crops      d. Hydroponics
7. The noun ..... means a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in some way.  
a. variety      b. farmland      c. vegetarian      d. hydroponics
8. .... is the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities  
a. Production      b. Source      c. Seaweed      d. Produce
9. A/An ..... is a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food.  
a. earth      b. livestock      c. crop      d. hydroponics
10. .... means able to continue for a long time.  
a. Innovated      b. Various      c. Urban      d. Sustainable

## 2 Key vocabulary

11. Man settled and built houses after starting ..... (المنوفاة - الباجور ٢٠٢٤)  
a. agriculture      b. culture      c. cultural      d. agricultural
12. Are you for or against using chemicals to help ..... grow faster. (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. corps      b. foodstuffs      c. goods      d. products
13. The farmer keeps a lot of ..... such as goats and sheep. (البحيرة - إدكو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. agriculture      b. livestock      c. innovation      d. crops
14. The ..... of our fields is sold to a nearby restaurant. (الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. products      b. crops      c. produce      d. producing
15. It is not ..... to use petrol in cars. One day, we will have no more oil. (الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. sustain      b. sustainable      c. delivered      d. believable
16. Food ..... must go in line with the number of population. (الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. activity      b. production      c. work      d. market
17. .... is the main factor of progress and excellence. (كفر الشيخ - غرب كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Introduction      b. Impression      c. Innovation      d. Intonation
18. The Nile is the most important ..... of water for Egypt. (المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. proof      b. power      c. spot      d. source
19. The ..... is also known as the blue planet.  
a. floor      b. earth      c. ground      d. soil



20. Work in ..... requires experience in growing plants and keeping animals.  
a. farming                      b. cultivation                      c. hydroponics                      d. production
21. As our land is fertile, we have ..... of crops to satisfy all needs.  
(سوهاج - جهينة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. various                      b. variety                      c. agriculture                      d. culture

### 3 Important vocabulary

22. How do you think you will put all that ..... in this small bag?  
(البحيرة - إدكو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. stuff                      b. staff                      c. stiff                      d. stuffs
23. The government should punish any factory that throws ..... waste in the river.  
(الجزيرة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. historical                      b. medicine                      c. chemical                      d. valuable
24. The government ..... a lot of money in farming and education to develop them.  
(الغربية - قطور ٢٠٢٤)  
a. invests                      b. speculates                      c. spends                      d. protects
25. The police do not know the ..... of the accident in the street yesterday.  
(القاهرة - مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. challenge                      b. reason                      c. cause                      d. benefit
26. To grow and ripen, some fruits need hot and humid .....  
(الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. climate                      b. atmosphere                      c. whether                      d. soil
27. His ..... that the system should be changed was rejected.  
(القاهرة - مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. propose                      b. proposal                      c. designation                      d. creation
28. The test will ..... answering questions about a paragraph.  
(الغربية - بسيون ٢٠٢٤)  
a. consist                      b. exclude                      c. involve                      d. solve
29. It is necessary to ..... sustainable food production methods.  
a. fight                      b. cut down                      c. create                      d. remove
30. He is not sure about what will happen. He just .....  
a. speculates                      b. protects                      c. involves                      d. makes sure
31. I think that modern farming methods are the best ..... to the food shortage نقص problem.  
a. gap                      b. type                      c. investment                      d. solution
32. He is too young to ..... this large company. He doesn't have enough experience.  
a. run                      b. heal                      c. involve                      d. introduce
33. He does a/an ..... amount of work in a short time. No one else can achieve that.  
a. usual                      b. normal                      c. ordinary                      d. extraordinary

34. ...., where it is usually rainy and hot, have a variety of wildlife.  
 a. Seaweeds      b. Deserts      c. Rainforests      d. Rainfall
35. The papers you are looking for aren't in this safe خزينة . They might be ..... in the office.  
 a. where      b. elsewhere      c. where else      d. b & c
36. In cities, there's not much ..... to grow crops.  
 a. farm      b. place      c. environment      d. space

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

get	worse	يزداد سوء	keep	livestock	يربي حيوانات مزارع
	smaller	يقل - يصغر	make	money from	يكسب مال من
	(even) hotter	يزداد سخونة		small changes	يُحدث تغييرات طفيفة
	warmer	يصبح أدفأ		seawater safe to drink	يجعل ماء البحر صالحًا للشرب
introduce	a problem	يطرح مشكلة/يسبب مشكلة	start	fires	يشعل نيران / حرائق
tell	the difference	يُذكر الفرق			

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)	
extraordinary	استثنائي	amazing, incredible, exceptional
innovative	مبتكر	innovatory, original, novel
involve	يشتمل على - يتضمن - يُضمّن	include
keep	يحفظ بـ	save, retain, hold on to
keep	يبقى / يظل / يستمر في	go on, carry on, persist in
keep	يُفِي بـ - يُنقِّذ	obey, fulfil, comply with
keep	يُرَبِّي - يُدَبِّج	raise, look after
keep	يدير - يملك ويعمل في	manage, run
productive	مفيد - مُثمر	useful, constructive, profitable - fruitful , rewarding
productive	خُصب	fertile , fruitful , rich
run	يدير / يشرف علي	be in charge of, operate, manage , control
sustain	يصون - يحافظ علي	maintain
variety	التنوع	diversity
variety	نوع / صنف	sort, type, kind, class, category



## 3 المتضادات Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
extraordinary	استثنائي	ordinary, usual	عادي - مألوف
involve	يشتمل على - يضمن - يُضمّن	exclude	يستثني - يستبعد
keep	يحفظ - يُبقي علي	lose, throw away, get rid of	يفقد - يتخلص من
keep	يُقي / يظل / يُداوم علي	give up, stop	يُمتنع أو يُقلع عن
keep	يُفي بـ - يُنفذ	disobey, break	يُخالف - يحنث بـ
productive	مُنتج - مُثمر	unproductive, fruitless	عقيم - غير مُجدي
productive	يُصب	sterile, barren	عقيم - مُجذب
sustainable	مستدام	unsustainable	غير دائم - متقطع
variety	التلوع	uniformity, similarity	التضام - تماثل

## 4 مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية Derivatives of key vocabulary

agriculture	
agriculture (n)	(علم) الزراعة - - He is an expert in <b>agriculture</b> .
agriculturalist (n)	خبير في الزراعة - - He is an <b>agriculturalist</b> .
agricultural (adj)	زراعي - - He is an <b>agricultural</b> expert.
innovative	
innovate (d) (v)	يُبتكر - يبتكر - - He is able to <b>innovate</b> new techniques.
innovation (n)	ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار - He is good at the <b>innovation</b> of new techniques.
innovator (n)	مبتكر / مُخترع - - He is the <b>innovator</b> of several new techniques.
innovative (adj)	مبتكر - - He came up with several <b>innovative</b> techniques.
productive	
produce (d) (v)	يُنتج - - We <b>produce</b> several crops on our farms.
production (n)	إنتاج - - Our <b>production</b> will increase if we use modern technology.
product (n)	مُنتج (مفرد منتجات) - - Our high-quality <b>products</b> are sold all over the world.
producer (n)	مُنتج - - <b>Producers</b> of children's clothes earn a lot of money.

<b>produce</b> (n)	إنتاج زراعي	- Milk and cheese and other <b>produce</b> are sold in nearby towns.
<b>productive</b> (adj)	مُنتج - مُثمر	- The apple trees on this farm are really <b>productive</b> .
<b>sustainable</b>		
<b>sustain</b> (ed) (v)	يُصون - يحافظ على البيئة	- The new law will <b>sustain</b> economic growth.
<b>sustainability</b> (n)	الاستدامة - الحفاظ على البيئة	- The new law will support the <b>sustainability</b> of economic growth.
<b>sustainable</b> (adj)	مُستدام / دائم - صديق للبيئة	- The new law will make economic growth <b>sustainable</b> .
<b>sustainably</b> (adv)	بشكل مُستدام - بشكل غير ضار بالبيئة	- The new law will support economic growth more <b>sustainably</b> .
<b>variety</b>		
<b>vary</b> (ied) (v)	يُتفاوت - يختلف	- Flowers <b>vary</b> in colour and size.
<b>variety</b> (n)	تشكيلة - التنوع - نوع / صنف	- Flowers are available in a <b>variety</b> of colours and sizes.
<b>various</b> (adj)	عديد - متنوع	- We plant flowers of <b>various</b> colours and sizes.
<b>variable</b> (adj)	قابل للتغير - متقلب / غير ثابت	- Electric fans have <b>variable</b> speed levels.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

about thirty percent smaller	أصغر بنسبة ٣٠٪ تقريباً	get cut down	يتم قطعها
according to	طبقاً لـ / حسب	growing world	العالم المتزايد
as a result,	نتيجة لذلك - لذلك	instead of	بدلاً من
by 2030	بحلول عام ٢٠٣٠	on the island	على الجزيرة
climate change	التغير المناخي	So what?	وماذا في ذلك؟
expert on/in/at	خبير في	solutions to/for	حلول لـ
for years to come	لسنوات قادمة	sustainable solutions	حلول مُستدامة
		welcome to	أهلاً بكم في

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

continue to	يستمر في	live on	يعيش على / في
cut down	يقطع / يجتث - يقلل	look after	يرعى / يعتني بـ
deal with	يتعامل مع - يواجه	look for	يبحث عن
feel about	يشعر تجاه	persuade ... to	يقنع ... أن



fill in	يملأ (استمارة مثلاً)	remove ... from	يزيل ... من
heat ... up	يُسَخِّن - يُسَخِّن	think about/of	يفكر في
increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة	work with	يعمل مع / في
learn about	يتعلم عن		

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

### agriculture - farming

- **agriculture (n)** علم زراعة النباتات ورعايتها  
- Mr Gamil studied **agriculture** at Ain Shams University.
- **agriculture (n)** النشاط الزراعي  
- In Egypt, **agriculture** should be one of the main sources of national income.
- **farming (n)** الزراعة (زراعة المحاصيل و تربية الحيوانات في المزارع)  
- Sheep **farming** is common in Australia.

### cause - reason + for / that / why

- **cause of + n / (inf. + ing)** السبب في (أن)  
- I want to know the cause of your **objection**. (+ noun)
- **reason for + n / (inf. + ing)** السبب في (أن)  
- I want to know the reason for your **objection**. (+ noun)
- **reason why/that + subj. + v** السبب في (أن)  
- I want to know the reason **why/that you object**. (+ sentence)

### (grow) as a transitive or intransitive verb

لاحظ الفرق في المعني بين (GROW) كفعل لازم (بدون مفعول) أو كفعل مُتَعَدِّي (يتبعه مفعول):

- **grow + no object** ينمو - يكبر - يزداد (وكثيرًا ما يتبعه صفة)  
- Rainforests **grow** in areas with heavy rain. تنمو  
- When children **grow** old, they start to depend on themselves. يكبر  
- The sheep on the farm **grew** in number. ازدادت

لاحظ ان :

- **grow + adj. صفة = become**  
- The boy **grew** tall. = The boy **became** tall.
- **grow + object** يزرع  
- Farmers **grow** food.

### involve - contain - consist of

- **involve (d) = include (v)** يشتمل علي/يتضمن  
- The job of a secretary **involves** answering phone calls.  
= The job of a secretary **includes** answering phone calls.

- **involve (d) = include (v)** يُضمّن / يُدرج / يضيف (إلى)
  - Mr Omar tries to **involve** all students in the discussion.
  - = Mr Omar tries to **include** all students in the discussion.
- **involve (d) = require (v)** يتطلّب / يستلزم
  - Coming first **involves** too much hard work.
  - = Coming first **requires** too much hard work.
- **contain (ed) (v)** يحتوي علي (شيء بداخله أو ضمن مكوناته)
  - This file **contains** my personal photos.
  - I can't drink my tea because it **contains** a lot of sugar.
- **consist (ed) of** يتكوّن من (+ المكونات)
  - My flat **consists of** three bedrooms, a reception, two bathrooms and an American kitchen.

#### livestock - cattle

- **livestock (n)** حيوانات المزارع (تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع)
  - **Livestock is** sold in this market on Wednesday.
  - **Livestock are** sold in this market on Wednesday.
- **cattle (n)** الماشية من أبقار وعجول (تأخذ فعل جمع)
  - **Cattle are** sold in this market on Wednesday.

#### source - resource

- **source (n)** مصدر (تحصل منه علي شيء ما) - منبع - سبب
  - Journalists usually keep their **sources** secret. مصدر
  - Ethiopia is an important **source** of the River Nile. منبع
  - Your success is the **source** of our happiness. سبب
- **resource (n)** مُورد (مفرد موارد) - مُرَجع (مصدر تعليمي أو معلوماتي)
  - Egypt has a lot of natural **resources**. موارد
  - This book is an important **resource** for language teachers. مرجع

#### staff - stuff

- **staff** هيئة العاملين / طاقم العمل (في مؤسسة / شركة)
  - The new manager is meeting the **staff** for the first time tomorrow.
- **stuff** حوائج / لوازم / أشياء / أغراض (كلمة لا تُعدّ)
  - I don't like the **stuff** you are eating. What is it called?
  - The shop sells all kinds of **stuff**.



## Exercise On Vocabulary study

• ✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- On 6<sup>th</sup> October, our army began the attacks on the enemy by .....  
and sea. (الجزيرة - العجوة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. earth                      b. land                      c. floor                      d. soil
- Global Warming is a result of many reasons as ..... cutting down  
trees. (المنوفية - الياجور ٢٠٢٤)  
a. avoiding                      b. keeping                      c. neglecting                      d. refusing
- I can't ..... the difference between the two pictures. (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. fill                      b. tell                      c. speak                      d. ask
- All governments do their best to find solutions ..... the problem of  
global warming. (القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٣)  
a. in                      b. on                      c. about                      d. to
- Our company's new marketing ideas are ..... . (المنيا - مغاغة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. innovate                      b. innovation                      c. innovating                      d. innovative
- The price of the room includes breakfast. The antonym of "include"  
is ..... . (الأقصر - الطود ٢٠٢٣)  
a. add                      b. involve                      c. exclude                      d. contain
- "This forest has 50 varieties of insects." The word 'variety' in this  
sentence is a synonym of ..... .  
a. formality                      b. sort                      c. uniformity                      d. uniform
- He kept his promise. The verb 'kept' in this sentence is antonymous  
with ..... .  
a. broke                      b. followed                      c. fulfilled                      d. complied with
- "He runs a supermarket." This means he ..... it.  
a. races                      b. speeds                      c. manages                      d. works
- Which of the following gives the meaning of 'keeps' in: "He keeps  
livestock?"  
a. raises                      b. rises                      c. carries on                      d. includes
- "He kept looking at the sea in silence." 'Kept' here means '.....'.  
a. gave up                      b. went on                      c. saved                      d. stopped
- "Salah is an extraordinary player." This means Salah is a/an .....  
player.  
a. amazed                      b. amazing                      c. credible                      d. ordinary
- My uncle is expert ..... keeping livestock.  
a. of                      b. from                      c. in                      d. to
- This company ..... much money from electronics.  
a. did                      b. gave                      c. made                      d. spent

15. The crops ..... on our farm are watered directly from the Nile.  
 a. done                      b. taken                      c. told                      d. grown
16. We need to work hard for many years ..... to rebuild our country.  
 a. come                      b. comes                      c. has come                      d. to come
17. Cutting down rainforests will make the climate heat .....  
 a. in                      b. out                      c. up                      d. down
18. The population of Egypt increased ..... about 2% last year.  
 a. off                      b. by                      c. of                      d. in
19. The interviewer asked me to fill ..... the application form.  
 a. in                      b. down                      c. up                      d. on
20. It is a necessity to stop cutting ..... trees in forests.  
 a. up                      b. down                      c. for                      d. to

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### The future of farming

(SB pages 26 & 27)

#### 1. New solutions <sup>(1)</sup> for our growing world

According to <sup>(2)</sup> the United Nations <sup>(3)</sup>, there will be almost 10 billion <sup>(4)</sup> people in the world by 2050. As a result <sup>(5)</sup>, we will have to increase <sup>(6)</sup> our food production <sup>(7)</sup> by <sup>(8)</sup> about 70 percent. However, farmers do not have space <sup>(9)</sup> to keep more livestock <sup>(10)</sup> and grow more crops <sup>(11)</sup>.



Instead <sup>(12)</sup>, they'll need to look for <sup>(13)</sup> more sustainable solutions <sup>(14)</sup> and this will involve <sup>(15)</sup> producing a wider variety <sup>(16)</sup> of food.

How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in a laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't tell the difference <sup>(17)</sup> between the new burgers and real meat.

- (1) حلول  
 (2) بحسب  
 (3) الأمم المتحدة  
 (4) مليار  
 (5) كنتيجة لذلك  
 (6) يزيد  
 (7) إنتاج  
 (8) بنسبة  
 (9) مساحة- مُتسع  
 (10) حيوانات المزارع  
 (11) محاصيل  
 (12) بدلاً من ذلك  
 (13) يبحث عن  
 (14) حلول مُستدامة  
 (15) يشتمل على  
 (16) تشكيلة  
 (17) يذكر الاختلاف



## 2. Changes in agriculture that can save the land

Researchers<sup>(1)</sup> from the United Nations (UN) have found that some kinds of agriculture<sup>(2)</sup> are seriously<sup>(3)</sup> damaging<sup>(4)</sup> the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is due to<sup>(5)</sup> farmers using too many chemicals<sup>(6)</sup>, so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow without having to use so many chemicals.



- (1) الباحثون
- (2) الزراعة
- (3) بشدة
- (4) يدمر
- (5) بسبب
- (6) المواد الكيميائية
- (7) إفريقيا الجنوبية
- (8) يتوقع
- (9) ابتكارات
- (10) يزيل
- (11) مكان آخر

In southern Africa<sup>(7)</sup>, the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can expect<sup>(8)</sup> that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations<sup>(9)</sup> in technology to remove<sup>(10)</sup> water from the land and use it elsewhere<sup>(11)</sup>.

## The future of forests

(WB page 15)

The world has been losing<sup>(1)</sup> millions of trees from the rainforests every year for a long time. Many trees get cut down<sup>(2)</sup> so that<sup>(3)</sup> we have wood to make furniture<sup>(4)</sup>, and many more get cut down because people need the land to grow food.



- (1) يفقد
- (2) تُفطع
- (3) لكي
- (4) أثاث
- (5) مناطق
- (6) دولة كوستاريكا
- (7) يُفنع
- (8) السياحة
- (9) البطاح
- (10) يزداد سوء
- (11) الحكومات
- (12) يقل

However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important areas<sup>(5)</sup>. Changes started a long time ago in Costa Rica<sup>(6)</sup>. Around 60% of the rainforest in this small central American country was lost in the 1980s. But in the 1990s, the government started working with local farmers and persuaded<sup>(7)</sup> them to look after the rainforest instead of cutting down more trees. This encouraged tourists to visit the country, and soon the local people started to make more money from tourism<sup>(8)</sup> than from cutting down trees.

It was a great success<sup>(9)</sup>, but things got worse<sup>(10)</sup> in other parts of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and governments<sup>(11)</sup> around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees cut down there has been getting smaller<sup>(12)</sup> every year.

Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected and, like Costa Rica, it is hoped that more people will be visiting and enjoying this **extraordinary**<sup>(13)</sup> place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children will be learning about the rainforests for many years to come.

(13) استثنائي

## 2 Listening Texts

### The population problem in Egypt (WB page 14)



The **population**<sup>(1)</sup> of Egypt is **growing**<sup>(2)</sup> by nearly two **percent**<sup>(3)</sup> a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95 percent of its population live on **about**<sup>(4)</sup> four percent of its **land**<sup>(5)</sup>. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be **around**<sup>(6)</sup> 128 million by 2030. So, what are the solutions to these problems?



- (1) إعدد السكان
- (2) يتزايد
- (3) بالمائة (%)
- (4) حوالي
- (5) مساحة
- (6) حوالي
- (7) يستثمر
- (8) عاصمة
- (9) مشروعات

One plan is to **invest**<sup>(7)</sup> billions of pounds in a new **capital**<sup>(8)</sup> city outside Cairo. This is one of the big **projects**<sup>(9)</sup> that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

### The rainforest in Borneo (SB page 28)

**Interviewer** : Hello everyone. In today's **show**<sup>(1)</sup> I'll be talking to my guest, Dr Sarita Parker, who's an **expert**<sup>(2)</sup> on the **rainforests**<sup>(3)</sup>

in Borneo.

**Welcome**<sup>(4)</sup> to the show, Dr Parker.



- (1) عرض - برنامج حوارى
- (2) خبير
- (3) غابة استوائية
- (4) مرحباً
- (5) أنواع

**Dr Parker** : It's great to be with you, John.

**Interviewer** : Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

**Dr Parker** : A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different **types**<sup>(5)</sup> of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.



**Interviewer :** And, what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

**Dr Parker :** Well, Borneo is a large **island**<sup>(6)</sup> in **South-East Asia**<sup>(7)</sup>, and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, **recently**<sup>(8)</sup> the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than **usual**<sup>(9)</sup>. And scientists think that there will be even less **rainfall**<sup>(10)</sup> on the island in the next few years.

**Interviewer :** Why is that?

**Dr Parker :** **Unfortunately**<sup>(11)</sup>, some farmers are cutting down trees and starting **fires**<sup>(12)</sup> so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get **even**<sup>(13)</sup> hotter, **you see**<sup>(14)</sup>. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest **over**<sup>(15)</sup> the next few **decades**<sup>(16)</sup>. That would be **terrible**<sup>(17)</sup> for the animals and **plant life**<sup>(18)</sup> in the rainforest, and Borneo would **heat up**<sup>(19)</sup> even more.

**Interviewer :** Do you think those farmers will **keep**<sup>(20)</sup> cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

**Dr Parker :** Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to **feed**<sup>(21)</sup> their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming **techniques**<sup>(22)</sup> and things will improve. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change until they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. My **organisation**<sup>(23)</sup> will be **running**<sup>(24)</sup> an **education**<sup>(25)</sup> programme next month to help them.

**Interviewer :** Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.

(6)	جزيرة
(7)	جنوب شرق آسيا
(8)	حديثاً
(9)	مُعْتَاد
(10)	(مُعْتَدَل) هطول الأمطار
(11)	لسوء الحظ
(12)	حرائق
(13)	أكثر
(14)	كما ترى
(15)	عبر / علي مدار
(16)	عقود
(17)	مُطْبَع
(18)	الحياة النباتية
(19)	يُسَخَّن
(20)	يستمر في
(21)	يُطْعَم
(22)	تقنيات
(23)	مؤسسة
(24)	يدير / يشرف علي
(25)	تعليم

## PART IV LANGUAGE

Future forms صيغ المستقبل  
في هذا الدرس سنعرض لكم بعض الأزمنة والطرق التي تعبر عن استخدامات مختلفة للمستقبل.

### 1 The Future Simple with "will + inf."

المستقبل البسيط باستخدام

Form	The "will" future
<b>Active</b> المبني للمعلوم	→ Subj. + will + inf. .... ex. - I <b>will buy</b> this mobile.
<b>Passive</b> المبني للمجهول	→ Obj. + will be + p.p. .... ex. - This mobile <b>will be bought</b> (by me).

### Uses of "will + inf." استخدامات "will + inf."

<b>1. Future facts</b> الحقائق المستقبلية	ex. - Nada <b>will become</b> four years old next Monday.
<b>2. Prediction without evidence</b> التنبؤ دون دليل	وفي هذه الحالة يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوى على أفعال مثل : يتساءل , <b>be sure, think, believe, expect, hope, wonder</b> يشك <b>doubt</b> يخشى , <b>be afraid</b> ex. - I <b>think</b> the match <b>will be</b> very exciting. - I <b>doubt</b> I'll go out tonight. ومن الممكن أن يُستخدم مع (will) بعض الظروف مثل : <b>perhaps, possibly, probably, surely, certainly, definitely</b> ex. - <b>Perhaps</b> I'll see him at the party. - I'll <b>probably stay</b> in Cairo for a week.
<b>3. Quick decisions</b> القرارات السريعة	ex. - That's the phone - I'll <b>answer</b> it.
<b>4. Offers</b> العروض	ex. - I'll <b>go</b> shopping with you if you like.
<b>5. Request</b> الطلب	ex. - <b>Will</b> you <b>help</b> me with my homework?
<b>6. Warning</b> التحذير	ex. - Take the medicine regularly or your health <b>will get</b> worse.
<b>7. Promises</b> الوعد	ex. - I <b>will buy</b> you a new mobile when you pass your final exam.
<b>8. First conditional</b> الحالة الشرطية الأولى	ex. - If I have enough money, I <b>will travel</b> around the world.



## Mini Test 1

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I ..... this medicine after I have lunch.  
a. takes                      b. took                      c. will take                      d. will be taken
- This medicine ..... after I have lunch.  
a. takes                      b. took                      c. will take                      d. will be taken
- I expect Omar ..... first next term.  
a. comes                      b. came                      c. will come                      d. will be come
- What a beautiful dress! I ..... it.  
a. buy                      b. will buy                      c. am going to buy                      d. am buying
- Leave this heavy bag. I ..... it upstairs for you later.  
a. will carry                      b. am carrying  
c. am going to carry                      d. carry
- Study for your exams or you ..... them.  
a. fail                      b. will fail  
c. are going to fail                      d. won't fail
- I ..... to your birthday if I don't travel. I promise.  
a. will come                      b. won't come  
c. am going to come                      d. am coming

## 2

## The future continuous (will / may + be + inf. + ing)

Form	The Future Continuous Tense	زمن المستقبل المستمر
Affirmation & Negation الإثبات والنفي	→ Subj. + will / won't + be + inf. + ing ... . ex. - Reem <b>will be doing</b> the housework all morning tomorrow. ex. - At five next Friday, I <b>will be visiting</b> one of my old friends.	
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	→ Will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ... ? ex. - <b>Will Reem be doing</b> the housework all morning tomorrow ?	
'Wh_' Q السؤال بأداة استفهام	→ Q.W. + will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ... ? ex. - What <b>will Reem be doing</b> all morning tomorrow?	
تستخدم (may) بدلاً من (will) للتنبؤ بأحداث قد تكون مستمرة في المستقبل في حالة عدم التأكد :		
→ subj. + may be + inf. + ing ... . ex. - When Rodayna is 20, she <b>may be studying</b> medicine at university.		





2. If you call me at five, I ..... in bed, but I am not sure.  
 a. will be sleeping                      b. may be sleeping  
 c. will sleep                                d. may sleep
3. From 5 to 7, I ..... physics.  
 a. will be studied                        b. won't be studied  
 c. going to study                         d. will be studying
4. Students ..... from home on their tablets in the future. It is just a possibility.  
 a. may be studying                      b. may be studied  
 c. will be studied                         d. won't be studied
5. I ..... for my exams, so I can't go out with you.  
 a. will be studied                        b. will be studying  
 c. going to study                         d. am not studying
6. People drive petrol cars now. They ..... petrol cars in thirty years.  
 a. will be driven                         b. will still be driven  
 c. will still be driving                    d. are still driven

### 3 The future perfect (will + have + p.p.) المستقبل التام

<b>Active</b> المبني للمعلوم	<b>→ Subj. + will / won't + have + p.p. ...</b> <b>ex.</b> By lunchtime, my mother <b>will have done</b> the cooking.
<b>Passive</b> المبني للمجهول	<b>→ Obj. + will / won't + have been + p.p. ...</b> <b>ex.</b> By lunchtime, the cooking <b>will have been done</b> .

#### Uses الاستخدامات

١ التعبير عن حدث سيكون قد تم بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات زمنية مثل :  
 - by/before (six o'clock, midday, midnight, tomorrow, next Monday, 2030 ...)

- ex.** - My children **will have gone** to bed by 10 o'clock.  
 - Before bedtime, Rodayna **will have studied** Unit 3.

٢ التعبير عن حدث سيكون قد تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل :

- ex.** - When the bill rings, I **will have answered** all the questions.  
 - Sama **will have done** the shopping before she **returns** home.

### Mini Test 3

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- By this time tomorrow, he ..... all his tasks.
  - will be finishing
  - would finish
  - will have finished
  - had finished
- Phone me after 8 o'clock. We will ..... dinner by then.
  - have
  - be having
  - have had
  - have been had
- Which of the following is correctly structured ?
  - By next year, I will buy a new car.
  - By next year, I will have being bought a new car.
  - By next year, I should have to buy a new car.
  - By next year, I will have bought a new car.

### 4 be + going to + inf.

<b>Active</b> المبني للمعلوم	→ <b>Subj. + am / is / are + going to + inf. ...</b> <b>ex.</b> - We are going to build a villa.
<b>Passive</b> المبني للمجهول	→ <b>Obj. + am / is / are + going to be + p.p. ...</b> <b>ex.</b> - A villa is going to be built (by us).

### Uses الاستخدامات

<b>1. Personal plans and intentions</b> الخطط الشخصية والنوايا	<b>plan, have a plan, intend</b> ينوي, <b>have intentions</b> لديه النية <b>ex.</b> - My brother intends to live in Aswan. He <b>is going to buy</b> a flat there.
<b>2. Prediction based on evidence or present reality</b> التنبؤ القائم على دليل أو واقع حالي	و المقصود بالدليل هنا أنه يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بحدوث الشيء في المستقبل: <b>ex.</b> - My aunt is pregnant حامل. She <b>is going to have</b> a baby.



<b>3. Prepared decisions</b> القرارات المسبقة	<b>decided, have decided / made a decision / made up his mind</b> اتخذ القرار <b>ex.</b> - I have decided to change my car. I'm going to buy a modern one.
<b>4. Actions that are about to happen</b> أحداث على وشك الوقوع	وفي هذه الحالة يمكن أن نستخدم بعض العبارات الخاصة بالتنبيه أو لفت الانتباه مثل : <b>Watch out! = Look out!</b> انتبه / <b>Be careful! = Take care!</b> احترس <b>ex.</b> - Look out! You are going to drop the plates. (للحظ أنه أحياناً يمكن استخدام المضارع المستمر لنفس الغرض)

### Mini Test 4

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I have a plan. I ..... the quality of our products.
  - will increase
  - will be increased
  - am going to increase
  - will have increased
- He has already decided. He ..... his old flat.
  - is going to sell
  - is going to be sold
  - will have sold
  - will sell
- Be careful, honey. You ..... .
  - will be falling
  - are going to fall
  - will be fallen
  - will have fallen

## 5 The Present continuous

المضارع المستمر

Form	The present continuous
<b>Active</b> المبني للمعلوم	<b>→ Subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing ... .</b> <b>ex.</b> - Ahmed <b>is watching</b> the match at the stadium tomorrow.
<b>Passive</b> المبني للمجهول	<b>→ Obj. + am / is / are + being+ p.p. ... .</b> <b>ex.</b> - The match <b>is being watched</b> at the stadium (by Ahmed) tomorrow.

## Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية (أحداث تم الترتيب لحدوثها في وقت محدد في المستقبل لاحظ أنه لابد من وجود تعبير زمني يدل على المستقبل حتى يعبر المضارع المستمر عن المستقبل)

١ تدل التعبيرات الآتية على وجود ترتيبات :

**arranged, made arrangements, prepared, ...**

- ex.** - Everything is **arranged**. We **are leaving** to Cairo at five tomorrow.  
 - She **is flying** to India in the summer.  
 - My brother **is getting** married next month.

٢ الاجتماعات واللقاءات الرسمية وكذلك المناسبات الاجتماعية (مثل حفلات أعياد الميلاد والزفاف والزيارات والمقابلات ...) تستلزم ترتيبات لذلك فهي غالباً تكون في صيغة المضارع المستمر بشرط تحديد وقت الحدث :

- ex.** - Sama **is celebrating** her birthday party next Monday.  
 - My sister **is getting** married tomorrow.  
 - We **are meeting** the minister at eleven o'clock next Tuesday.  
 - I **am having** lunch with my uncle next Monday.

٣ يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث على وشك أن تبدأ خاصة مع أفعال مثل :

(**come, leave, go ...**)

- Sorry, I can't wait. I **am leaving** for the airport.

٤ غالباً لا تُستخدم أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والملكية وفعل (be) في الأزمنة المستمرة :

- ex.** - I **am going to see** the coral reefs المرجانية in the Red Sea next month during my stay there. (Not: am seeing)

### Mini Test 5

Apply

⊛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Some friends ..... by me for lunch as arranged.
 

a. will meet	b. going to meet
c. am meeting	d. are being met
- I ..... some friends for lunch as arranged.
 

a. will meet	b. going to meet
c. am meeting	d. are being met
- She ..... to Paris at five tomorrow. She's booked a ticket.
 

a. will fly	b. will be flying
c. is flying	d. b & c





Before  
By the time + (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) → مستقبل / جملة أمر

- ex. - Before I **leave** (= **have left**) the office, I'll **phone** some clients.  
- **Don't leave** before you **finish** (= **have finished**) the report.

مستقبل بسيط منفى (غالبًا)  
جملة أمر / + till / until + مضارع بسيط  
أو مضارع تام

- ex. - Mum **won't set** the table for lunch until my father **arrives**  
(= **has arrived**) home.  
- **Don't put** the bread in the shopping bag until it **completely cools**/  
has cooled.

6 إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتبًا له، و يمكن في هذه الحالة استخدام المضارع المستمر أو المستقبل المستمر:

- ex. - I **can't see** you this evening. I'm **visiting** my uncle in hospital.  
- I **can't see** you this evening. I'll **be visiting** my uncle in hospital.

## Exercises On Language

Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Exercises from Previous Exams

1. Who do you think ..... the football match this afternoon?

(القليوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٤)

- a. wins                      b. is winning              c. will win                      d. is going to win

2. This medicine ..... after I have breakfast.

(القليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٣)

- a. takes                      b. will be taken              c. will take                      d. is taking

3. My plane ..... at 10 o'clock tomorrow.

(القاهرة - مصر القديمة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. is leaving                      b. shall leave                      c. leave                      d. leaves

4. I can't visit you tomorrow, I ..... for my sister's wedding.

(القليوبية - غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. preparing                      b. will prepare  
c. will be preparing                      d. going to prepare

5. They intended to buy a big house. They ..... it soon. (المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٤)

- a. are going to buy                      b. will buy  
c. am buying                      d. will be buying



6. The room is hot. .... a window. (الغربية - قطور ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. I'm opening    b. I'll open    c. I'm going to open    d. I open
7. Watch out! You ..... the glasses. (القاهرة - مصر القديمة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. are dropping    b. drop  
 c. are going to drop    d. would drop
8. Nada ..... me at tomorrow's meeting in New York. She has already travelled there. (المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is replacing    b. is being replaced  
 c. will replace    d. will have replaced
9. There are a lot of people on the bus. It ..... difficult to find a seat. (المنوفية - الباجور ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. will have been    b. will be    c. is being    d. is going to be
10. Those bags look so heavy, so I ..... them for you. (الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. am carrying    b. will carry  
 c. will be carrying    d. will have carried
11. Ali is eating too much nowadays. I think he ..... fat. (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. will be got    b. is going to get  
 c. isn't going to get    d. can't get
12. He promised that he ..... me a valuable present. (الشرقية - مشتول السوق ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. will buy    b. would buy    c. is going to buy    d. is buying
13. Look out! A car ..... you. (الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. will hit    b. may hit    c. is hitting    d. is going to hit
14. He won't do any work ..... you pay him first. (الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. without    b. in order to    c. until    d. if
15. The school day starts at 8:00 am and ..... at 3 pm. (المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is going to end    b. ends    c. is ending    d. has ended
16. At 10:00 pm tonight, I ..... a movie in my room. (المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. going to watch    b. have watched    c. will be watching    d. watch
17. I ..... for my results all the next month. (المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. wait    b. will wait    c. will be waiting    d. will be waited
18. Salah has decided that he ..... at home and study his lessons. (المنيا - مطاي ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. is staying    b. will stay  
 c. is going to stay    d. will be staying
19. Mohamed will go to the university when he ..... his secondary school. (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. had finished    b. finishes    c. finish    d. will finish
20. By 2026, the government ..... a metro line from Cairo to the 10<sup>th</sup> of Ramadan City. (الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. will construct    b. is constructing  
 c. is going to construct    d. will have constructed





# PART TWO

LESSONS

# 3 & 4

SB pages 30 & 31 WB pages 16 & 17



## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

algae (n)	الطحالب	seaweed (n)	العُشب البحري
essay (n)	مقال	summarise (d) (v)	يُلخّص - يختصر
farmland (n)	أرض زراعية	summary (n)	مُلخّص
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية (بدون تربة)	topic (n)	موضوع - فكرة رئيسية
rural (adj)	ريفى	urban (adj)	حَضْرِي - مُدْنِي
		vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتي (لا يأكل اللحوم بأنواعها)

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

argue (d) (v)	يجادل - يناقش - يزعم	leaf - leaves (adj)	ورقة (أوراق) نبات
argument (n)	جدال/ نقاش - حجة/ رأي	link (ed) (n/v)	رابط - يربط
chance (n)	فُرصة - الحظ	lose - lost - lost (v)	يفقد - يخسر
contain (ed) (v)	يحتوي على	main (adj)	رئيسي/ أساسي
continent (n)	قارّة	miss (ed) (v)	يُفوّت - يفتقد
description (n)	وَصْف	notice (d) (v)	يلحظ
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	original (adj)	أصلي
evidence (n)	دليل	outdoors (adv)	خارج المبانى
fact (n)	حقيقة	population (n)	(عدد) السكان
factual (adj)	حقيقي	replace (d) (v)	يحل محل - يستبدل
flow (ed) (n/v)	تَدفّق - يتدفق	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
focus (ed) (v)	يُركّز	several (adj)	عديد - كثير
fresh (adj)	طازج	soil (n)	تربة زراعية
gap (n)	فراغ - مُتحة - ثغرة	specific (adj)	مُحدّد
giant (n/adj)	عملاق	surprisingly (adv)	من العجيب
heal (ed) (v)	يلتئم - يمتلئ	tasty (adj)	لذيذ
introduce (d) (v)	يطرح - يقدم	underline (d) (v)	يضع خطًا تحت

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
algae (n) الطحالب	a very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water جذوع or

<b>hydroponics (n)</b> الزراعة المائية	the process عملية of growing plants in water or sand, rather than بدلاً من in soil
<b>seaweed (n)</b> العشب البحري	a plant that grows in the sea
<b>summary (n)</b> مُلخّص	a short description that gives the most important information in a text
<b>vegetarian (n)</b> شخص نباتي	someone who does not eat meat or fish

## Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Definitions

- A ..... is person who doesn't eat meat or fish. (القاهرة - غرب شبرا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. vegetarian      b. farmer      c. creator      d. researcher
- ..... is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil. (الشرقية - مشاتل السوق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Dermatitis      b. Hydroponics      c. Astronomy      d. Botany
- ..... is a name for plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. (بورسعيد - بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Sugar cane      b. Algae      c. Pin tree      d. Pineapple
- A ..... is a plant that grows in the sea.  
a. production      b. source      c. seaweed      d. produce
- A/An ..... is a short description that gives the most important information in a text.  
a. earth      b. livestock      c. agriculture      d. summary

### 2 Key Vocabulary

- ..... farming means that we can grow food even in cities. (الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Village      b. Rural      c. Urban      d. Organic
- Some countries have started to depend on ..... in which plants are grown in water not in soil. (البحيرة - الدلتا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. nature      b. traditions      c. hydroponics      d. seaweeds
- Algae grow very quickly in water and wet places. Some kinds of algae are called ..... (البحيرة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)  
a. seashell      b. sea life      c. seaweed      d. seabed
- There is no need to read the whole essay. Just ..... it and I'll get the ideas. (بنى سويف - بيا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. sweep      b. summarize      c. interact      d. include



10. It is a crime to use fertile ..... for any purpose apart from growing crops. (الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٣)
- a. seaweed      b. farmland      c. algae      d. agriculture
11. In China and Japan, green seaweeds and ..... grow near water and in wet areas. (الغربية - شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٤)
- a. fruits      b. whale      c. insects      d. algae
12. In the exam, we are asked to write a/an ..... about a topic of common interest.
- a. essay      b. novel      c. play      d. contract
13. We are sometimes asked to write a/an ..... of a piece of writing.
- a. email      b. paragraph      c. essay      d. summary
14. In ..... areas, you can enjoy fresh air and green landscape.
- a. rural      b. urban      c. recent      d. modern
15. When you are asked to write about a certain ....., start with organizing your ideas.
- a. seashell      b. sea life      c. topic      d. seabed
16. being a ....., I never include meat or fish in my meals.
- a. urban      b. hydroponic      c. fussy eater      d. vegetarian

### 3 Important Vocabulary

17. A broken heart takes a long time to ..... (الدقهلية - بإيقاس ٢٠٢٤)
- a. heal      b. treat      c. deal      d. cure
18. It would be better if we ..... old glass and plastic.
- a. concluded      b. included      c. introduced      d. reused
19. The New Administrative City is a/an ..... project. Imagine building a complete smart city.
- a. usual      b. giant      c. specific      d. available
20. The ..... of Egypt is about 104 million people.
- a. population      b. environment      c. rainforest      d. area
21. .... works of art are of great value.
- a. Stuff      b. Rainfall      c. Occasional      d. Original
22. The ..... between services in the countryside and the city is very big.
- a. capital      b. percent      c. gap      d. a & c
23. All ..... suggests that the new plan could help improve the agricultural sector القطاع.
- a. fire      b. evidence      c. flow      d. shows
24. .... instructions are detailed and exact مضبوط.
- a. Usual      b. Giant      c. Specific      d. Available
25. ...., such a short young man joined the basketball team.
- a. Efficient      b. Efficiently      c. Surprising      d. Surprisingly

26. To succeed in life, you aren't supposed to ..... any chance available.  
a. gain                      b. use                      c. miss                      d. win
27. Plants grow well in rich ..... where it can take in nutrients مغذيات  
with water.  
a. weather                      b. soil                      c. atmosphere                      d. climate
28. In the south of Aswan, the High Dam controls the ..... of water  
into the Nile.  
a. flow                      b. proposal                      c. dry                      d. growth
29. It is a waste of time ..... with him. He won't be persuaded after all.  
a. healing                      b. farming                      c. creating                      d. arguing
30. He does all his jobs ..... . He is skilled, hard-working and intelligent.  
a. efficient                      b. efficiently                      c. surprising                      d. surprisingly

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>earn</b>	money	يكسب مال	<b>keep</b>	cutting down trees يستمر في إزالة الأشجار
<b>give</b>	an opinion	يعطي رأي	<b>offer</b>	the best solution يقدم الحل الأفضل
<b>make</b>	sense	ذو معني	<b>show</b>	the order                      يوضح الترتيب
	... much healthier	تجعل ... صحي بدرجة أكبر	<b>take</b>	ages                      يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
factual                      حقيقي	actual, real, true
original                      أصلي	native, first
original                      حقيقي/أصلي	authentic, real, genuine
specific                      مُحدّد	particular, definite
summary                      تلخيص	synopsis, outline
urban                      حضري - قروي	civil

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite) العكس
factual                      حقيقي	false, fictional                      زائف - خيالي
original                      حقيقي/أصلي	fake, copied, imitated                      مُزوّف - منسوخ
poor soil                      تربة رديئة	rich soil, fertile soil                      تربة خصبة



specific  
urban

فُحَدِّد  
حَضْرِي - مُدْنِي

common, indefinite  
rural, primitive

عام/غير مُحَدِّد  
ريفِي - بدائي

#### 4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

all the evidence suggests that	تشير كل الدلائل إلى أن	open spaces	أماكن مفتوحة
And then?	وماذا بعد؟	opinion about/of/on	رأي في
areas with poor soil	مناطق ذات تربة رديئة	over the next decades	خلال العقود القادمة
as much as you can	أقصى ما تستطيع	the arguments against	دلائل النفي
based on	قائم على / مبني على	the arguments for	دلائل الإثبات
due to the fact that	لأن	the order in which things happen	ترتيب حدوث الأشياء
good for	مفيد لـ	the reason why	السبب في أن
green space	مساحة خضراء	the whole text	النص بالكامل
In my view,	من وجهة نظري	To conclude,	الخلاصة أن ...
link to	رابط لـ		

#### 5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

focus on	يُرَكِّز علي	heal (up)	يلتئم - يمتلئ
go up	يرتفع	look back at	ينظر مرة أخرى إلى
grow by	ينمو بمعدل ... / يزيد بنسبة ...	lose up to	يفقد ما يقرب من
grow to	ينمو / يزداد حتى	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ

#### 6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

##### lose - miss

- **lose (lost - lost) (v)** يخسر (مال أو معركة أو مباراة ...)  
- People who had trusted El-Mostareeh **lost** their money, livestock or cars.  
- Our National team **lost** the final against Senegal.
- **miss (ed) (v)** يُفوّت/يفوته (وسيلة مواصلات أو موعد)  
- I **missed** the school bus.  
- She doesn't want to **miss** the start of the film.
- **miss (ed) (v)** يعجز عن (تحقيق أو الوصول لشيء ما) - يفشل في تحقيق  
- He **missed** the world record by three seconds.
- **miss (ed) (v)** يفتقد (شخص)  
- While I was abroad, I **missed** my family and friends.

##### outdoor - outdoors

- **outdoor (adv)** خارجي/ خلوي (صفة تُستخدم قبل اسم فقط)  
- Football is an **outdoor** sport.

- **outdoors (adv)** بالخارج / في الخلاء (ظرف يصف فعل ولا يُستخدم قبل اسم)  
- Football is played **outdoors**.

### summary - abbreviation

- **summary (n)** تلخيص / موجز (كتاب / قصة / مقال / تقرير)  
- I didn't read the novel itself. I only read a **summary** of it.
- **abbreviation (n)** اختصار (الكلمة أو عبارة)  
- Dr is the **abbreviation** of the title 'doctor'.

## 7 Reading Numbers قراءة الأعداد

١. الأرقام من (٠) إلى (١٩) تُقرأ كالتالي:

0	zero	4	four	8	eight	12	twelve	16	sixteen
1	one	5	five	9	nine	13	thirteen	17	seventeen
2	two	6	six	10	ten	14	fourteen	18	eighteen
3	three	7	seven	11	eleven	15	fifteen	19	nineteen

٢. مضاعفات (١٠) تُقرأ كالتالي:

10	ten	50	fifty	90	ninety
20	twenty	60	sixty	100	(a /one) hundred
30	thirty	70	seventy	1,000	(a /one) thousand
40	forty	80	eighty	10,000	ten thousand

٣. لاحظ قراءة الأرقام التالية:

100,000	(a /one) hundred thousand
1,000,000	(a /one) million
1,000,000,000	(a /one) billion
1,000,000,000,000	(a /one) trillion

٤. عند قراءة عدد مكون من رقمين تبدأ بالعشرات ثم الآحاد و تفصل بينهما ب (-) :

- **21:** twenty-one
- **47:** forty-seven
- **99:** ninety-nine

٥. تتم قراءة عدد مكون من ثلاث أرقام كالتالي :

آحاد + units + عشرات + tens + and + hundred + عدد المئات

- **136:** one hundred (and) thirty-six
- **571:** five hundred (and) seventy-one
- **999:** nine hundred (and) ninety-nine



7. تتم قراءة الأعداد الكبيرة (أكثر من ثلاث أرقام) كالتالي :

أ. تُقسّم العدد بداية من اليمين إلى مجموعات من ثلاث أرقام

ب. نقرأ كل مجموعة علي حدة بداية من اليسار و نضع بعدها التمييز مثل:

(thousand / million / billion ....)

ج. نفصل بين كل مجموعة و أخرى ب (,) و ليس (and)

لاحظ قراءة العدد التالي:

- 16,924,479,951:

sixteen billion, nine hundred and twenty-four million, four hundred and seventy-nine thousand, nine hundred and fifty-one

- 2006: two thousand and six

8. في لغة التحدث غالباً نقرأ الأعداد المكونة من أربع أرقام كل رقمين علي حدة بداية من اليسار:

- 1976: nineteen seventy-six

- 2010: twenty ten

9. لا تُجمع الكلمات التالية اذا جاء قبلها عدد:

(hundred / thousand / million / billion ....)

- 83,464: eighty-three thousand, four hundred and sixty-four

- 769: seven hundred and sixty-nine

### Exercise On Vocabulary study

#### • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What you're saying doesn't really ..... any sense. (أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. make                      b. get                      c. do                      d. cause
2. "I like urban life" The adjective "urban" here is an antonym of ..... (بني سويف - إهناسيا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. civil                      b. rural                      c. modern                      d. contemporary
3. "This application wasn't genuine, so it corrupted the device." the adjective "genuine" is a synonym of the adjective ".....". (المنيا - سمالوط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. modern                      b. strong                      c. original                      d. fake
4. Football is an outdoor game but basketball is played ..... (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٤)  
a. indoor                      b. outdoor                      c. outdoors                      d. indoors
5. CPR is a famous ..... (الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. punctuation                      b. word                      c. summary                      d. abbreviation
6. "We would like you to give us specific examples." The adjective 'specific' here is synonymous with .....  
a. common                      b. usual                      c. indefinite                      d. definite
7. I can't read the whole work. It is better if you find its ..... for me.  
a. outline                      b. full copy                      c. in-length                      d. whole

8. Plants grow well in ..... soil.  
 a. poor                      b. rocky                      c. rich                      d. infertile
9. This copy is NOT ..... . It was not drawn by Leonardo da Vinci.  
 a. fake                      b. false                      c. authentic                      d. wrong
10. To 'conclude' an essay means to ..... it.  
 a. close                      b. open                      c. start                      d. begin
11. The solution you have ..... to the problem can't be applied لا يمكن تطبيقه.  
 a. speculated                      b. invested                      c. offered                      d. missed
12. It ..... me ages to finish the summary of that book.  
 a. kept                      b. took                      c. told                      d. grew
13. I was asked to ..... my opinion, but I preferred to keep it to myself.  
 a. keep                      b. give                      c. ask                      d. damage
14. "This statue is not original." The adjective 'original' in this sentence gives the antonym of ..... .  
 a. first                      b. fake                      c. native                      d. a & c
15. Focus ..... your study and don't pay attention to anything else. (مبدأ - الروضة ٢٣ - ٢٠)  
 a. in                      b. at                      c. on                      d. for
16. A palm tree can grow ..... ten metres.  
 a. to                      b. by                      c. with                      d. on

## PART III READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### Is algae the future of food?

(SB page 30)

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and **dry**<sup>(1)</sup> for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?

**Algae**<sup>(2)</sup> are plants that **grow**<sup>(3)</sup> very quickly in water and **wet**<sup>(4)</sup> places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of algae are called **seaweed**<sup>(5)</sup>, and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.

Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the **ocean**<sup>(6)</sup>.



- (1) جاف
- (2) الطحالب
- (3) ينمو
- (4) مبلل
- (5) الغنشب البحري
- (6) المحيط



In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we **breathe**<sup>(7)</sup> because algae makes a lot of oxygen.

But, will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even **notice**<sup>(8)</sup>. Scientists are already using seaweed to **replace**<sup>(9)</sup> salt in bread and some other foods to make it much healthier.

(7) يتنفس

(8) يلاحظ

(9) يحل محل

## Hydroponics

(WB page 16)

With the population of the world **predicted**<sup>(1)</sup> to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production.

A possible solution to this problem is using something called **hydroponics**<sup>(2)</sup>. Hydroponics is a way to grow plants **without**<sup>(3)</sup> using any **soil**<sup>(4)</sup>.



Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which **contains**<sup>(5)</sup> all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with **poor soil**<sup>(6)</sup>. Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and, **surprisingly**<sup>(7)</sup>, it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is **reused**<sup>(8)</sup>. There are also fewer problems with **insects**<sup>(9)</sup>. Almost any plant can grow using hydroponics and many plants produce more fruit and leaves this way.

Some people **argue**<sup>(10)</sup> that hydroponics is not very good for large farms because they need expensive computers to **control**<sup>(11)</sup> the **flow**<sup>(12)</sup> of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others argue that it could **offer**<sup>(13)</sup> the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future, we will be using hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as deserts, **Antarctica**<sup>(14)</sup> or even space.

(1) يتنبأ

(2) الزراعة المائية

(3) بدون

(4) التربة

(5) يحتوي على

(6) التربة الرديئة

(7) من العجيب

(8) يعيد استخدام

(9) حشرات

(10) يزعم

(11) يتحكم في

(12) تدفق

(13) يوفر

(14) القارة القطبية الجنوبية

## Urban Farming

(WB page 17)

This essay will **focus on**<sup>(1)</sup> something my uncle is planning to do to help **food production**<sup>(2)</sup>; something called **urban farming**<sup>(3)</sup>.



(1) يركز على

(2) إنتاج الطعام

(3) الزراعة المدنية

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends.

Urban farming is growing food in our cities. Of course, cities are not usually good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space, but he says they will be using **flat roofs**<sup>(4)</sup>, gardens and open spaces to grow what they can.

In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens, but next year, the group of friends will be planting more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be eating fresh fruit and vegetables from these spaces.

**In my view**<sup>(5)</sup>, urban farming is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to save money in the shops, and it might also help them to earn money. They hope they will be selling some of the **produce**<sup>(6)</sup> to local restaurants and markets.

**To conclude**<sup>(7)</sup>, urban farming is an interesting idea. All the **evidence**<sup>(8)</sup> suggests that it could help us grow our own food in the future, even in cities without much **outdoor space**<sup>(9)</sup>.

(4) الاسطح المستوية

(5) من وجهة نظري

(6) محصول

(7) ختامًا / في النهاية

(8) دليل

(9) الفراغات الخارجية

## 2 Listening Text

### How to write a summary

**Amir** : Is that your homework, Hany?

**Hany** : Yes. What's wrong with it?

It took me ages<sup>(1)</sup>.

**Amir** : I can see that. It's very long.

**Hany** : So, what?

**Amir** : Well, we were asked to write a **summary**<sup>(2)</sup>, and yours looks longer than the **text**<sup>(3)</sup> we're **summarising**<sup>(4)</sup>! You know it should be shorter, right?

**Hany** : Yes, I know that. But I didn't want to **miss**<sup>(5)</sup> anything important.

**Amir** : So, what was the text about?

**Hany** : I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.

**Amir** : My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start by reading **the whole text**<sup>(6)</sup> and try to understand as much as you can. Ask yourself: What's the **main**<sup>(7)</sup> idea? How would I **explain**<sup>(8)</sup> it to a friend quickly? Don't start writing anything until you've done that.



(SB page 30)

(1) استغرق مني وقتًا طويلًا

(2) تلخيص

(3) النص

(4) يلخص

(5) يفوت

(6) النص بالكامل

(7) رئيسي

(8) يشرح - يوضح



**Hany** : But, you know me. I always forget something important.

**Amir** : Then you should read the text again. But the second time, **underline**<sup>(9)</sup> the most important words or **phrases**<sup>(10)</sup> in it. These are usually nouns for the things or people that the text is about, verbs for important **actions**<sup>(11)</sup>, or phrases for times and places.

**Hany** : Okay.

**Amir** : After that, try to only look at the important words that you underlined when you're writing your summary. And just write **complete**<sup>(12)</sup> sentences that **fill in**<sup>(13)</sup> the **gaps**<sup>(14)</sup> between those words.

**Hany** : I see.

**Amir** : It's also **helpful**<sup>(15)</sup> to use words or phrases that show the order in which things happen. Phrases like 'first', 'after that' or 'finally'.

**Hany** : And then?

**Amir** : When you've finished writing your summary, read it again. Check that it's **clear**<sup>(16)</sup>, and then look back at the **original**<sup>(17)</sup> text to see if you've **included**<sup>(18)</sup> all the important information.

(9) ضع خط

(10) عبارات

(11) أحداث

(12) كامل

(13) يملأ

(14) فراغات

(15) مفيد

(16) واضح

(17) أصلي

(18) يُضمّن

## PART IV LANGUAGE

### Exercises On Language



● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Step-by-step exercises

1. **A** : Can you come on Monday evening?

**B** : I'd love to, but I ..... tennis with friends.

a. will play      b. shall play      c. going to play      d. am playing

2. I will ..... my uncle off at the airport, so I can't meet you at nine.

a. be seeing      b. see      c. have seen      d. have been seen

3. It's arranged. We ..... to the Red Sea this summer.

a. are going      b. are going to go  
c. will go      d. go

4. I think my brother ..... a doctor. He's very clever.

a. is      b. is going to be      c. is being      d. will be

5. From five to seven next Monday, I ..... a medical conference.

a. will have attended      b. will be attended  
c. will be attending      d. am going to be attended

6. I ..... eighteen next Monday.  
 a. am going to be    b. will be    c. am being    d. be
7. The museum typically ..... at 8 a.m.  
 a. opens    b. is going to open  
 c. is opening    d. will open
8. Doctors predict they ..... chronic diseases.  
 a. are treating    b. will treat  
 c. are going to treat    d. will have treated
9. We've run out of sugar. I ..... to the market and get some.  
 a. will go    b. have gone    c. go    d. went
10. **A** : What would you like to start your lunch with, Sir?  
**B** : Mmm, I .....with lentil soup.  
 a. will start    b. am going to start  
 c. am starting    d. starts
11. It is very cloudy. I think it ..... by the time we are leaving the office.  
 a. shall rain    b. is going to be rainy  
 c. will be rained    d. rains
12. **A** : What are you doing next Saturday afternoon?  
**B** : I'm not sure. I ..... at home.  
 a. will be sleeping    b. may be sleeping  
 c. will have slept    d. am sleeping
13. Soon after the exams, Rokaya ..... to Aswan as planned.  
 a. will travel    b. has travelled  
 c. is going to travel    d. shall travel
14. I ..... to Paris next Monday. It's all arranged by me.  
 a. fly    b. am flying    c. will fly    d. is going to fly
15. The drinks will .....  
 a. be ordered    b. be ordering    c. have ordered    d. order
16. It has already been decided. They ..... a meeting when the new boss has arrived.  
 a. will have    b. are going to have  
 c. having    d. shall have
17. People ..... in houses under water in twenty years' time.  
 a. may have lived    b. will be lived    c. may be living    d. are living
18. I ..... tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.  
 a. 'm leaving    b. 'll leave    c. going to leave    d. shall leave



19. I have an intention to study Russian. I ..... for a course.  
 a. am going to apply    b. shall apply    c. am applying    d. applies
20. Mustafa joined the Faculty of Medicine two years ago. He ..... as a doctor.  
 a. will graduate    b. is going to graduate  
 c. graduates    d. is graduating
21. This is the key of your new car. You ..... it if you come first.  
 a. are getting    b. are going to get  
 c. should get    d. will get
22. I expect they ..... the match tomorrow.  
 a. win    b. will win  
 c. are winning    d. are going to win
23. The temperature of the world ..... in the future.  
 a. will still be rising    b. will still have risen  
 c. is still rising    d. still rises
24. **A** : ..... your ebook tomorrow? **B** : No. You can borrow it.  
 a. Will you have used    b. Do you use  
 c. Are you used    d. Will you be using
25. Finish the reports today or you ..... your job.  
 a. will lose    b. lose  
 c. are losing    d. are going to lose
26. This time next Friday, this car ..... to me.  
 a. will be belonging    b. is belonging  
 c. will have been belonged    d. will belong
27. The Liverpool's players are known to be skilled. They ..... the match easily.  
 a. will win    b. win    c. are winning    d. going to win
28. I can't travel at 9 a.m. tomorrow as I ..... a meeting.  
 a. have had    b. going to have    c. have    d. will be having
29. I want to buy a new car, so I ..... save a lot of money.  
 a. am going to    b. will    c. am to be    d. will be
30. She'll phone us as soon as she ..... at Madrid Airport.  
 a. arrived    b. had arrived    c. arrives    d. arriving

## 2 Exercises from Previous Exams

31. The school day ..... at 7:30. (الفيوم - أغسطس ٢٠٢٣)
- a. will start    b. is starting    c. is going to start    d. starts

32. In ten years, more people ..... in the New Administrative Capital.

(قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٣)

- a. are living      b. live      c. will be living      d. living

33. It's 11:50 pm. Go quickly to buy this medicine because the pharmacy ..... at midnight.

- a. will close      b. is closing      c. closes      d. is going to close

34. A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It ..... a busy day.

(الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

- a. is going to be      b. was      c. will be      d. has been

35. Be careful; the bus ..... towards you.

(الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. going to come      b. is coming  
c. will have come      d. will be coming

36. My brother will go to the park when he ..... his homework.

(الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. will finish      b. finish      c. had finished      d. finishes

37. He ..... our relatives tomorrow. Everything is arranged.

(أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. visits      b. is visiting      c. will be visited      d. is going to visit

38. I can't go to the club at seven next Friday, as I ..... some trees in my garden.

(دمياط - دمياط ٢٠٢٤)

- a. will be planting      b. plant  
c. will plant      d. had planted

39. The programme predicts what life ..... like in 40 years' time.

(سوهاج - جھينة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. would be      b. will have been      c. will be being      d. will be

40. I haven't seen my cousin for five years. I'm sure she .....

(سوهاج - جھينة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. grow      b. will have grown  
c. will be grown      d. is grow

41. I've got a job in Luxor, so I ..... there for the next two years.

(أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٤)

- a. work      b. was working  
c. will have worked      d. will be working

42. By ten o'clock tonight, I ..... all my homework.

(الإسكندرية - المنزه ٢٠٢٣)

- a. finish      b. am finishing  
c. will finish      d. 'll have finished

43. When you get off the train, I ..... for you.

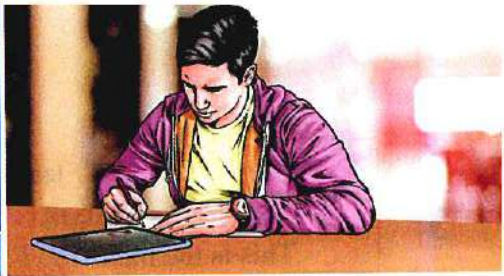
(البحيرة - دوش عيسى ٢٠٢٤)

- a. will wait      b. am going to wait  
c. will be waiting      d. will have wait



## 3 Check your understanding

44. The match starts at nine. That is according to a/an ..... .  
a. arrangement    b. timetable    c. intention    d. prediction
45. I'm sure he will come first. That is a/an ..... .  
a. arrangement    b. timetable    c. intention    d. prediction
46. I'm flying to London at 6:30 next Friday. That is a/an ..... .  
a. arrangement    b. timetable    c. intention    d. prediction
47. I am going to go shopping for clothes next Monday. This is my ..... .  
a. arrangement    b. timetable    c. intention    d. prediction
48. I can't go for a walk tomorrow as ..... .  
a. I will be helping mum at home.    b. I will help mum at home.  
c. I am helping mum at home.    d. a & c
49. "Will you be using your tablet tomorrow?" This means ..... .  
a. I want you to turn off your tablet  
b. I want to borrow your tablet  
c. I want to tell you about the importance of your tablet  
d. I know someone who wants to steal your tablet
50. "People will still be reading paperbacks in the future." This means ..... .  
a. people look forward to reading paperbacks  
b. people don't read paperbacks at present  
c. people read paperbacks at present  
d. people didn't read paperbacks in the past
51. "Rokaya has the intention to revise her physics lessons tomorrow."  
This means ..... .  
a. Rokaya will revise her physics lessons tomorrow  
b. Rokaya will be revising her physics lessons tomorrow  
c. Rokaya is revising her physics lessons tomorrow  
d. Rokaya is going to revise her physics lessons tomorrow
52. "He has arranged everything for his wedding next Thursday." This  
means ..... .  
a. he is getting married next Thursday  
b. he is going to get married next Thursday  
c. he will get married next Thursday  
d. he will have been married next Thursday



تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

## PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

لذلك / نتيجة لذلك      جملة + **so = as a result**

- A lot of people drink polluted water, **so / as a result** they become ill.  
للحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (**as a result**) في نهاية الجملة:  
**ex.** - A lot of people drink polluted water. They become ill **as a result**.

من الغريب أن ....      **Surprisingly = It is surprising that**

- **Surprisingly**, he didn't get angry.  
= **It is surprising that** he didn't get angry.

لكي      جملة + **so that / in order that / in the hope that**

- Scientists can modify some genes **so that** the tomatoes do not rot so quickly.

مثل / على سبيل المثال      **like = such as**

- I don't eat sweet foods **like (such as)** cakes and candies.

**because**

- **Because / As / Since** جملة نتيجة + جملة سبب      لأن  
**ex.** - **Because / As / Since** I was injured, I didn't play the match.  
= I didn't play the match **because / as / since** I was injured.

- **Because of / Owing to / Due to** جملة نتيجة + **n / (inf. + ing) + بفضل / Thanks to** بسبب  
**ex.** - **Because of / Owing to / Due to** being injured, I didn't play the match.  
= I didn't play the match **because of / owing to / due to** being injured.

**With + obj.** مفعول + **p.p. ...**

للحظ استخدام الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة:

- **Because** جملة مبنية للمجهول .... +
- **Due to / Because of + the fact that** جملة مبنية للمجهول + ...
- **With + obj.** مفعول + **p.p. + to + inf. ...**

- ex.** - **Because** the population of the world **is predicted** to grow, we need to increase food production.  
= **Due to** the fact that the population of the world **is predicted** to grow, we need to increase food production.  
= **With** the population of the world **predicted to grow**, we need to increase food production.



## leaving out relative pronouns

١. يُمكن أن يتم حذف كلاً من (who – which – whom – that) إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل:

- ex. - This is the man **who** I called yesterday.  
= This is the man **I called** yesterday.

٢. يمكن حذف كلاً من (who – which - that) في الحالات التالية :

أ. إذا جاء بعدهم مبني للمعلوم وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف ضمير الوصل والفاعل ويبقى الفعل مضافاً له (ing) :

- ex. - The secretary **who works** here speaks five languages.  
= The secretary **working** here speaks five languages.

ب. إذا جاء بعدهم مبني للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضاً ضمير الوصل و (be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل.

- ex. - The bully **who was caught** last month was sent to prison.  
- The bully **caught** last month was sent to prison.

ج. إذا جاء بعدهم (be) كفعل أساسي وهنا يتم حذف ضمير الوصل و (be)

- ex. - **The food which is in** the fridge is not fresh.  
- **The food in** the fridge is not fresh.

٣. يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان بعده اسم أو صفة بعدها اسم:

- ex. - Harry Keen, **who is a talented footballer**, played for Tottenham, England.  
- Harry Keen, **a talented footballer**, played for Tottenham, England.

## get + p.p.

يمكن استخدام (get) حسب الزمن بدلاً من (be) في صيغة المبني للمجهول كالتالي:

- Obj. مفعول + be + p.p. .... = Obj. مفعول + get + p.p. ....

- ex. - Criminals **are arrested** by the police. = Criminals **get arrested** by the police.  
- I **was promoted** last month. = I **got promoted** last month.

## Exercise On Language Hints

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Many trees ..... down so that we have wood to make furniture.

(المنوفاة - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤)

a. cut                      b. get cut                      c. will cut                      d. have cut

2. I offered to help him in his difficult situation. ...., he refused.

a. So                      b. That's why                      c. As a result                      d. Surprisingly

3. We work hard ..... we can achieve our goals in life.

a. because                      b. because of                      c. in order that                      d. in order to

4. She wasted her time. ....

a. So, she failed the exam                      b. As a result, she failed the exam  
c. She failed the exam as a result                      d. a, b & c

5. .... Rokaya loves children, she chose to be a primary school teacher.  
 a. Because            b. Due to            c. So that            d. In the hope that
6. .... her love for children, Rokaya chose to be a primary school teacher.  
 a. Because            b. Due to            c. So that            d. In the hope that
7. She is engaged to the young man ..... you have played tennis with.  
 a. who            b. that            c. no pronoun            d. a, b & c
8. I feel sorry for the tall girl ..... food in this restaurant.  
 a. who serves            b. serving            c. served            d. a & b
9. I don't like the food ..... in this restaurant.  
 a. who serves            b. serving            c. served            d. a & b
10. With my team ..... to win the cup, I was eager **مملّف** to watch the match in the stadium.  
 a. predict            b. predicted            c. is predicting            d. b & c

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٤)

The application of spreading theories of economics has so far failed to lift developing countries out of the cycle of poverty that has effects on the majority of their inhabitants. Worldwide, there are still an estimated 1.3 billion people earning a dollar or less a day and living in extreme poverty. Decades of huge loans by banks from affluent nations at interest rates that cripple developing economies do not appear to be providing a solution to poverty. Professor Muhammad Yunus' Grameen Bank, however, is taking a different approach to the problem.

In 1976, the Bangladeshi economics professor started a microcredit programme with a loan of just 62 cents (U.S) each to a group of 42 workers. Instead of loaning large amounts of money to well-off debtors, the bank started to make extremely small loans to poor Bangladeshis who were considered a bad risk by the traditional banking system. He **astounded** his critics by proving that the poor were more likely to repay their debts than the wealthy. Virtually none of the thousands of women who have been financially assisted by the bank for over 20 years have defaulted on their payments. Yet all are expected to pay interest and stick to the rules of contract. These borrowings have enabled Bangladeshi women to set up



numerous small-scale projects which directly benefit their families and the communities where they live. The success of the experiment has brought about a revolution in the antipoverty programmes.

- The best title for this passage is “.....”.
  - A common problem with a new solution
  - A new problem with common solution
  - A new way of begging money
  - The developing countries’ loans
- We can infer استنتج from the passage that the underlined word “**astounded**” means .....
  - astonished
  - provided
  - admitted
  - improved
- The last lines of the passage represent .....
  - the success of the experience
  - the failure of the experience
  - the increase of poverty
  - the decrease of interests
- At the beginning of his experiment, professor Muhammad Yunus was .....
  - supported
  - criticized
  - suspected
  - appreciated
- Professor Muhammad Yunus’ Grameen bank’s way to treat poverty was .....
  - unique
  - common
  - unreliable
  - dishonest
- Have theories of economics managed to overcome the poverty in the world? Why?
  - Yes, as many people live happily and comfortably.
  - Yes, as there are few developing countries.
  - No, as there are loans that need to be paid by many developed countries.
  - No, because most developing countries’ people suffer from poverty.
- What did Muhammad Yunus do to face poverty in Bangladesh?
  - He borrowed from the rich
  - He lent young people
  - He lent the poor
  - He borrowed from Bangladeshi Banks
- What do you think of Mohammed Yunus?
  - Helpless
  - Greedy
  - Selfish
  - Genius

١. عند التعبير عن الفكرة الرئيسية للمقال نبدأ بـ :

- **The subject of this essay is +** الموضوع ... الموضوع هو ...  
- **The subject of this essay is the future of farming.**

**OR: This essay will focus on +** الموضوع ... سوف يركز هذا المقال علي ...  
- **This essay will focus on the future of farming.**

٢. عند التركيز علي مثال محدد نبدأ بـ :

- **In the case of / An example of +** اسم ... فيما يخص ...  
- **In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens.**

٣. عند التعبير عن سبب حدوث شيء ما نستخدم :

- **... due to the fact that / because +** جملة ... لأن ...  
- **Cities are not good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space.**

٤. عند التعبير عن المعلومات القائمة علي حقائق نستخدم :

- **All the evidence suggests+** جملة ... كل الدلائل / الشواهد تشير إلي أن ...  
- **All the evidence suggests that urban farming could help us grow our own food in the future.**

٥. عند التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي في موضوع المقال نستخدم :

- **In my opinion / view+** جملة ... من وجهة نظري ...  
- **In my view, urban farming is a great idea.**

٦. عند اختتام موضوع المقال نستخدم :

- **In conclusion / To conclude,+** جملة ... الخلاصة هي أن ...  
- **To conclude, urban farming is an interesting idea.**

### Model Essay

\* A model Essay about “The Future of Farming” from student’s book Page (31)

#### The future of farming

This essay will focus **يركز** on the future of agriculture.

First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. After that, we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. Finally, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future. The Earth’s surface **سطح** is heating up and soon there will be less



land that farmers can use. In the case of Africa, the continent could lose up to 18 percent of its farmland in the next fifty years. As a result, farmers will need to farm their land even more efficiently. بكفاءة

Due to the fact that there will be less land available for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources of food, like algae, instead.

In my view, farmers should see this is as a chance to try new techniques and to start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms. They should start doing this immediately so they are prepared for the future.

To conclude, الخلاصة agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades and farmers will need to change the way they farm, too.

### Writing practice

- Write an email of about **ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following:** (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)

Your name is Khalid. Your email address is khalid220@gmail.com. Write an email to your English friend John telling him about the most famous Egyptian dishes that the Egyptians serve to celebrate different occasions. John's email address is jo333@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### 3 الترجمة Translation

- 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. We can always make chat stories fun and interesting so people can enjoy them. Technology can become boring when we forget to include human feelings in these stories. (أسوان - كوم إمبو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يمكننا دائماً جُعل قصص الدردشة ممتعة ومثيرة للاهتمام حتى يتمكن الناس من الاستمتاع بها، يمكن أن تصبح التكنولوجيا مملة عندما ننسى تضمين المشاعر الإنسانية في هذه القصص.
- b. يمكننا دائماً جُعل قصص الدردشة ممتعة وشيقة لذلك استمتع بها الناس، إن التكنولوجيا يمكن أن تصبح مملة عندما نتذكر أن نضمن المشاعر الإنسانية في هذه القصص.
- c. يمكننا دائماً جُعل قصص الدردشة ممتعة ومهمة حتى يتمكن الناس من الاستمتاع بها، يمكن أن تصبح التكنولوجيا مملة عندما نتذكر تضمين مشاعر الناس في هذه القصص.
- d. يمكننا دائماً جُعل قصص الدردشة ممتعة ومثيرة للاهتمام لذلك استمتع الناس بها، يمكن أن تصبح التكنولوجيا مملة عندما ننسى تضمين المشاعر الإنسانية في هذه القصص.

2. The greatest barrier to success is the fear of failure. However, failure is the first step on the road towards real success. (الإسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)

- a. أكبر عائق أمام النجاح هو الخوف من الفشل، ومع ذلك فإن الفشل هو الخطوة الأولى على طريق النجاح الحقيقي.
- b. أكبر حاجز أمام النجاح هو الخوف من الفشل، ومع ذلك فإن المحاولة هي الخطوة الأولى على طريق النجاح الحقيقي.
- c. أكبر عائق أمام النجاح هو الخوف من الفشل، ومع ذلك فإن الفشل ثم النجاح هو الخطوة الأولى على طريق النجاح الحقيقي.
- d. أكبر عائق أمام الفشل هو الخوف من النجاح، ومع ذلك فإن الفشل هو الخطوة الأولى على طريق النجاح الحقيقي.

3. Many people all over the world face challenges nowadays. Wars, conflicts as well as natural disasters damage the environment and destroy resources. (الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يواجه الكثير من الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم تغيرات في الوقت الحاضر، فالحروب والصراعات والكوارث الطبيعية تضر بالبيئة وتدمر الموارد.
- b. يواجه الكثير من الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم تحديات في الوقت الحاضر، فالحروب والصراعات والكوارث الطبيعية تضر بالبيئة وتدمر الموارد.
- c. يواجه الكثير من الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم تحديات في الوقت الحاضر، فالحروب والمجاعات والكوارث الطبيعية تضر بالبيئة وتدمر الموارد.
- d. يواجه الكثير من الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم تحديات في الوقت الحاضر، فالحروب والصراعات والكوارث المناخية تضر بالبيئة وتدمر الموارد.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

- a. يواجه الشباب هذه الأيام الكثير من التحديات، والحصول على وظيفة جيدة هي إحدى هذه التحديات، فلذلك من الضروري لهم أن يتحلوا باليسمات الجيدة وأن يمتلكوا المؤهلات المطلوبة في سوق العمل. (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)
- a. Today, young people face many changes. Doing a good job is one of them, so it is necessary for them to have good qualities and qualifications needed in the job market.
- b. Today, old people face many changes. Getting a good job is one of them, so it is unnecessary for them to have good quantities and qualifications needed in the job market.
- c. Today, young people face several challenges. Avoiding a good job is one of them, so it is necessary for them to have good qualities and qualifications in the job market.
- d. Today, young people face several challenges. Getting a good job is one of them, so it is necessary for them to have good qualities and the qualifications required in the job market.



٢. النجاح ليس نتيجة لعدم ارتكاب أي أخطاء، ولكنه نتيجة لعدم ارتكاب نفس الخطأ مرتين. (أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٤)

- Successful is not the result of never making mistakes, but the result of never making the same mistake twice.
- Success is not the result of never making mistakes, but the result of never making the same mistake twice.
- Success is not the cause of never making mistakes, but the result of never making the same mistake twice.
- Success is not the result of never doing mistakes, but the result of never making the same mistake twice.

٣. تتقدم الأمم بالعلم والثقافة والتخطيط الجيد والعمل الجاد، وكل ذلك ينتج من التعليم الجيد.

(أسبوط - سادل سليم ٢٠٢٤)

- Nations achieve application through science, culture, good plan and hard work. This can result in a good teaching.
- Nations achieve progress through science, culture, good planning and hard work. This can result from good education.
- Through progress and science, agriculture, good planning, hard work. Nations can produce good Education.
- Through process and science, culture, good planes, hard work. Nations can have good Education.

### PART III

## JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

◀ للفائقين فقط

### المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين Key Vocabulary for Advanced level

#### agriculture

- **agriculture (n)** علم زراعة النباتات ورعايتها  
- He intends to study **agriculture** at university.
- **agriculture (n)** النشاط الزراعي  
- **Agriculture** employs about 40% of the population in Egypt.
- **agricultural (adj)** زراعي  
- It is against the law to build on **agricultural** land.
- **agriculturalist (n)** خبير زراعي  
- According to **agriculturalists**, this soil is not good for planting rice.

## crop

### • crop (n)

محصول غذائي

- The main **crop** we plant here is wheat.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **grow / plant a crop** يزرع محصول غذائي
- **bring in / harvest a crop** يجني المحصول
- **destroy / damage a crop** يدمر المحصول
- **a cash crop** محصول مخصص للبيع
- **a genetically modified crop** محصول معدل وراثياً

### • crop (ped) (v)

يُثمر - يُنتج الثمار أو الحبوب

- Orange trees **crop** in winter.

### • crop (ped) (v)

يُقصر الشعر

- Little children usually do not like to **crop** their hair short.

### • crop (ped) (v)

يقص الصورة

- He **cropped** the photo to fit the frame.

## innovation

### • innovate (d) (v)

يبتكر

- He has an amazing ability to **innovate** new ideas for advertisements.

### • innovation (n)

ابتكار - اختراع - فكرة جديدة (اسم معدود)

- A good teacher should come up with **innovations** that help his students enjoy learning.

### • innovation (n)

الابتكار - الاختراع (اسم غير معدود)

- The manager of our company encourages **innovation** in industry. الصناعة

### • innovative / innovatory (adj)

جديد - مُبتكر - خلاق

- His **innovative** ideas made the office very successful.

## vary

### • vary (ied) (in) (v)

يتنوع - يتنوع

- As a teacher, you need to **vary** your teaching methods. يتنوع

- The plants on the farm **vary in** size and colour. يختلف / يتنوع

### • variety (in) (n)

تنوع - نوع

- The **variety** of programmes attracts viewers. تنوع

- This zoo has about 3000 **varieties** of birds and animals. أنواع

### • various (adj)

عديد / متعدد / مختلف

- This drink is available in **various** sizes.



## sustainable

- **sustain (ed) (v)** يصون - يحافظ علي - يُبقى علي  
- It is necessary for a teacher to **sustain** his students interest.
- **sustain (ed) (v)** يعاني من (بدون حرف جر) انخفاض.  
- During COVID -19 pandemic, oil prices **sustained** a sharp drop.
- **sustainable (adj)** صديق للبيئة ≠ **unsustainable** ضار بالبيئة  
- A bike is a **sustainable** means of transport.
- **sustainable (adj)** مُستدام / دائم نمو  
- The government aims at achieving a **sustainable** economic growth.

## Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
  1. Lake Nasser has more than 15 ..... of fish.  
a. hydroponics      b. varieties      c. sources      d. livestock
  2. This is not the ..... . You have made a lot of changes to it.  
a. plan original      b. plan which is original  
c. original plan      d. b & c
  3. How do you think you will put all that ..... in this small car?  
a. stuff      b. stuffs      c. staff      d. staffs
  4. The neighbour's sheep ..... the grass in my field  
a. harvested      b. cropped      c. collected      d. farmed
  5. All the ..... of this farm is sold to the restaurants in the nearby town.  
a. crops      b. vegetables      c. produce      d. cattle

## Advanced Exercise on Language

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
  1. Look where you are going. You ..... into a hole.  
a. will step      b. will be stepped  
c. are going to step      d. are to step
  2. My wife and I are good at learning languages, so our children ..... good at languages too.  
a. will become      b. are going to become  
c. are becoming      d. will have become
  3. For being stubborn, I expect she ..... easily.  
a. won't persuade      b. isn't going to be persuaded  
c. won't be persuaded      d. is being persuaded
  4. I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I ..... my homework.  
a. will have done      b. will be done      c. will be doing      d. do
  5. I doubt that he ..... your kind offer.  
a. isn't going to accept      b. isn't accepting  
c. don't accept      d. won't accept

# Test on Unit 3

تدوينة

\* التقييمات الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب  
\* تدريبات الأزهر الشريف  
بنك الأسئلة



● Understand

● Apply

● Create

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Farmers always look after their ..... They feed them all.  
a. culture      b. industry      c. livestock      d. transplant
2. We must look for more ..... solutions that involve producing a wider variety of foods. (الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. sustainable      b. unavailable      c. traditional      d. insupportable
3. We live in the age of technological ..... (الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. innovation      b. reclamation      c. immigration      d. declaration
4. The farmers of our village sell their fresh ..... to city inhabitants. (المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. produce      b. farmland      c. farming      d. guardian
5. He has a ..... of fashionable clothes. (الأقصر - الأقصر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. very      b. various      c. variety      d. varies
6. .... could be a possible solution to the problem of the lack of farmland. (كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٣)  
a. Hydroponics      b. Vegetarian      c. Prediction      d. Evidence
7. Men always do their best to ..... money for a living and face life difficulties. (المنيا - سمالوط ٢٠٢٤)  
a. win      b. gain      c. beat      d. earn
8. A : My dad, I told you yesterday to mend my bicycle but you didn't.  
B : I know, I'm sorry, I ..... it. (الشرقية - مشئول السوق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. am going to mend      b. will mend  
c. am mending      d. will be mending
9. The program predicts what life ..... in 20-or-30 - years' time.  
a. will be like      b. will be liking  
c. will have liked      d. may be liking
10. He ..... the furniture of his flat. He has made up his mind.  
a. will change      b. is changing  
c. is changed      d. is going to change
11. When you reach home, I ..... lunch. You can help me with it.  
a. will have made      b. will make      c. will be making      d. make
12. I don't think it ..... tomorrow. The sky is very clear. (الدقهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. will rain      b. is raining      c. is going to rain      d. rain
13. This time next year, we ..... for our General Secondary Education Certificate Examination. (الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤)  
a. will study      b. study  
c. will studying      d. will be studying



14. This capsule ..... until I have lunch. (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)
- a. didn't take      b. hadn't taken      c. wasn't taken      d. won't be taken
15. I can't visit my cousin in June because I ..... for a charity.
- a. will work      b. am working  
c. am going to work      d. will be working

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

With the development of modern civilization, life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was once a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. Getting on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers transport passengers according to rules they themselves set. They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours, streets are so blocked that it takes an age for the driver to get to their destination.

1. The increase in population in capitals ..... the joy of having a car.  
a. ruins      b. eases      c. increases      d. improves
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....  
a. passengers      b. buses      c. taxis      d. taxi drivers
3. The best title for this passage is ".....".  
a. Avoiding Private Cars      b. The Disadvantages of Private Cars  
c. The Advantages of Private Cars  
d. Private Cars Are a Mixed Blessing
4. Reaching your destination during rush hours .....  
a. isn't a problem      b. takes too long  
c. is easy      d. takes a while
5. According to the writer, when are cars exposed to robbery?  
a. When the streets are so blocked      b. When they are left in garages  
c. When they are left in the street      d. When they aren't covered
6. Most people insist on possessing a private car to keep ..... the long wait at the bus stop.  
a. up      b. away from      c. down      d. on
7. Taking a public bus is a problem because .....  
a. it is very slow      b. it is so expensive  
c. getting on and off the bus is very difficult  
d. bus drivers drive carelessly
8. The underlined word "rapid" can be antonymous with .....  
a. fast      b. dangerous      c. slow      d. tremendous



3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Some scientists believe that science has no limits. This can lead them to dangerous experiments which can create problems or even new viruses.

(الفيوم - إحصاء ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العالم ليس له حدود، وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو حتى فيروسات جديدة.
- b. يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود، وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو حتى فيروسات جديدة.
- c. يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود، وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تحل مشكلات أو حتى تقضي علي فيروسات جديدة.
- d. يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود، وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى خبرات خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو حتى فيروسات جديدة.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

يؤدي العمل الجماعي دون أدنى شك إلى تحقيق الأهداف، بينما العمل الفردي يتسبب في إهدار الوقت والجهد دون الوصول لنجاح حقيقي.

(الإسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Teamwork with much doubt leads to achieving goals, while individual work leads to wasting time and effort without real success.
- b. Teamwork undoubtedly lead to achieving goals, while individual work leads to wasting time and effort without real success.
- c. Teamwork undoubtedly leads to achieving goals, while individual work leads to wasting time and effects without real success.
- d. Teamwork without doubt leads to achieving goals, while individual work leads to wasting time and effort without achieving real success.

4. Answer the following questions:

1. Kent was a good friend. Prove.

(أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)

.....

2. "If Goneril has a child who is cruel to her, she will have a taste of her own medicine." What does King Lear mean by this expression?

(أسوان - كوم إمبو ٢٠٢٤)

.....

3. Why does the fool say the cart is pulling the horse? (الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

.....

5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

*"Your Goal in Life and Your Plans to Achieve It"*

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Revision 1

Based On Units 1, 2 & 3

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 20 : 23

## PART I VOCABULARY

### Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المشتقات والمشتقات

boxer (n)	ملاكم	local (adj)	محلي
boxing (n)	الملاكمة	meal (n)	وجبة
certificate (n)	شهادة	register (ed) (v)	يُسجّل
college (n)	كلية - مدرسة عليا	runner (n)	عداء
distance (n)	مسافة	search (ed) (v)	يبحث
fatty (adj)	دهني	together (adv)	معاً
large (adj)	كبير	training (n)	التدريب
likely (adj - adv)	على الأرجح / في الغالب / محتمل / متوقع		

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>do</b>	a cooking course يحصل على دورة تدريبية في الطهي	<b>give</b>	... energy يمد ... بالطاقة
	training يتمرن		a reason يعطي مبرر
<b>feel</b>	(a lot) better يشعر بتحسن (كبير)	<b>have</b>	an accident يقع له حادث
<b>get</b>	a certificate يحصل على شهادة	<b>put</b>	a bandage on يضع ضمادة على

### 2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at the start في البداية	less likely to get ill أقل عُرضة للمرض
a wide variety of مجموعة متنوعة من	make me stronger يجعلني أقوى
fast food وجبات سريعة	on my own بمفردي
fatty food طعام عالي الدهون	on their website على موقعهم
in a different way بطريقة مختلفة	search for يبحث عن
in two weeks' time خلال أسبوعين	sit at a desk يجلس على مكتب
larger amounts of كميات أكبر من	talk to يتحدث إلي
less likely to be injured أقل عُرضة للإصابة	

## Reading & Listening Texts

### 1 Reading Texts

#### Kareem

(SB page 36)

I'm a **runner**<sup>(1)</sup> who **regularly**<sup>(2)</sup> runs very long **distances**<sup>(3)</sup>. I need to eat **large**<sup>(4)</sup> **amounts**<sup>(5)</sup> of pasta, fruit, potatoes and other vegetables so I have enough **energy**<sup>(6)</sup> to run for 30 or 40 kilometres each day. I also need to eat a lot of different foods that will make me stronger, such as meat, fish and eggs. I drink a lot of orange juice to **boost**<sup>(7)</sup> my **immune system**<sup>(8)</sup>, which means that I'm less **likely**<sup>(9)</sup> to get ill and have to stop **training**<sup>(10)</sup>. I usually **prepare**<sup>(11)</sup> my own food at home, but when I want to eat out with my friends or family, I usually go to an Italian restaurant!



- (1) عداء
- (2) بانتظام
- (3) مسافات
- (4) كبير
- (5) كميات
- (6) طاقة
- (7) يدعم
- (8) جهاز المناعة
- (9) محتمل - متوقع
- (10) التدريب
- (11) يُعدّ

#### Amr

I'm a **boxer**<sup>(1)</sup>, so I need to eat larger amounts of food than other **athletes**<sup>(2)</sup>. When I started **boxing**<sup>(3)</sup>, I started eating in a different way. **Instead of**<sup>(4)</sup> three large **meals**<sup>(5)</sup> a day, I usually eat six smaller meals, but I don't eat a wide **variety**<sup>(6)</sup> of food.



I usually eat eggs or white meat, like chicken, for almost every meal. Eating like this helps me to be stronger than the people I fight, which means I'm less likely to be **injured**<sup>(7)</sup>. Before a big fight, I have to do a lot of training and I eat as much as possible, without eating unhealthy, **fatty**<sup>(8)</sup> food, such as cakes and chocolate.

- (1) ملاكم
- (2) الرياضيون
- (3) الملاكمة
- (4) بدلاً من
- (5) وجبات
- (6) تنوعية
- (7) مُصاب
- (8) دهني



**To:** Aya@mail.com

(SB page 38)

**From:** Hadeer@mail.com

Hi Aya,

How are you today?

I think it's great that you're going to start cooking healthier food. I'm sure it will give you more **energy**<sup>(1)</sup> and make you feel a lot better. I'd also like to learn how to cook meals that are healthier than the fast food that I usually eat.



(1) طاقة

(2) برنامج تدريبي

(3) معاً

(4) محلي

(5) كلفة

(6) مرافقين

(7) يُسجّل

(8) يبحث

Do you want to do a cooking **course**<sup>(2)</sup> with me so we can learn **together**<sup>(3)</sup>? There's a new course that's going to start in two weeks' time at the **local**<sup>(4)</sup> **college**<sup>(5)</sup>. It's every Tuesday evening from 6 p.m. to 8 p.m. And it's only for **teenagers**<sup>(6)</sup>!

You don't need to go to the college to **register**<sup>(7)</sup>, you can do it on their website. Just **search**<sup>(8)</sup> for the cooking courses and it's the first course you'll see. I can do the course on my own if you can't make it, but it would be a lot more fun to learn with a friend.

Talk to you soon!

Hadeer

## 2 Listening Text

(SB page 37)

**Interviewer:** Hello and welcome back to the show. Next, we're going to talk to Mariam Mohamed from Giza who has just started to do an interesting **hobby**<sup>(1)</sup>. Could you tell us what you do, Mariam ?

(1) هواية

(2) حادث

**Mariam:** Yes, sure. In my free time, i'm learning to help people who are ill or who have had **an accident**<sup>(2)</sup>.

**Interviewer:** That sounds great. So you can learn new **skills**<sup>(3)</sup> and help other people at the same time.

**Mariam:** Exactly. I'm doing a **first aid course**<sup>(4)</sup> with about twenty other young people at our **sports centre**<sup>(5)</sup>.



**Interviewer:** And will you receive a **certificate**<sup>(6)</sup> at the end of the course ?

**Mariam:** Yes. I have to go to at least fifty hours of lessons. Then I'll get my first certificate which shows that I can **perform**<sup>(7)</sup> **basic**<sup>(8)</sup> first aid.

**Interviewer:** Great ! So you're learning simple **techniques**<sup>(9)</sup> to start with and then you'll learn more techniques, is that right ?

**Mariam:** Yes. At the start, you need to learn simple things like how to put a **bandage**<sup>(10)</sup> on someone. You don't have to know how to perform CPR, for example. I'm sure I'll be taking courses for the next few years so, I can learn as much as possible.

**Interviewer:** And why do you enjoy learning first aid so much ? What's so interesting about it ?

**Mariam:** Well, it's great to learn something you can use to help people in the future, and the course is really fun too. You don't need to sit at a desk and read books to learn first aid, you need to do it. Our teacher understands that and he makes sure that the lessons are fun.



- (3) مهارات
- (4) دورة تدريبية للإسعافات الأولية
- (5) مركز رياضي
- (6) شهادة
- (7) يؤدي
- (8) أساسي
- (9) اساليب
- (10) ضمانة / شاش

**Interviewer:** So you can learn something useful and have fun at the same time. Fantastic !

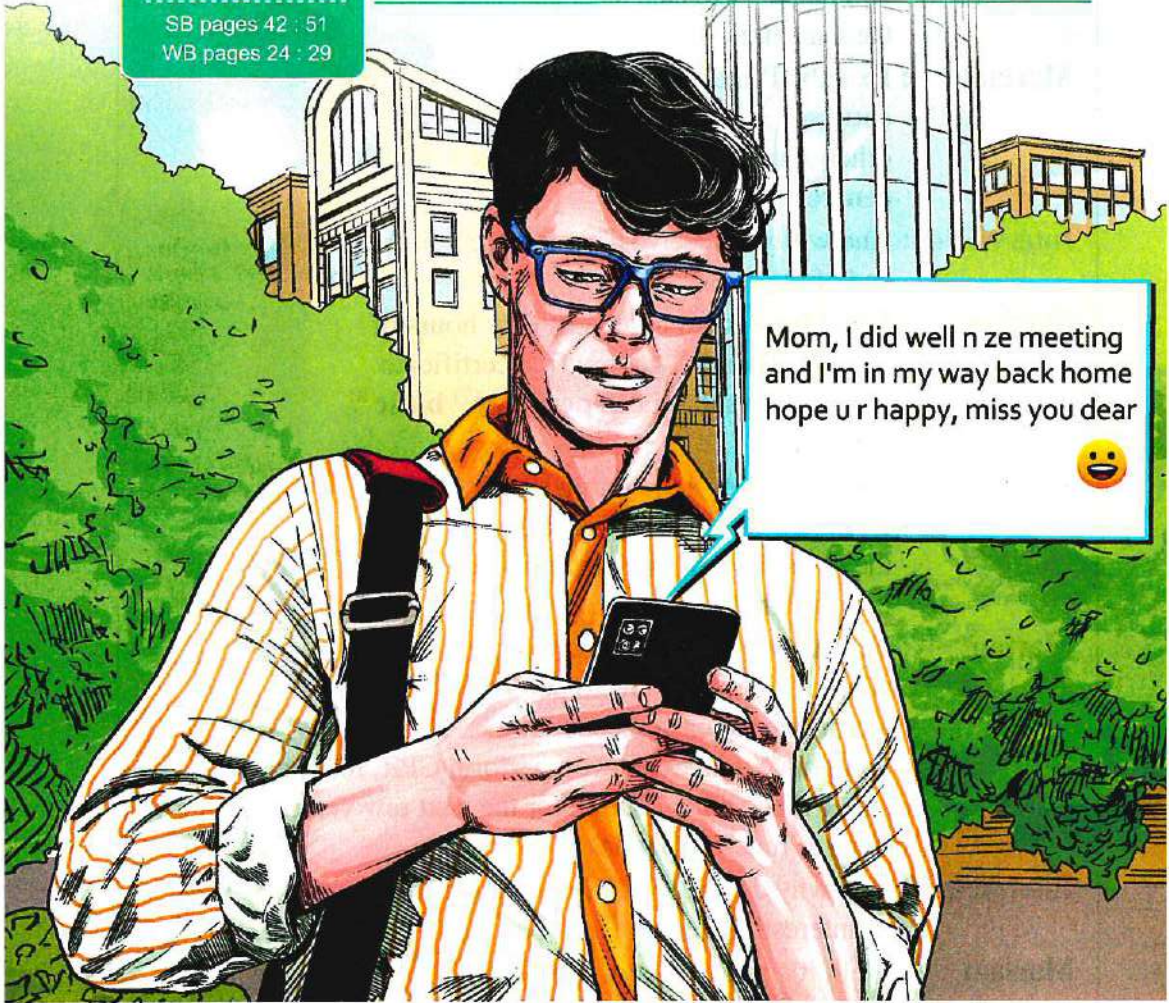


# UNIT 4

SB pages 42 : 51

WB pages 24 : 29

## Changing English



Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- 📖 **Reading** : An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post
- ✍️ **Writing** : A blog post about mobile phone use and its effects

- 👂 **Listening** : A speaker talking about messaging; Tips on how to write a successful blog post
- 🗣️ **Speaking** : A debate
- 🗨️ **Language** : Reported speech; reporting orders, requests and advice; could/should have + past participle
- 🧠 **Life skills** : Communication



## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

abbreviation (n)	اختصار	misunderstand -	يُسيء فهم
acronym (n)	اختصار بالأحرف الأولى	misunderstood (v)	
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة - حتماً
formal (adj)	رسمي	negative (adj)	سلبى
frown (n)	تجهم - عيوس	positive (adj)	إيجابى
frown (ed) (v)	يغضب - يتجهم (يُكشِّس)	request (ed) (n - v)	طلب - يطلب
innovator (n)	مُبتكر - مُخترع	tone (n)	نبرة الصوت - طابع / أسلوب
linguist (n)	خبير لغة - عالم لغة		

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

actually (adv)	في الحقيقة	everyday (adj)	يومي
admit (ted) (v)	يقر - يعترف بـ	expressions (n)	تعبيرات (وجه)
advantages (n)	مزايا	face-to-face (adj)	وجهاً لوجه
app (application)	تطبيق	facial (adj)	وجهي (خاص بالوجه)
appear (ed) (v)	يظهر -	immediate (adj)	فوري
apply (ied) (v)	يُطبِّق - يتقدم بطلب	inform (ed) (v)	يعطي معلومة - يُعلم
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	lovely (adj)	رائع
author (n)	مؤلف	positively (adv)	بشكل إيجابى
aware (adj)	علي علم - مُدرك	punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم
basic (adj)	أساسي	purpose (n)	غرض
basically (adv)	أساساً - فى الأساس	require (d) (v)	يتطلب - يستلزم
chat (ted) (n - v)	دردشة - يدرش	research (ed) (n - v)	بحث - يجري بحث
conversation (n)	حوار	response (n)	استجابة - رد
correct (ed) (adj - v)	صحيح - يُصحح	suitable (adj)	مناسب
deal - dealt (d) (v)	يتعامل - يتناول	teenager = teen (n)	مُراهق
disadvantages (n)	عيوب	warn (ed) (v)	يُحذِّر



## 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>abbreviation (n)</b> اختصار	a short form صيغة of a word or expression تعبير
<b>acronym (n)</b> اختصار بالحروف الأولى	a word formed from the first letters of the words that make up تُكوّن the name of something
<b>emoji (n)</b> رمز تعبيرى	an icon used in electronic messages and on websites
<b>formal (adj)</b> رسمى	used in official or serious جاد situations
<b>frown (v)</b> يعبس (يكتشر)	to have an expression تعبير on your face that shows you are not happy
<b>innovator (n)</b> مُبتكر - مُخترع	someone who introduces changes and new ideas
<b>linguist (n)</b> خبير لغة - عالم لغة	someone who studies or teaches linguistics اللغويات
<b>misunderstand (v)</b> يسى فهم	to not understand properly
<b>not necessarily (adv)</b> ليس بالضرورة	a response استجابة to something that has been said that may not be true or correct
<b>tone (n)</b> نغمة الصوت / لبرة	the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking

## Exercises On Vocabulary

## • Understand

- ❁ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Definitions

- A/An ..... is someone who knows a lot about language.  
(الأسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)  
a. linguist      b. scientist      c. biologist      d. archaeologist
- ..... are symbols which represent feelings. (الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. Emojis      b. Stamps      c. Acronyms      d. Grammar
- To ..... is to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy.  
(الغربية - قطور ٢٠٢٤)  
a. smile      b. understand      c. blink      d. frown
- ..... language is used in official or serious situations.  
a. Necessary      b. Not necessary      c. Formal      d. Informal
- A/An ..... is someone who introduces changes and new ideas.  
a. blogger      b. innovator      c. messenger      d. linguist

6. A ..... is the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking.  
 a. tone                      b. suffix                      c. thesaurus                      d. prefix
7. To ..... is to not understand properly.  
 a. frown                      b. understand                      c. misunderstand                      d. blog
8. "....." is a response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct.  
 a. Necessarily                      b. Not necessarily  
 c. Formally                      d. Informally
9. A/An ..... is a short form of a word or expression.  
 a. procedure                      b. abbreviation                      c. emoji                      d. acronym
10. A/An ..... is a word formed from the first letters of the words that make up the name of something.  
 a. procedure                      b. innovation                      c. emoji                      d. acronym

## 2 Key vocabulary

11. Some ..... believe that using messaging language could harm English and other languages. (الاسماعيلية - الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. geologists                      b. biologists                      c. archaeologists                      d. linguists
12. Our geography teacher never smiles and has a permanent ..... . (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. frown                      b. emoji                      c. tone                      d. laugh
13. We use the ..... "kg" for kilogram. (أسيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. domination                      b. celebration                      c. innovation                      d. abbreviation
14. We use ..... to express emotions in electronic messages. (الأسكندرية - المنتزة تان ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. symbols                      b. emojis                      c. abbreviations                      d. acronyms
15. I ..... at my child when he behaved badly during the party. (الفيوم - اطنسا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. approved                      b. rewarded                      c. smiled                      d. frowned
16. You can only use messaging language in a/an ..... email. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. normal                      b. formal                      c. abnormal                      d. informal
17. You can change the ..... of the story by using different words or expressions. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. melody                      b. sound                      c. voice                      d. tone
18. Steve Jobs, the founder of Apple, was an ..... who developed the technology industry greatly. (أسوان - كوم أمبو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. innovator                      b. agreement                      c. informal                      d. application



19. You can't use abbreviations in a/an ..... email or letter. (القاهرة - مصر القديمة (٢٠٢٤))  
 a. formal      b. informal      c. positive      d. negative
20. Having a chronic disease does not ..... mean that you will die young. (المنوفية - أشمون (٢٠٢٤))  
 a. negatively      b. impossibly      c. necessarily      d. especially
21. Women have very ..... roles in our country as they share in our progress. (المنيا - مطاس (٢٠٢٣))  
 a. passive      b. reflexive      c. negative      d. positive
22. LOL is the ..... for "Laugh out loud".  
 a. introduction      b. emoji      c. acronym      d. communication
23. As he doesn't like me, he easily ..... me. (سوهاج - جهينة (٢٠٢٤))  
 a. understands      b. admires      c. misunderstands      d. supports
24. "May I use your phone" is an example of polite .....  
 a. acronym      b. request      c. advice      d. tone

### 3 Important vocabulary

25. The language of text messages doesn't ..... correct spelling. (الجيزة - الوراق (٢٠٢٤))  
 a. inquire      b. acquire      c. require      d. enquire
26. Students are ..... not to use emojis in their formal writing. (أسوان - ادفو (٢٠٢٤))  
 a. warned      b. said      c. begged      d. promised
27. Dr Magda is the ..... of a book titled "A Guide to Messaging". (الجيزة - الصف (٢٠٢٤))  
 a. author      b. explorer      c. innovator      d. linguistic
28. Be ..... of the dangers that threaten your country. (الغربية - غرب طنطا (٢٠٢٣))  
 a. everyday      b. aware      c. face-to-face      d. personal
29. The ..... idea of your essay is wonderful, but the body needs rearranging. (القليوبية - الخصوص (٢٠٢٣))  
 a. basically      b. facial      c. basic      d. endless
30. Messaging language ..... in everyday English more often. (المنوفية - أشمون (٢٠٢٤))  
 a. repairs      b. appears      c. prepares      d. pairs
31. I don't know how to ..... with this difficult situation. (دمياط - الروضة (٢٠٢٤))  
 a. admit      b. require      c. deal      d. apply
32. 'Ma3ak .....' from El-Moasser will help you take online exams according to the new educational system.  
 a. Section      b. Headline      c. Purpose      d. App

33. Your ..... expressions reflect **عكس** your feelings and reaction **رد الفعل**.  
 a. endless      b. facial      c. basics      d. basically
34. Law ..... to all citizens.  
 a. requires      b. admits      c. applies      d. deals
35. You need to know how to deal with the problems of ..... life.  
 a. everyday      b. face-to-face      c. aware      d. endless
36. Would you kindly ..... us of your new address?  
 a. research      b. reuse      c. include      d. inform
37. The main ..... of a fridge is to keep our food fresh for some time.  
 a. section      b. headline      c. purpose      d. app
38. There should be a/an ..... summit **قمة** between the leaders of the two countries.  
 a. everyday      b. face-to-face      c. aware      d. endless
39. What you say is ..... reasonable. **معقول**  
 a. endless      b. facial      c. basic      d. basically
40. Some scientists are still ..... a vaccine **مصل** for this disease.  
 a. researching      b. warning      c. interesting      d. informing
41. Sadly, I ..... that I have made a mistake.  
 a. require      b. admit      c. apply      d. deal

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations **متلازمات لفظية**

<b>do</b>	wrong	يرتكب خطأ	<b>have</b>	an argument	يتجادل - يقع في خلاف
<b>get</b>	upset	يئزعج	<b>include</b>	long conversations	يجري حوارات مطوّلة
	... wrong	يفهم ... بشكل خاطئ		<b>include</b>	a question
<b>give</b>	advice	يحصل علي النصيحة	<b>introduce</b>	new ideas	يطرح أفكاراً جديدة
	advice	يعطي النصيحة	<b>pass</b>	an exam / a test	يجتاز امتحان
	... bad news	ينقل لـ ... أخبار سيئة	<b>play</b>	the piano	يعزف على البيانو
<b>go</b>	home	يذهب للمنزل	<b>post</b>	personal information	ينشر معلومات شخصية
	so much fun	يمرح كثيراً		<b>say</b>	... in response to
<b>have</b>	a negative effect on	له أثر سيء علي	<b>take</b>	a selfie	يلتقط صورة لنفسه



## 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
appear	يظهر - يصل	come out, arrive
appear	يبدو	sound, seem, look
aware	علي علم - مُذرك	well informed, knowledgeable, conscious of, acquainted with, informed about /of
basic	أساسي - محوري	fundamental, primary, principal, chief
formal	رسمي	official, legal, authorized, licensed, documented
innovator	مبتكر - مُبدع	creator
necessarily	حتفاً - بالضرورة	inevitably, automatically
request	يطلب	demand, seek
response	استجابة - رد	feedback, reply, reaction

## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
aware	علي علم - مُذرك	unaware, unconscious, ignorant	جاهل بـ - غير مُلمّ بـ
basic	أساسي - محوري	secondary, trivial, unimportant	ثانوي - تافه - غير مهم
basic	أساسي	extra, minor	إضافي - ثانوي
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي - ودي
innovator	مبتكر	imitator	مقلد / مُحاكي
misunderstand	يُسن فهم	understand, grasp, take in	يفهم - يستوعب
necessarily	حتفاً - بالضرورة	possibly, not necessarily	ممكّن - ليس بالضرورة
response	استجابة - رد فعل	action, request	فعل - طلب

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

abbreviation		
abbreviate (d) (v)	يختصر	- We <b>abbreviate</b> United Nations to UN.
abbreviation (n)	اختصار	- UN is the <b>abbreviation</b> of United Nations.
abbreviated (adj)	مختصر	- We usually use <b>abbreviated</b> words in messaging.
blog		
blog (ged) (v)	يُدوّن	- I always <b>blog</b> about some social problems.
blog (n)	مُدونة (على الإنترنت)	- I have a <b>blog</b> about social problems.
blogger (n)	مُدوّن	- I am a <b>blogger</b> about social problems.

linguist		
linguist (n)	خبير لغة - عالم لغة	- He is a famous linguist.
linguistics (n)	(علم) اللغويات	- He is expert in linguistics.
linguistically (adv)	لغويًا	- This expression is linguistically incorrect.
necessarily		
necessitate (d) (v)	يستلزم / يتطلب	- This pain necessitates a surgery.
necessity (n)	الضرورة	- It is a necessity for you to have a surgery.
necessary (adj)	ضروري	- It is necessary for you to have a surgery.
necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة - حتمًا	- He is not necessarily ill. He might be busy.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a guide to messaging	دليل المراسلة	form of communication	أحد طرق التواصل
all about	كل ما يخص	fun to use	ممتع في استخدامه
as a response to	كرد علي - كاستجابة لـ	in response to	ردًا علي
as soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن	laugh out loud	يضحك بصوت عال (يقهقه)
be aware of	علي وعي بـ	messaging apps	تطبيقات التواصل
be careful with	يحرص علي	messaging language	لغة المراسلة
be interested in	مهتم بـ	no longer able to	لم يعد قادرًا علي
be unkind to	يقسو علي	see you later	أراك لاحقًا
be upset with	غضبان من	stay in touch with	يبقي علي اتصال بـ
different from / to	مختلف عن	the negative side of	الجانب السلبي لـ
does not necessarily mean	لا يعني بالضرورة أن	What's up?	ماذا لديك؟ / ما الجديد؟
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	whether ... or not	سواء ... أم لا

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

advise ... to / not to	ينصح ... أن / ألا	order ... to / not to	يأمر ... أن / ألا
apply for	يتقدم بطلب	put ... down	يترك
ask ... to / not to	يطلب من ... أن / ألا	refer back to	يشير إلى
change ... into	يغير ... إلى	speak/talk to	يتحدث إلى
chat with	يحدث مع	thank ... for	يشكر ... على
come / go back	يعود	waiting for ... to	في انتظار ... أن
encourage ... to / not to	يشجع ... أن / ألا	warn ... to / not to	يُحذّر ... أن / ألا



## 7 لاحظ الفرق Clear the confusion

## abbreviation - acronym

- **Abbreviation** : is a short form of a word or expression. "Dr" is the written abbreviation of "Doctor". "Mr" is the written abbreviation of Mister.

هو عبارة أن اختصار لكلمة / عبارة

Word / Expression	Abbreviation	Meaning
tomorrow	2moro	غداً
Great!	Gr8	عظيماً
Please	plz	من فضلك
thank you	thx	أشكرك
as soon as possible	ASAP	بأسرع ما يُمكن
see you later	c u l8r	أراك لاحقاً
laugh out loud	LOL	تضحك بصوت عال
I don't know	Idk	لا أعرف - لست أدري
rolling on the floor laughing	ROTFL	يضحك بشدة (يتدحرج على الأرض من الضحك)
be right back	BRB	سأعود
by the way	BTW	بالمناسبة (على فكرة)

- **Acronym** : is a word made up from the first letters of the name of something such as an organisation. هي كلمة مكونة من الأحرف الأولى لاسم شيء (مثلاً مُنظمة)

Words / Expressions	Acronym	Meaning
North Atlantic Treaty Organisation	NATO	حلف الناتو
Federation International de Football Association	FIFA	الفيفا (الاتحاد الدولي لكرة القدم)
United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو (منظمة الأمم المتحدة للتربية والعلوم والثقافة)
Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome	AIDS	مرض نقص المناعة المكتسبة
Light Amplification by the stimulated emission of radiation	LASER	أشعة الليزر

لاحظ أن كلمة (abbreviation) قد تستخدم أحياناً لتؤدي معنى (acronym).

## everyday - every day

- **everyday (adj)** (صفة تستخدم فقط قبل اسم)  
- Don't worry! It is an **everyday** problem.
- **every day (adv)** (كل يوم / ظرف يُستخدم غالبًا في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)  
- I go to school **every day**. = **Every day**, I go to school.

## Exercise On Vocabulary study

### • Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The prefix "mis-" adds a/an ..... meaning to the word "understand". (أسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. good                      b. affirmative      c. negative                  d. positive
2. Shakespeare was a great innovator ..... language. (الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. by                              b. on                      c. with                      d. off
3. All people know that smoking has bad effects ..... human health.  
a. on                              b. to                      c. at                      d. about
4. AHC is ..... for Athletic Heart Center. (العنوفية - قويسنا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. short                      b. stand                      c. from                      d. abbreviate
5. "Countries are always interested in their innovators in all fields." The word "innovators" here can be replaced by ..... (الدقهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. creators                      b. customers                  c. youth                      d. criminals
6. The antonym of the word 'innovator' is ..... (السيوط - أبو تيج ٢٠٢٣)  
a. inventor                      b. competitor                  c. imitator                      d. discoverer
7. "A good citizen is aware of the dangers that threaten their country." The adjective 'aware' here can be replaced by .....  
a. conscious                      b. unconscious                  c. ignorant                      d. malware
8. "The smile on her face does not necessarily mean she has no problems." We can use the adverb ..... instead of 'necessarily' in this sentence.  
a. impossibly                      b. recently                      c. really                      d. inevitably
9. "He takes in what you want to say." This means he ..... what you want to say.  
a. understands                      b. misunderstands  
c. takes out                      d. doesn't grasp





10. "Include only the basic facts in the report." The adjective 'basic' in this sentence is a synonym of .....
- a. trivial                      b. fundamental      c. secondary              d. unimportant
11. My father warned me ..... that bad company الضحبة.
- a. that avoids              b. so that we keep      c. to keep                  d. not to keep
12. This bike is different ..... the one we saw yesterday.
- a. with                          b. for                      c. after                      d. from
13. I hope you will ..... in touch with us all.
- a. keep                          b. stay                      c. sit                          d. a & b
14. Do you know how to..... the piano?
- a. go                              b. play                      c. get                          d. make
15. Do you think I ..... wrong by telling him the truth?
- a. made                          b. got                          c. added                      d. did
16. I really ..... upset when my father cancelled our trip to Alex.
- a. went                          b. turned                      c. got                          d. held
17. You can drive your car if you ..... a driving test.
- a. pass                          b. succeed                      c. support                      d. park
18. The coach said that he had ..... me in the tomorrow's match squad.
- a. included                      b. made                      c. stayed                      d. said
19. I can't help ..... selfies.
- a. going                          b. playing                      c. taking                      d. giving
20. Do you think it is a ..... that I am in uniform?
- a. necessitate                  b. necessity                  c. necessary                  d. necessarily
21. Playing a full match ..... being fit.
- a. necessitates                  b. necessity                  c. necessary                  d. necessarily
22. 'Doctor' is ..... to 'Dr'.
- a. abbreviated                  b. abbreviation              c. linguist                      d. linguistics
23. Which of the following is more of an abbreviation?
- a. NATO                          b. AIDZ                          c. Gr8                          d. a & b

## 1 Reading Texts

## Text Messaging


(SB page 43)

Plz read this **article**<sup>(1)</sup> ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u  it! 

For any readers who can't understand the language of **text**<sup>(2)</sup> **messaging**<sup>(3)</sup>, the translation is: Please, read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it.

In text messages, **abbreviations**<sup>(4)</sup>, **emojis**<sup>(5)</sup> and numbers are all used to make **communication**<sup>(6)</sup> quicker. The language of text messages doesn't **require**<sup>(7)</sup> **correct**<sup>(8)</sup> **spelling**<sup>(9)</sup>, or difficult grammar and **punctuation**<sup>(10)</sup>.



Messaging language is **appearing**<sup>(11)</sup> in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis . Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!!!!!!

So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't **suitable**<sup>(12)</sup> in **formal**<sup>(13)</sup> emails. And now teachers are worried that some **teenagers**<sup>(14)</sup> are **no longer**<sup>(15)</sup> able to speak or write using English correctly.

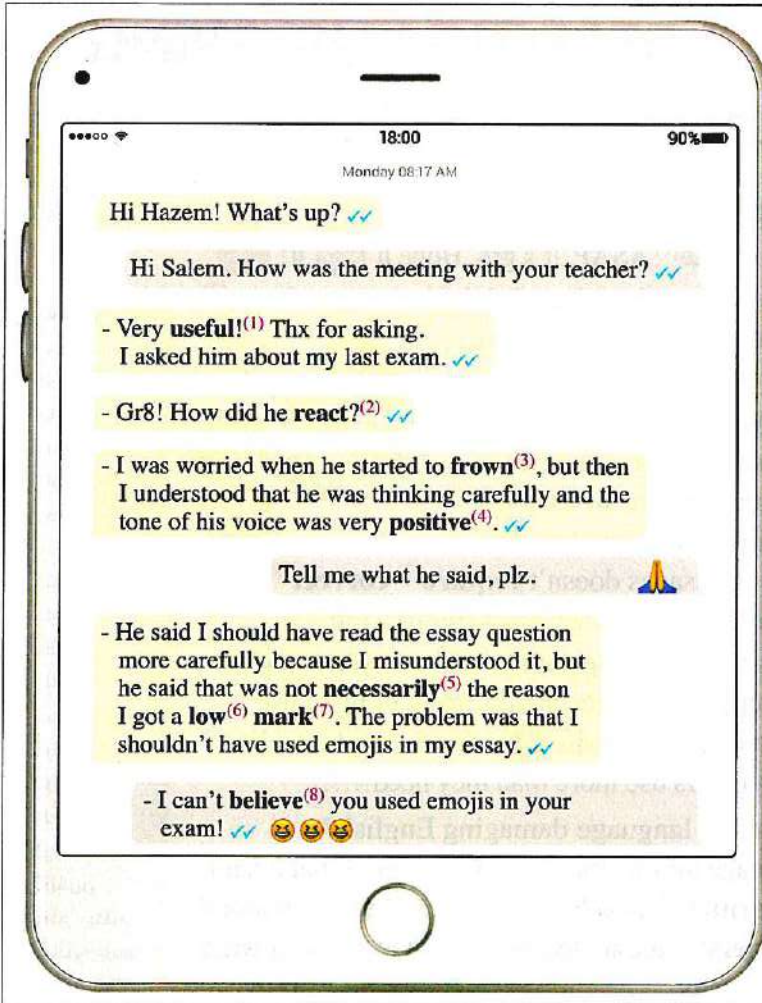
However, some **linguists**<sup>(16)</sup> suggest that the people who use messaging language are **actually**<sup>(17)</sup> language **innovators**<sup>(18)</sup>, **introducing**<sup>(19)</sup> new ideas into English. They **argue**<sup>(20)</sup> that messaging language is quick, short and **communicates**<sup>(21)</sup> a lot in a small **space**<sup>(22)</sup>.

**Whether**<sup>(23)</sup> or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the **basic**<sup>(24)</sup> abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages!

- (1) مقال
- (2) نص
- (3) التراسل
- (4) اختصارات
- (5) رموز تعبيرية
- (6) التواصل
- (7) يتطلب
- (8) صحيح
- (9) التهجّي
- (10) علامات الترقيم
- (11) يظهر
- (12) مناسب
- (13) رسمي
- (14) فراهقين
- (15) لم يعد
- (16) اللغويون
- (17) في الحقيقة
- (18) مبتكرين
- (19) يُقدّم - يطرح
- (20) يجادل - يزعم
- (21) ينقل - يوضّل
- (22) مساحة
- (23) سواء
- (24) أساسي



(WB page 25)



- (1) مفيد  
(2) يتصرف  
(3) يعيبس  
(4) إيجابي  
(5) بالضرورة  
(6) منخفض  
(7) درجة  
(8) يُصدّق

Hi Hamdi, I had so much fun this morning !  
laugh out loud LOL. I was on TV, talking about tech, and  
I **warned**<sup>(1)</sup> people not to open any **strange**<sup>(2)</sup> emails. It  
was great (gr8) ! They asked me to go back next week!  
I'll see you later (cu 18r) and I will tell you all about it.

(WB page 24)

- (1) يحذر  
(2) غريب  
(3) أنا مسرور جدًا  
(4) معلومات شخصية  
(5) يحضر

**Khalid**

Hey Nadia, thanks (thx) for your help ! I'm so **glad**<sup>(3)</sup> you advised  
me to change the photos on my blog. I don't know (idk) what I was  
thinking! My dad warned me not to post **personal information**<sup>(4)</sup> , but  
I didn't think about the photos. I'll change them as soon as possible  
(ASAP).

**Judy**

Yasser, why didn't you tell me that you can't find my book?  
I asked you to look after it. Can you please (PIZ) look for it again  
and **bring**<sup>(5)</sup> it to school tomorrow (2 moro)? **Medhat**

### Nihal, aged<sup>(1)</sup> 16

(WB page 25)

A new girl has started at our school and I wanted to **be friends with**<sup>(2)</sup> her. I spoke to her in the **playground**<sup>(3)</sup> and we took a **selfie**<sup>(4)</sup> together. That afternoon I posted it **online**<sup>(5)</sup>, but she didn't like the photo and the next day at school she didn't speak to me. What did I do wrong?

- (1) بالغ من العمر
- (2) يكون صداقة مع
- (3) ملعب
- (4) صورة شخصية
- (5) على الإنترنت
- (6) يرسل
- (7) يهتم - يبالى

### Adam, aged 17

Last week, my friend sent me a text message to say that he was unhappy because he had **failed**<sup>(6)</sup> a test at school. It was late and I didn't know what to say, so I decided to reply in the morning. But then too many things happened in the morning and I forgot. Now he thinks that I don't **care**<sup>(7)</sup>. What should I have done?

## 2 Listening Text



### Messaging

(SB page 44)

**Presenter:** Hello everyone, thanks for **joining**<sup>(1)</sup> me today on Afternoon Talktime. And today we are talking about **messaging**<sup>(2)</sup>. My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy.

- (1) ينضم
- (2) التراسل - المراسلة
- (3) مؤلف
- (4) يشجع
- (5) بشكل إيجابي
- (6) رائع
- (7) متزعج
- (8) أفرز - اعترف
- (9) بصوت عال
- (10) رد

She is the **author**<sup>(3)</sup> of the book "A Guide to Messaging" which **encourages**<sup>(4)</sup> us to use messaging **positively**<sup>(5)</sup>. Welcome to the programme, Dr Magda.

**Dr Magda:** Thank you. It's **lovely**<sup>(6)</sup> to be here.

**Presenter:** So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very **upset**<sup>(7)</sup>. She couldn't stop crying. Eventually she **admitted**<sup>(8)</sup> that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia, had written LOL - laugh out **loud**<sup>(9)</sup> - in **response**<sup>(10)</sup> to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo.



She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

**Dr Magda:** This is a good example of why we need to be **aware of** <sup>(11)</sup> the **advantages** <sup>(12)</sup> and **disadvantages** <sup>(13)</sup> of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

**Presenter:** Because messaging is different to speaking face - to - face, isn't it?

**Dr Magda:** Exactly! Sometimes face - to - face communication can be confusing, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more **confusing** <sup>(14)</sup>. And this is **basically** <sup>(15)</sup> because you can't see the other person's face – is he or she **smiling** <sup>(16)</sup> or **frowning**? <sup>(17)</sup> And you can't hear their voice – are they angry? Are they making a **joke** <sup>(18)</sup>?

Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body **movements** <sup>(19)</sup>. When we speak to someone face-to-face, we **notice** <sup>(20)</sup> all these things; **facial** <sup>(21)</sup> **expressions** <sup>(22)</sup>, body movements and the tone of what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often **misunderstand** <sup>(23)</sup> what the other person is trying to **communicate** <sup>(24)</sup>.

**Presenter:** So, that's the **negative** <sup>(25)</sup> **side** <sup>(26)</sup> of messaging. Is there a positive side?

**Dr Magda:** Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying **in touch with** <sup>(27)</sup> friends, but remember that messaging is **designed** <sup>(28)</sup> to be short and quick so don't expect to have long **conversations** <sup>(29)</sup>, and don't get upset when you get one word or even an **abbreviation** <sup>(30)</sup> or **acronym** <sup>(31)</sup> as a response to your message.

**Presenter:** So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

**Dr Magda:** Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an **immediate** <sup>(32)</sup> reply does not **necessarily** <sup>(33)</sup> mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you.

(11)	علي علم - مُذَكِّر
(12)	مزايا
(13)	عيوب
(14)	مُحَيِّر - مُزِيك
(15)	اساساً
(16)	مبتسم
(17)	عابس
(18)	مزحة (نكتة)
(19)	حركات
(20)	يلاحظ
(21)	وجهي
(22)	تعبيرات
(23)	يسن فهم
(24)	يتواصل
(25)	سلبى
(26)	جانِب
(27)	علي اتصال بـ
(28)	مُصمَّم
(29)	حوار
(30)	اختصار
(31)	اختصار بالحروف الأولى
(32)	فوري
(33)	بالضرورة

People are busy and they have got other things to do.

So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour

looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said 'Can I call you?'

**Presenter:** So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more **traditional**<sup>(34)</sup> communication is important.

**Dr Magda:** I am! **Absolutely**<sup>(35)</sup>. Messaging is one form of communication not the only form of communication.

**Presenter:** Great – thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme...

(34) تقليدي

(35) تماماً

## PART IV LANGUAGE

### Part 1: should have – could have

#### 1 should - should have

يجب أن / ينبغي أن

١ نستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة :

→ should / shouldn't + inf.

يجب / ينبغي أن / ألا

ex. - You **should take** some rest. You **shouldn't work** more today.

- You **shouldn't eat** so much fast food. It's not good for you.

٢ نستخدم (should + inf.) لتقديم اقتراحات (suggestion) أو عمل توصيات (recommendation) :

ex. - You **should try** the fish in this restaurant. It is great.

- You **should get** a map of Cairo before you go there.

٣ نستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) للتعبير عن الرأي الشخصي :

ex. - Sama **should study** engineering. She is very clever at maths.

٤ نستخدم (should + inf.) للتعبير عن التوقع (expectation) :

ex. - Lunch **should be served** at two. You won't wait long.

٥ يمكن استخدام (ought to + inf.) بدلاً من (should + inf.) :

ex. - You **ought to study** hard. = You **should study** hard.



## Mini Test 1

● Apply

● ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- He shouldn't ..... on that wall. It's not safe.  
a. to sit                      b. sit                      c. sat                      d. sits
- ..... I help mum with the housework?  
a. Should                      b. Ought                      c. Ought to                      d. Should not
- You ..... play tennis. That's my suggestion.  
a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. should                      d. need
- I think he ..... pay for half the goods. That's just an opinion.  
a. ought to                      b. has to                      c. should                      d. a & c
- A: ..... come to work earlier tomorrow?  
B: To check the preparations for the meeting.  
a. Why I should                      b. Why should I                      c. I should                      d. Should I

## should be + (inf. + ing)

تكون الصيغة المستمرة (continuous form) من :

→ ought to /should + be + (inf. + ing) من المفترض أن

ex. - Omar **should be travelling** to Cairo now but he has missed the train.  
= Omar **is supposed to be travelling** to Cairo now but he has missed the train.

## Should have + p.p.

١ تكون الصيغة التامة (perfect form) في المبنى للمعلوم من :

→ ... ought to /should + have + p.p. ... كان من المفترض أن

ex. - I didn't expect the weather to be so cold in London. I **should have brought** my jacket. I **shouldn't have asked** my old mother to come with me. I **ought to have thought** well before I made that journey.

٢ وتكون الصيغة التامة في المبنى للمجهول من :

→ ... ought to /should + have been + p.p. ...

ex. - The email **shouldn't have been read** by Nada. It wasn't hers.

٣ تستخدم (should have+ p.p.) في لوم أو انتقاد شخص على عدم فعل شيء كان

من المفروض أن يفعله :

ex. - Karim **should have cleaned** his room. (لكن لم يقم كريم بذلك)

- Ahmed **should have paid** the bill. (لكن لم يدفع أحمد الفاتورة)

٤ تستخدم (shouldn't have+ p.p.) في لوم أو انتقاد شخص على فعل شيء كان من المفروض ألا يفعله :

ex. - You shouldn't have got up so late. (لكنك استيقظت متأخراً بالفعل)

- The Emergency Exit doors shouldn't have been locked.

(لكن مخرج الطوارئ كان مغلقاً)

لاحظ : في اللغة المنطوقة يميل المتحدث الإنجليزي عادة إلى اختصار نطق (should have) فتبدو للسامع (shoulda) أو (should've).

## Mini Test 2

Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- You should be ..... for the guests when they arrive.  
a. wait                      b. waited                      c. waiting                      d. to wait
- I don't know what you are doing here. You should ..... the emails in your office at this moment.  
a. be typed                      b. be typing                      c. have typed                      d. to type
- Areej should have ..... the email.  
a. to sent                      b. sent                      c. sends                      d. send
- You ..... have arrived a bit earlier. The manager looked annoyed when you entered.  
a. should                      b. shouldn't                      c. ought to                      d. a & c
- Aya shouldn't ..... the present. It wasn't hers.  
a. have been opened                      b. be opening  
c. have opened                      d. to open
- The email shouldn't ..... by Nada. It wasn't sent to her.  
a. have been opened                      b. be opening  
c. have opened                      d. to open
- "You shouldn't have shouted at your sister." What does this mean?  
a. You didn't shout at her.                      b. You are meant to shout at her.  
c. You shouted at her.                      d. b & c
- You should have driven more carefully. This means you .....  
a. do                      b. don't                      c. did                      d. didn't
- You shouldn't have wasted your time. This means that you .....  
a. do                      b. don't                      c. did                      d. didn't
- "Sorry, Sama. I shouldn't have shouted at you yesterday." The speaker expresses his / her .....  
a. regret                      b. happiness                      c. obligation                      d. pleasure



## 2 could - could have

## could – couldn't + inf.

١ تُستخدَم (could + inf.) للتعبير عن قدرة عامة في الماضي (مثل السباحة وقيادة السيارة والتحدث بلغة معينة ... إلخ) :

→ ... could / couldn't + inf.

ex. - She **could read** at the age of five.

- I **couldn't swim** until the age of twelve.

٢ غالباً لا تُستخدَم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء محدد في موقف معين في الماضي وهو ما يعرف بـ (past achievement)، لكن تُستخدَم الصيغ التالية:

→ ... was / were able to + inf.

كان قادراً على

ex. - We **were able to arrive** home through traffic jam.

→ ... managed to + inf.

تمكن أن

ex. - I **managed to repair** my car.

→ ... succeeded in + (inf. + ing)

نجح في أن

ex. - I **succeeded in sending** that email after many attempts. محاولات

٣ لكن تُستخدَم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء محدد في موقف معين في الماضي وهو ما يعرف بـ (past achievement) مع أفعال الحواس والإدراك مثل :

... could + smell, taste, see, hear, touch, think, believe, remember, understand ... etc.

ex. - I knew they were at home. I **could hear** their voices inside.

- She spoke to me before, but I **couldn't remember** her name.

- The food was terrible. I **could taste** nothing but salt.

٤ عند التعبير عن عدم القدرة أو عدم الإستطاعة في الماضي نستخدم :

→ couldn't + inf. = wasn't / weren't + able to + inf.

ex. - I **couldn't understand** what he said.

= I **wasn't able to understand** what he said.

٥ استخدامات أخرى لـ (could + inf.) :

1- Making suggestions :

تقديم الإقتراحات

Ali: What shall we do tonight? - Omar : We **could go** to the cinema.

2- Making requests :

تقديم الطلبات

ex. - **Could you open** that door, please ?

3- Asking for permission :

طلب الإذن

ex. - **Could I use** your office tomorrow ?

4- Expressing present / future possibility :

التعبير عن إمكانية حدوث شيء في المضارع أو المستقبل:

ex. - He **could go** by bus. (= **Maybe he will go** by bus.)

- She **could be** at home. (= **Maybe she is** at home.)

### Mini Test 3

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I found a course at my local college where I ..... train as a teacher.  
a. can                      b. can't                      c. could                      d. couldn't
- I looked all over the house, but I ..... find my phone.  
a. couldn't                      b. wasn't able to                      c. managed to                      d. a & b
- I ..... able to solve the mystery. It was easy for me to do it.  
a. am                      b. was                      c. should be                      d. could be
- They succeeded ..... the problem with the tablet.  
a. to fix                      b. to fixing                      c. in fixing                      d. a & c

### could / couldn't be + (inf. + ing)

١ تستخدم الصيغة المستمرة لعمل استنتاج ضعيف لحدث مستمر في المضارع :

→ ... could + be + (inf.+ing)... = ...may/might + be + (inf.+ing)...

ex. - I don't know what Aya **is** doing now. She **could be watching** TV.  
= I don't know what Aya **is** doing now. She **might be watching** TV.

٢ تُستخدم الصيغة المستمرة المنفية لعمل استنتاج قوى منفي لحدث مستمر في المضارع :

→ ...couldn't / can't + be + (inf.+ing)... لا يمكن أن

ex. - I am sure Ali **is** at home now. He **couldn't be visiting** his uncle.  
= I am sure Ali **is** at home now. He **can't be visiting** his uncle.

### could – couldn't + have + p.p.

لاحظ تكوين الصيغة التامة في المبني للمعلوم والمبني للمجهول :

→ subj. + could + have + p.p. ... (مبني للمعلوم)

→ obj. + could + have + been + p.p. ... (مبني للمجهول)

- وتستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات التالية :

١ يمكن أن تعبر (could have + P.P.) عن استنتاج ضعيف في الماضي :

→ ...could + have + p.p. ... = may / might + have + p.p.

ex. - He **didn't visit** us for a long time. He **could have been** busy.  
- He **didn't visit** us for a long time. He **might have been** busy.

٢ لكن لاحظ أن (couldn't have + p.p.) تعبر عن استنتاج قوى منفي في الماضي :

→ ...couldn't + have + p.p. ... = ...can't + have + p.p. ...

- Mr Ayman's passport **is** still in the office, so he **couldn't (can't) have travelled** abroad.

من غير الممكن أن يكون قد سافر وجواز سفره لا يزال في المكتب.



٢ وتستخدم (could have + p.p.) عند تخيل حدث أو موقف كان من الممكن حدوثه في الماضي لكنه لم يحدث :

- Moataz was driving at a mad speed. He **could have killed** us.  
- كان يمكن أن يقتلنا بسبب السرعة لكن لم يحدث شيء والمتحدث فقط يتخيل شيء كان من الممكن حدوثه في الماضي.  
لاحظ : في اللغة المنطوقة يميل المتحدث الإنجليزي عادة إلى اختصار نطق (could have) فتبدو للسامع :  
- (could've) / (coulda)

## Mini Test

4

Apply

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- He ..... have gone to the city centre. He did say he wouldn't.  
a. can't                      b. could                      c. couldn't                      d. mightn't
- A: Their plane was delayed and they had to wait 20 hours in the airport.  
B: They ..... have been very happy with the airline.  
a. must not                      b. couldn't                      c. must                      d. might
- They ..... have been at the cafe but I didn't see them.  
a. must                      b. can't                      c. couldn't                      d. could
- I travelled by train, but I ..... by car.  
a. might have travelled                      b. could travel  
c. could have travelled                      d. can travel
- I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and you .....  
a. may have killed                      b. must have been killed  
c. could have been killed                      d. could have killed

## Exercises On Language

Apply

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Exercises from Previous Exams :

- I feel terribly sick today. I ..... have eaten fast food yesterday. It was a wrong decision. (القلبية - بنها ٢٠٢٤)  
a. should                      b. couldn't                      c. shouldn't                      d. could
- You ..... Mona today because she's in Athens at the moment. (أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. could have seen                      b. must have seen  
c. couldn't have seen                      d. shouldn't have seen
- I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you ..... me! (أسوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٣)  
a. could phone                      b. should have phoned  
c. should phone                      d. would have phoned
- He ..... a great doctor. He had the ability, but he didn't want to work hard. (الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. could have been                      b. couldn't have been  
c. should be                      d. shouldn't have been

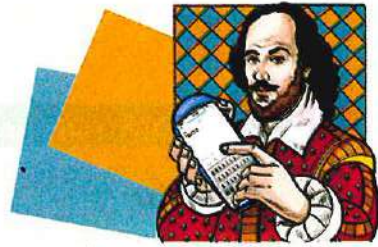




18. You ..... have seen Ali at school this morning. He has been with me at home. (سوهاج - مغاغة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. couldn't      b. mustn't      c. shouldn't      d. should
19. As soon as you said that she was so fat, she got angry. You ..... her. (المنوفية - الباجور ٢٠٢٤)  
a. should have insulted      b. didn't have to insult  
c. needn't insult      d. shouldn't have insulted
20. When you find some difficult questions. You ..... your teacher's advice. (الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. could have asked      b. should have asked  
c. could ask      d. might have asked
21. **Hany:** ..... come to work early tomorrow? (القليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٤)  
**Manager:** To check the preparations for the meeting.  
a. Why I should      b. Why should I  
c. I should      d. should I
22. We ..... to the cinema yesterday but we watched TV. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٤)  
a. could go      b. could have gone  
c. couldn't go      d. could be going
23. You ..... nothing wrong; you deserved punishment.  
a. must have done      b. shouldn't have done  
c. should have done      d. should do (القاهرة - شبرا ٢٠٢٣)

## 2 Check your understanding :

24. I should have obeyed my mother. This sentence expresses ..... . (الأقصر - الأقصر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. suggestion      b. good idea      c. regret      d. possibility
25. "You shouldn't have shouted at your sister yesterday." The speaker expresses ..... .  
a. regret      b. happiness      c. obligation      d. blame
26. You could try playing tennis. This is a/an ..... . (المنوفية - أشمون ٢٠٢٤)  
a. promise      b. ambition      c. suggestion      d. intention
27. I shouldn't have wasted my time but I was lazy and now I ..... it. (المنيا - الصف ٢٠٢٤)  
a. don't regret      b. didn't regret      c. regret      d. regretted
28. "He should have behaved politely towards his teacher." This means he ..... . (المنيا - سمالوط ٢٠٢٤)  
a. behaved politely, but regretted  
b. shouldn't do this  
c. didn't behave politely  
d. might have behaved politely, but we don't know



## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

communicate (d) (v)	يؤدي معني - يتواصل - يَبلغ	messaging (n)	التراسل - المراسلة
communication (n)	التواصل - الاتصال	procedure (n)	إجراء - نَهج
conclusion (n)	خلاصة - خاتمة - استنتاج	prefix (n)	مقطع بادئ
findings (n)	نتائج	suffix (n)	مقطع ناهي
headline (n)	عنوان رئيسي	selfie (n)	صورة ذاتية
introduction (n)	مقدمة	sub-heading (n)	عنوان ثانوي (فرعي)
message (d) (n - v)	رسالة - يراسل	thesaurus (n)	موسوعة مفردات

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

age (n)	عصر - عُمر	partner (n)	شريك / رفيق
aim (ed) (n - v)	هدف - يهدف إلى	powerful (adj)	قوي
anymore (adv)	لم يَعدْ - ليس بعد الآن	proper (adj)	صحيح - مناسب
blog (ged) (n - v)	مُدونة (على الإنترنت) - يُدوّن	properly (adv)	بشكل مناسب
blogger (n)	مُدوّن	receive (d) (v)	يتسَلّم - يستقبل
blog post	منشور في مدونة	recognisable (adj)	يسهُل التعرف عليه
cite (d) (v)	يستشهد بـ - يقتبس	record (ed) (v - n)	يسجل - يسجل
comment (ed) (n-v)	تعليق - يُعلّق	remain (ed) (v)	يبقي / يظل
compare (d) (v)	يقارن	report (ed) (v)	تقرير - يبلغ
debate (d) (n - v)	مناظرة - يتحاور	result (ed) (n/v)	لنتيجة - ينتج - يؤدي
endless (adj)	مستمر - بلا نهاية	section (n)	قسم
frequently (adv)	غالبًا - كثيرًا	speaker (n)	مُحدِّث / ناطق - سماعة
include (d) (v)	يضمّن - يضيف	survey (n)	بحث استطلاعي
interest (ed) (n-v)	اهتمام - يثير اهتمام - يُشوّق	tip (n)	نصيحة
misuse (d) (v)	يسئ استخدام	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح



## 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>blog (n)</b> <small>مُدونة</small>	a personal website diary for other people to read
<b>findings(n)</b> <small>نتائج</small>	information that is discovered as the result of research into something
<b>messaging(n)</b> <small>التواصل - المراسلة</small>	the system or process of sending messages using electronic equipment
<b>prefix(n)</b> <small>مقطع بادئ</small>	a group of letters that is added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning and make a new word
<b>procedure(n)</b> <small>إجراءات - نهج</small>	a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way
<b>selfie(n)</b> <small>صورة شخصية</small>	a photograph you take of yourself
<b>suffix(n)</b> <small>مقطع ناهي</small>	a letter or letters added to the end of a word to form a new word
<b>thesaurus(n)</b> <small>موسوعة مفردات</small>	a book that lists words in groups that have similar meanings

## Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Definitions

- A/An ..... is a way of doing something especially the correct way.  
(القليوية - طوخ ٢٠٢٤)  
a. procedure      b. production      c. introduction      d. abbreviation
- A photo that I take of myself is called a/an .....  
(دمياط - دمياط ٢٠٢٣)  
a. message      b. selfie      c. call      d. email
- A ..... is a letter or letters added to the end of a word to form a new word.  
a. tone      b. suffix      c. thesaurus      d. prefix
- A/An ..... is a personal website diary for other people to read.  
a. blog      b. innovator      c. messaging      d. linguist
- Information that is discovered as the result of research into something is known as .....  
a. findings      b. suffix      c. thesaurus      d. selfie

6. The system or process of sending messages using electronic equipment is known as .....
- a. blog                      b. massaging      c. messaging      d. linguist
7. A ..... is a group of letters that is added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning and make a new word.
- a. tone                      b. suffix              c. thesaurus      d. prefix
8. A/An ..... is a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way.
- a. procedure              b. abbreviation      c. emoji              d. acronym

## 2 Key Vocabulary

9. We can change the part of speech of a word by adding a ..... to it. (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)
- a. prefix                      b. suffix              c. index              d. perplex
10. In ....., the result of the research is true not false. (كفر شيخ - كفر شيخ ٢٠٢٤)
- a. illusion                      b. exclusion              c. induction              d. conclusion
11. I don't have time to browse the newspaper. I just read the main ..... . (دمياط - فارسكور ٢٠٢٤)
- a. sub-headings              b. headlines              c. online              d. addresses
12. The ..... of an essay has the thesis and the hook.
- a. headline                      b. body                      c. conclusion              d. introduction
13. "Crime does not pay" is the clear ..... of the film. (الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٣)
- a. message                      b. innovation              c. abbreviation              d. introduction
14. We add the ..... 'in' to make the antonym of the word "formal". (العنيا - العنيا ٢٠٢٣)
- a. suffix                      b. prefix                      c. acronym              d. synonym
15. Ahmed Galal took a duck-face ..... of himself with his mobile.
- a. drawing                      b. painting                      c. selfie                      d. procedure
16. All the necessary protective ..... to face infectious diseases must be cared for.
- a. ailments                      b. procedures              c. reproach              d. censure
17. If you go to a foreign country, you will need English to ..... with people.
- a. kill                              b. run                              c. play                              d. communicate
18. The judge came to the ..... that the thief wasn't telling the truth.
- a. experience                      b. inclusion                      c. conclusion              d. exclusion
19. Doctors around the world are publishing their ..... about Coronavirus in medical journals.
- a. findings                      b. foundlings              c. devices                      d. titles



20. Sama ..... me the good news she had heard.  
a. communicated    b. toned    c. frowned    d. messaged
21. You can use ..... for the different parts of the report.  
a. prefixes    b. headlines    c. sub-headings    d. apps
22. Smartphones provide a more advanced متقدم ..... system.  
a. findings    b. selfies    c. messaging    d. emojis

### 3 Important vocabulary

23. Don't ..... sugar in the shopping list. We have enough of it.  
a. research    b. reuse    c. include    d. inform
24. When writing an essay, focus on the main .....; don't get distracted تشتت.  
a. tip    b. topic    c. age    d. image
25. His objection to my suggestion was so ..... that I thought I had made a big mistake.  
a. powerful    b. powerfully    c. proper    d. properly
26. I got tired of your ..... complaints شكوي. Isn't there anything positive in your life?  
a. endless    b. facial    c. basic    d. basically
27. A lot of young people ..... social media in a way that affects their health and wastes their time.  
a. compare    b. cite    c. post    d. misuse
28. Readers are invited to ..... on the novel.  
a. aim    b. comment    c. lie    d. favour
29. I put the jewel in its ..... place.  
a. powerful    b. powerfully    c. proper    d. properly
30. I put the jewel ..... in its place  
a. powerful    b. powerfully    c. proper    d. properly
31. Face-to-face ..... know the reaction of their listeners from their facial expressions.  
a. speakers    b. procedures    c. bloggers    d. languages
32. It is honest من الامانة to ..... your sources of information.  
a. react    b. cite    c. comment    d. misuse
33. We have had a/an ..... about the effects of messaging on modern society.  
a. aim    b. comment    c. debate    d. record
34. I visit him ..... . That means I visit him a lot or often.  
a. frequently    b. anymore    c. properly    d. uncomfortably
35. Our school library has a large physics ..... .  
a. section    b. headline    c. sub-heading    d. conclusion

36. After doing research, scientists ..... the results.  
 a. compare      b. interest      c. respond      d. misuse
37. She ..... at coming first this term.  
 a. aims      b. comments      c. debates      d. records
38. Some researchers are doing a/an ..... into energy use in our town.  
 a. response      b. topic      c. survey      d. interest
39. Basketball has never been a/an ..... of mine.  
 a. response      b. topic      c. survey      d. interest
40. Dr Ahmed can give us several useful ..... on how to do first-aid.  
 a. tips      b. topics      c. advice      d. advise
41. She holds the world ..... for long-distance running.  
 a. aim      b. comment      c. debate      d. record
42. Omar does not smoke ..... . He used to be a heavy smoker.  
 a. no longer      b. anymore      c. properly      d. uncomfortably

## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>create</b>	new words	يبتكر كلمات جديدة	<b>make</b>	different sounds	يصدر أصواتًا مختلفة
<b>do</b>	the same ...	... يفعل نفس ...		a negative comment	يعطي تعليق سلبي
<b>feel</b>	special	يشعر بالتميز		a joke	يمزح
<b>give</b>	an opinion	يُبدِي رأي		new words	يبتكر كلمات جديدة
<b>interest</b>	the reader	يثير اهتمام القارئ		sense	ذات معني
<b>take</b>	photos	يلتقط صور		<b>sound</b>	difficult
	notes	يدوّن ملاحظات			

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
compare	يقارن
include	يضمّن - يضيف
interest (n)	انتباه - تشويق
interest (n)	اهتمام - مراعاة
interest (n)	هواية
interest (v)	يثير اهتمام - يشوّق
procedure	إجراء
proper	مناسب
recognisable	مُميّز
	contrast, analyse
	involve, take in, add, insert
	attentiveness
	concern
	hobby
	be of interest to, appeal to, attract, fascinate
	method
	suitable, convenient, right
	obvious, definite



## 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
include	يضمّن - يضيف	exclude, leave out, omit	يستثني - يستبعد - يحذف
interest	انتباه - تشويق (n)	boredom	الملل
prefix	مقطع بادئ (في بداية الكلمة)	suffix	مقطع ناهي (في نهاية الكلمة)
proper	مناسب	improper, inappropriate	غير مناسب
recognisable	مُميّر	indefinite, ambiguous	غير محدد/غامض

## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

communicate		
<b>communicate (d) (v)</b>	يتصل - يتواصل	- Sama has the ability to <b>communicate</b> with others.
<b>communication (n)</b>	اتصال - تواصل	- Sama finds <b>communication</b> with others easy.
<b>communicator (n)</b>	مُفَوِّه - بليغ	- Sama is a good <b>communicator</b> .
<b>communicable (adj)</b>	مُعَدَى	- Malaria is a <b>communicable</b> disease.
<b>communicative (adj)</b>	مُفَوِّه - يجيد التواصل	- Sama is <b>communicative</b> with others.
conclude		
<b>conclude (d) (v)</b>	يستنتج - يُخَلِّص إلى	- I <b>concluded</b> my essay. - From my replies, the interviewer <b>concluded</b> that I am the best for the job.
<b>conclusion (n)</b>	خلاصة - خاتمة	- I wrote the <b>conclusion</b> of my essay.
<b>concluding (adj)</b>	ختامي	- I wrote the <b>concluding</b> paragraph of my essay.

## 5 Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at a different time	في وقت آخر	known as	معروف كـ
a 15-year-old daughter	ابنة تبلغ من العمر 15 عام	on social media	علي وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
at least	علي الأقل	on their phones	علي هواتفهم المحمولة
be friends with	يكون صداقة مع	rather than	بدلاً من - أفضل من
in general,	بصفة عامة	suitable for	مناسب لـ
innovator with language	مبدع في اللغة	that's why	لهذا السبب
keep in touch with	يبقي على اتصال بـ	the findings of a survey	نتائج دراسة استطلاعية

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add to / into	يضيف إلى	reply to	يرد علي
agree with	يتفق مع	start with	يبدأ بـ
come from	يأتي من	take ... away	يُبعد
continue (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)	يستمر في أن	talk about	يتحدث عن
disagree with	يختلف مع	tell ... to / not to	يخبر ... أن / ألا
learn about	يتعلم عن		

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

### diary - blog

- **diary = journal** مذكرة / مفكرة ورقية (يكتب فيها الشخص يومياته)  
**ex.** - Some people think that it is old-fashioned to keep a **diary**.  
 - I enjoy reading my grandfather's **diary**.
- **blog = weblog** مُدونة علي الإنترنت (لراء شخص معين أو تختص بموضوع معين)  
**ex.** - On my **blog**, I usually post wise sayings. اقوال مأثورة.

### photo - selfie

- **photo = photograph** صورة بالكاميرا (يلقطها شخص لآخر/ آخرين)  
**ex.** - You have to attach your **photo** to the form. استمارة
- **selfie** صورة بالكاميرا (يلقطها شخص لنفسه بمفرده أو لآخرين معه)  
**ex.** - I don't like the **selfie** I have just taken. I'll take another one.

### society - community

- **society (n)** المجتمع (كلمة عامة تصف الناس الذين يحكمهم قانون واحد أو تنظيم مؤسسي واحد)  
 - Try to be a good member of your **society**.
- **society (n)** جمعية - اتحاد  
 - The Egyptian **society** of Surgeons held a meeting yesterday. جمعية الجراحين المصرية.
- **community (n)** مُجتمع محلي  
 - The new monorail will help the whole **community**.
- **community (n)** طائفة/ فئة/ جالية  
 - The Egyptian **community** in Morroco welcomed our team.

### title - address

- **title (n)** لقب عائلي  
 - My name is Toqa Ashraf Fathi. My **title** is Fathi.



• <b>title (n)</b> - What is your job <b>title</b> ?	مُسَمِّي وظيفي
• <b>title (n)</b> - The <b>title</b> of Unit 4 is 'Changing English'.	عنوان (كتاب/مقال/درس ...)
• <b>address (n)</b> - I wrote the <b>address</b> on the envelope.	عنوان (منزل/عمل ...)
• <b>address (n)</b> - Write the email <b>address</b> in this line.	عنوان (بريد إلكتروني/موقع إنترنت ...)
• <b>address(ed) (v)</b> - She <b>addresses</b> her manager politely.	يُخاطب

## 8 مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
mis-	happens in the wrong way يسيء / لا يُحسن	understand يفهم use يستخدم	<b>misunderstand</b> يسيء الفهم <b>misuse</b> يسيء استخدام
re-	happens again يعيد / مرة أخرى	use يستخدم do يفعل write يكتب	<b>reuse</b> يعيد استخدام <b>redo</b> يعيد فعل <b>rewrite</b> يعيد كتابة
un-	gives a word the opposite meaning تعطي عكس الكلمة	like مثل do يفعل comfortable مريح changed متغير	<b>unlike</b> علي عكس <b>undo</b> يلغي / يبطل <b>uncomfortable</b> مُنْجِب <b>unchanged</b> ثابت / كما هو

## 9 مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-able	means possible ممكّن / قابل لـ	read يقرأ change تعيّر recognise يتعرف علي	<b>readable</b> يمكن قراءته <b>changeable</b> قابل للتعيّر <b>recognisable</b> يُمكن التّعرف عليه
-er	makes the noun for a person تعطي اسم الشخص	do يفعل write يكتب use يستخدم care يري speak يتحدث	<b>doer</b> فاعل <b>writer</b> كاتب <b>user</b> مُستخدم <b>carer</b> ممرضة منزلية <b>speaker</b> مُتحدّث

-less	means without	بدون / ينقصه	care	رعاية	careless	مهمل
			use	استخدام	useless	بدون فائدة
			end	نهاية	endless	بلا نهاية
			power	قوة	powerless	ضعيف / واهن

### Exercise On Vocabulary study

● Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mrs Sarah was keen to communicate her ideas clearly .....  
her students. (بنات سويف - بنات سويف ٢٠٢٤)  
a. with                      b. to                      c. on                      d. up
2. My birthday will ..... my closest friends. (المنيا - العدة ٢٠٢٤)  
a. contain                      b. include                      c. consist                      d. discover
3. On hearing about ..... diseases every now and then, terror spreads everywhere.  
a. communicate                      b. communication  
c. communicative                      d. communicable
4. Modern technology and online messaging have led to ..... new words.  
a. doing                      b. sounding                      c. making                      d. interesting
5. "He didn't like the way I talked to him, so he refused to include my name in his group." The verb 'include' is antonymous with .....  
a. leave out                      b. involve                      c. take in                      d. analyse
6. "Squash interests me." This means it ..... me.  
a. annoys                      b. attracts                      c. bores                      d. bears
7. If something is proper, it is .....  
a. improper                      b. inappropriate                      c. suitable                      d. wrong
8. When you describe something as 'recognisable', you mean it is .....  
a. indefinite                      b. definite                      c. ambiguous                      d. difficult
9. I started this business three years ago. I haven't travelled abroad .....  
a. ago                      b. since                      c. for                      d. along
10. Rodayna continued ..... homework.  
a. doing                      b. to doing                      c. do                      d. being done
11. Adding spices ..... food makes it tastier.  
a. at                      b. by                      c. to                      d. from
12. I was the only student in class to answer that question, which made me ..... special.  
a. feel                      b. do                      c. say                      d. interest



13. Sorry, but what you say doesn't ..... any sense.  
 a. include                      b. make                      c. get                      d. have
14. Charlie was a 32-.....-old man.  
 a. years                      b. years'                      c. year's                      d. year
15. Please, be careful when you take this ..... It will be put on my university ID.  
 a. selfie                      b. painting                      c. photo                      d. a & c

## PART III

## READING &amp; LISTENING

## 1 Reading Text

## Shakespeare and the English language

(SB page 46)

Language is always changing, and new words are **created**<sup>(1)</sup> all the time. We need new words to **describe**<sup>(2)</sup> new technology, ideas and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that. But, when everyone started doing it, the word '**selfie**'<sup>(3)</sup> became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they **remove**<sup>(4)</sup> words and **phrases**<sup>(5)</sup> that we don't use anymore.



- (1) تُبتكر (2) يصف (3) صورة شخصية (4) يزل (5) عبارات (6) مبتكر (7) يربط (8) مقاطع بادئة (9) مقاطع ناهية (10) غير مرتبط (11) مرتبط (12) يبدو

Shakespeare was a great **innovator**<sup>(6)</sup> with language, and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, changing nouns into verbs, and **connecting**<sup>(7)</sup> words to make new words. He also added **prefixes**<sup>(8)</sup> and **suffixes**<sup>(9)</sup>, for example, he created '**uncomfortable**'<sup>(10)</sup> from '**comfortable**'<sup>(11)</sup>.

Today, the language that Shakespeare used can **sound**<sup>(12)</sup> difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.

Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

## Endless change التغير المستمر

(WB page 26)

The Romans spoke a language called **Latin**<sup>(1)</sup> and they first took it to the country they called Britannia almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from **Germany**<sup>(2)</sup> when people called Angles and Saxons arrived about 500 years later. Soon the Land of the Angles became known as England and the English have been using and **misusing**<sup>(3)</sup> **foreign**<sup>(4)</sup> words **ever since**<sup>(5)</sup>.

For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all come from Old Norse, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the **French**<sup>(6)</sup>, who arrived in 1066.

**Unlike**<sup>(7)</sup> the poor people, who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with **similar**<sup>(8)</sup> meanings. French words are **recognisable**<sup>(9)</sup> because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a **mansion**<sup>(10)</sup>, which is a French word.

In the modern **age**<sup>(11)</sup>, we often **reuse**<sup>(12)</sup> old words from the past to make new **international**<sup>(13)</sup> words for technology. For example, the first part of the word helicopter is **Greek**<sup>(14)</sup> and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a **Russian**<sup>(15)</sup> **speaker**<sup>(16)</sup> living in America.

- (1) اللغة اللاتينية
- (2) دولة ألمانيا
- (3) يسئ استخدام
- (4) أجنبي
- (5) منذ ذلك الحين
- (6) اللغة الفرنسية
- (7) علي عكس
- (8) متشابه
- (9) يسهل التعرف عليه
- (10) قصر (سراي)
- (11) عصر
- (12) يعيد استخدام
- (13) دولي
- (14) يوناني
- (15) روسي
- (16) مُتحدث

## Emoji Fun !

(SB page 47)

Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone. The problem is, there are no words, just a long line of emojis. This is confusing because our grandparents think the messages are from me! Should I have taken the phone away from my sister?

When a child begins to learn how to speak, they first make different sounds. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis **rather than**<sup>(1)</sup> **proper**<sup>(2)</sup> words to communicate what they want to say.

- (1) بدلاً من
- (2) مناسب



But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to communicate. With text messages, children can **receive**<sup>(3)</sup> and read **replies**<sup>(4)</sup> which are written just for them. I'm sure this will make them feel **special**<sup>(5)</sup> and they will want to communicate more. So, instead of taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "Send your grandparents a message".

(3) يتسلم

(4) ردود

(5) مميز

## A summary of a survey into social media use (WB page 27)

### Introduction

The **aim**<sup>(1)</sup> of this report is to **summarise**<sup>(2)</sup> the **findings**<sup>(3)</sup> of the **survey**<sup>(4)</sup> into the time students spend using **social media**<sup>(5)</sup>.

(1) هدف

(2) يلخص

(3) نتائج

(4) بحث استطلاعي

(5) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

(6) يكره

(7) يسجل

(8) نتائج

(9) يقارن

(10) عضو

(11) تعليق

(12) يبقى على تواصل مع

(13) اهتمامات

(14) هوايات

### Procedure

Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and **disliked**<sup>(6)</sup> about using it. We **recorded**<sup>(7)</sup> our **results**<sup>(8)</sup> and **compared**<sup>(9)</sup> them.

### Findings

Most of the students that we spoke to were surprised by how much time they spent on social media when they thought about it carefully.

Many students thought that they were spending too much time on social media and some students said that they would try to spend less time on social media. Some students reported that at least one **member**<sup>(10)</sup> of their family had made a negative **comment**<sup>(11)</sup> about it. However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it.

Most students used social media on their phones. The students used social media to **keep in touch with**<sup>(12)</sup> their friends, and to follow their **interests**<sup>(13)</sup> or **hobbies**<sup>(14)</sup>.

## Conclusion

In general, students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.

## 2 Listening Texts

### Tips on writing a blog post

(5B page 47)

#### Speaker 1 :

Tips on how to write a successful **blog post**<sup>(1)</sup>

1. Start with your **topic**<sup>(2)</sup>. Think about what will interest and **inform**<sup>(3)</sup> your reader.
2. Start with a **headline**<sup>(4)</sup> for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3. Find a **suitable**<sup>(5)</sup> photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
4. Plan the **sections**<sup>(6)</sup> of your blog. Add a **sub-heading**<sup>(7)</sup> for each section/new point.
5. Write your **introduction paragraph**<sup>(8)</sup>. **Be clear**<sup>(9)</sup> what the **purpose**<sup>(10)</sup> of this blog post is. Speak to the reader - use first and third person. Include a question.
6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.
7. Write a **conclusion**<sup>(11)</sup>. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself' use "we".
8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too **frequently**<sup>(12)</sup>. Use an online **thesaurus**<sup>(13)</sup> to **avoid**<sup>(14)</sup> repeating the same word too many times.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it **make sense**<sup>(15)</sup> to them?
10. **Cite**<sup>(16)</sup> all your sources of information.

(1) منشور المدونة
(2) الموضوع
(3) يخبر - يُعلم
(4) عنوان رئيسي
(5) مناسب
(6) أقسام
(7) عنوان فرعي
(8) شقرة تقديمية
(9) كن واضحاً
(10) غرض / هدف
(11) خاتمة
(12) مراًزاً وتكراراً
(13) معجم المترادفات
(14) يتجنب
(15) تعطى معنى
(16) يستشهد بـ



## PART IV LANGUAGE

## Part 2: Reporting orders, requests and advice

تحويل جمل الأمر والطلب والنصيحة إلى الكلام غير المباشر

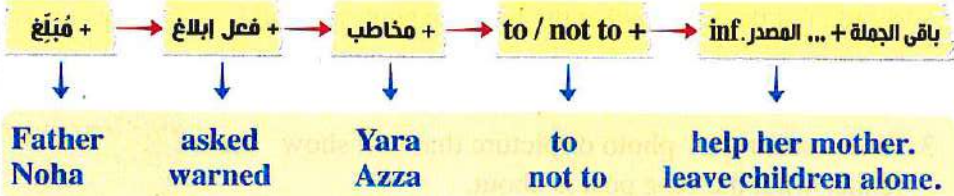
١ تبدأ جملة الأمر المثبت (افعل) في الكلام المباشر بالفعل في المصدر (inf.):

- ex. - "Help your mother, Yara", said Father. (مباشر)  
= Father said, "Help your mother, Yara". (مباشر)  
- Father asked Yara to help her mother. (غير مباشر)

٢ تبدأ جملة النهي (لا تفعل) في الكلام المباشر بـ (Don't / Never + inf.):

- ex. - "Don't leave children alone, Azza", said Noha. (مباشر)  
= Noha said, "Don't leave children alone, Azza". (مباشر)  
= Noha warned Azza not to leave children alone. (غير مباشر)

٣ تتكون جملة الأمر / النهي في الكلام غير المباشر من:



٤ يُستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب بعد المُبَيَّن (المتكلم)، مثل:

told - أمر - commanded - أمر - ordered - طلب - asked - أخبر / قال ل  
reminded - شجّع - encouraged - نصح - advised - حذّر - warned - ذمّر  
instructed - غمّم - taught - أراد - wanted - دعي - invited - توقع - expected  
..... المُخاطَب + obj. + هدد - threatened

٥ والمُخاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول (me - him - her - it - you - us - them):

- ex. - Nader told **Salma** to study hard.  
- I advised **her** to be more serious.

٦ تُستخدم (to + inf.) بعد المُخاطَب بمعنى (أن):

- ex. - He told me **to exercise** more.

٧ تُستخدم (not to + inf.) بمعنى (ألا ...) في صيغة النفي:

- ex. - Areej asked him **not to shout** at her.

٨ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطَب:

- ex. - Omar said, "Give **me** your opinion, Sara". (مباشر)  
- Omar asked Sara to give **him** her opinion. (غير مباشر)

٩ يتم حذف (excuse me - pardon me - please ...) وما شابه :

- ex. - "Help your mother, please," said my father. (مباشر)  
- My father asked me to help my mother. (غير مباشر)

١٠ يمكن تحويل جملة الطلب التي تكون على هيئة سؤال بنفس الطريقة السابقة - لاحظ الأمثلة التالية :

- ex. - "Can you help me, Omar?" said Ali. (مباشر)  
= Ali asked Omar to help him. (غير مباشر)  
- "Could you lend me 10 pounds?" I said to Areej. (مباشر)  
= I asked Areej to lend me 10 pounds. (غير مباشر)

١١ يمكن تحويل جملة الطلب التي تكون على هيئة سؤال بنفس طريقة تحويل (Yes / No Questions) كالتالي :

→ Speaker + asked / inquired ... + if / whether + subj. ... .

- ex. - "Can you help me, Omar?" said Ali. (مباشر)  
= Ali asked Omar if he could help him. (غير مباشر)  
- "Could you lend me 10 pounds?" I said to Areej. (مباشر)  
= I asked Areej if / whether she could lend me 10 pounds. (غير مباشر)

١٢ في حالة وجود جملة بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات التالية يكون فعلها (inf. / should + inf.) :

يطلب ... ask - ينصح advise - يصمم insist - يوصى بـ recommend - يقترح suggest

→ It + be + (vital ضروري - essential / crucial ضروري - important ...)

- ex. - I asked that Sama get / should get ready.  
- Rodayna suggested that I be / should be in charge of the project.  
- It is important that Ashraf follow / should follow a diet.

### Mini Test

Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I ..... them to turn the music down as I was trying to sleep.

- (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)  
a. said                      b. told                      c. made                      d. ordered to

2. I was recommended ..... a study plan.

- (أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. making                      b. make                      c. to make                      d. be made

3. You must buy me the present. You promised me .....

- a. not to buy                      b. buying                      c. not to forget                      d. to forget

4. The assistant told me ..... for the shirt over there.

- a. whether to pay                      b. if he pay                      c. to pay                      d. to have paid

5. That young man ..... me for some advice.

- a. wondered                      b. asked                      c. inquired                      d. explained





13. I ..... understand the lesson after you had explained the main points to me.  
 a. could                      b. was able to                      c. succeeded in                      d. a & b
14. He could have gone there on his own if he .....  
 a. wants                      b. wanted                      c. had wanted                      d. will want
15. I don't know where Ahmed is. He could ..... the horse.  
 a. feed                      b. have fed                      c. have been fed                      d. be feeding
16. I didn't know where Ahmed was. He could ..... to feed the horse.  
 a. go    b. have gone  
 c. have been gone    d. be gone
17. I ..... here when I was young but I can't really remember.  
 a. could be    b. could have been  
 c. should be    d. should have been
18. I ..... to the cinema, but I decided to watch a film on TV.  
 a. could go    b. could be gone  
 c. could have gone    d. should go
19. I thought I saw Ayman in the office that morning but it ..... him.  
 He was in London that day.  
 a. can't be    b. couldn't be  
 c. could have been    d. couldn't have been
20. You destroyed the screen. You ..... have read the instructions properly.  
 a. couldn't                      b. can                      c. must                      d. mustn't
21. I had my mobile on the bus on my way home. It ..... in the office.  
 a. couldn't leave    b. can't leave  
 c. couldn't have been left    d. couldn't have left
22. He suggested that we ..... the film as it was great.  
 a. see                      b. have seen                      c. sees                      d. seeing
23. My parents suggested ..... exercise every day.  
 a. me to do                      b. that I do                      c. me doing                      d. I have done
24. My friend ..... me to be careful about fast cars when I crossed a busy street.  
 a. reported                      b. suggested                      c. warned                      d. recommended
25. My father recommended ..... a book about space technology.  
 a. me read                      b. me to reading                      c. to me read                      d. that I read

## 2 Exercises from previous exams

26. My mother always advises us ..... avoid making friends with bad people.  
 (السوان - أسوان ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. don't                      b. not to                      c. to                      d. not to
27. Mr Gamal advised me ..... waste my time during the school day.  
 (الغربية - قطور ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. to                      b. to do not                      c. don't                      d. not to



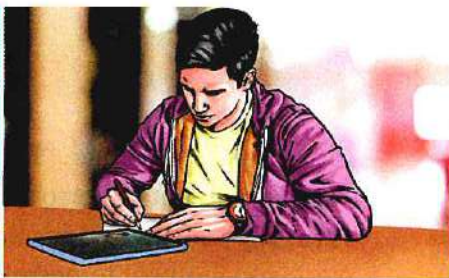
28. Our teacher ordered us ..... our essays and correct any mistakes.  
(أسوان - كوم إمبو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. should revise    b. to revise    c. revised    d. must revise
29. The teacher advised me to study hard and ..... my time.  
(أنسيوط - ساحل سليم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. don't waste    b. not waste    c. to waste not    d. not to waste
30. The assistant ..... me to pay for the jacket I bought.  
(الإسكندرية - المنتزه ثان ٢٠٢٣)  
a. explained    b. wondered    c. told    d. said
31. My teacher warned me ..... emojis in formal messages.  
(الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. to use    b. for use    c. to use not    d. not to use
32. I suggested that ..... abroad to complete his studies there.  
(الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. he will travel    b. he travel    c. ought to travel    d. he travels
33. They succeeded ..... the problem with the tablet.  
(البحيرة - إدكو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. to fix    b. to fixing    c. in fixing    d. a & c
34. Her parents ..... she study abroad.  
(الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)  
a. told    b. encouraged    c. warned    d. asked
35. The police ..... me not to drive quickly on crowded roads.  
(الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)  
a. complained    b. begged    c. confirmed    d. warned
36. Since this is my own private parking area, I ..... parking here.  
(الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)  
a. don't have    b. mustn't    c. don't want    d. don't allow
37. My father doesn't allow ..... loud music at night.  
(الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٣)  
a. play    b. to play    c. playing    d. played
38. You must buy the present. You promised me ..... it.  
(الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. not to forget    b. not to buy    c. to forget    d. buying
39. Don't try ..... this tree. It's too tall.  
(المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)  
a. climb    b. to climb    c. climbs    d. to climbing

### 3 Check your understanding

40. The teacher told us to do exercise No 4. This shows .....  
(البحيرة - إدكو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. order    b. suggestion  
c. positive advice    d. negative advice

41. My dad said to me, "Don't stay up late tonight as you have an appointment tomorrow." That means ..... (الشرقية - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)
- My dad advised me not to stay up late tonight as I have an appointment tomorrow.
  - My dad advised me not to stay up late this night as I had an appointment the following day.
  - My dad advised me not stay up late that night as I had an appointment the following day.
  - My dad advised me not to stay up late that night as you had an appointment the following day.
42. Which sentence ISN'T correctly structured? (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)
- I warned my friend against smoking.
  - I warned my friend not to smoke.
  - I warned my friend to stop smoking.
  - I warned my friend stop smoking.
43. "You should be helping mum with the housework."  
This means .....
- You are already helping mum with the housework
  - You are supposed to be helping mum with the housework
  - You are meant to have helped mum with the housework
  - You don't have to help mum with the housework
44. We should be wearing seatbelts .....
- but we are wearing them.
  - although we are wearing them.
  - but we aren't wearing them.
  - b & c
45. "Ashraf should have been careful with his money." What does this mean ?
- Ashraf was careful with his money.
  - Ashraf isn't careful with his money.
  - Ashraf wasn't careless with his money.
  - Ashraf wasn't careful with his money.
46. Which of the following choices is the most accurate to say you find some difficulty winning the race?
- I could win the race.
  - I was able to win the race.
  - I managed to win the race.
  - b & c
47. Which of the following choices is / are correct?
- I couldn't win the race.
  - I wasn't able to win the race.
  - I managed in winning the race.
  - a & b





تتويبه • للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

## PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

make + object + inf. / adj.

- **make + مفعول + inf.** (معلوم) يجعل / يجبر  
**ex.** - My father **made** me **water** the trees in the garden.
- **be made to + inf.** (مجهول) يجعل / يجبر  
**ex.** - I was **made to** **water** the trees in the garden.
- **make + مفعول + adj.** يجعل  
**ex.** - Good news **makes** us **happy**.

سواء ... أو ... .. whether ... or ...

١. تُستخدم (whether ..... or ..... ) بمعنى (سواء ... أو ...) للتعبير عن بديلين :

Whether + بديل أول + or + بديل ثان

**ex.** - You will be late **whether** you **take a taxi** **or** **go by bus**.

٢. تُستخدم (whether ... or not) بمعنى (سواء ... أو لا) لنفي التأثير :

- I will tell the truth **whether** you **like it** **or not**.

aged + عدد سنوات = at the age of + عدد سنوات

= when + subj. + was / were + عدد سنوات

**ex.** - He died in 2014, **aged** 86. = He died in 2014 **at the age of** 86.  
 = He died in 2014 **when he was** 86.

like على عكس unlike مثل

- تُستخدم (like / unlike) كحروف جر بمعنى (مثل - على عكس):

- **Like his father**, Ahmed is hardworking. They are similar.
- **Unlike her mother**, Rody is tall. They are different.

## Compound adjectives that have numbers

الصفات المركبة التي تتضمن أرقام

١. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم مفرد ثم صفة وبينهم (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها :

اسم موصوف + صفة + اسم مفرد + عدد

ex. - Rodayna has a **nine** - **year** - **old** brother.

٢. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم مفرد وبينهما (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها :

اسم موصوف + اسم مفرد + عدد

ex. - She is an expert on the **twentieth-century** history.

٣. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم جمع كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها :

اسم موصوف + اسم جمع + عدد

- Sama joined a **six** **months'** course.

٤. في حالة وجود كلمة time بعد التعبيرات السابقة نستخدم (s) في حالة المفرد و (s) في حالة الجمع :

ex. - I will leave in an **hour's** time.

- In **two years' time**, my brother will be living in his own flat.

## other than - rather than

### • other than

بخلاف / غير

ex. - You should eat another source of protein **other than** red meat.

### • rather than

أفضل من - بدلا من

ex. - I suggest that you do a sport **rather than** chat online all the time.

## Exercise On Language Hints

• ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ali's family spent a ..... holiday in Hurghada.

(الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٤)

a. two-week

b. two-weeks'

c. two-weeks

d. two-week's

2. It's difficult to ..... him leave his job for a new one.

(المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٣)

a. persuade

b. allow

c. make

d. advise

3. It takes us a short time to get here. It is ..... journey.

(المنوفية - الباجور ٢٠٢٤)

a. a two-hour

b. two hour

c. two hours

d. a two-hours



4. Just your presence حضور makes us ..... .  
 a. happy                      b. feel happy                      c. to feel happy                      d. a & b
5. We are made ..... by your presence.  
 a. happy                      b. feel happy                      c. to feel happy                      d. a & c
6. I will go out ..... you go with me or not.  
 a. weather                      b. whether                      c. although                      d. as
7. Mr Younes died in 2011, ..... 107.  
 a. aged                      b. was                      c. was aging                      d. age
8. Mr Younes died in 2011 when he ..... 107.  
 a. aged                      b. was                      c. was aging                      d. age
9. Mr Younes died in 2011 at the ..... of 107.  
 a. aged                      b. was                      c. was aging                      d. age
10. .... her father, Leen has a serious character. They both work hard.  
 a. Once                      b. As                      c. Unlike                      d. Like
11. .... her mother, Aya has long hair. Her mother's is short.  
 a. Once                      b. As                      c. Unlike                      d. Like
12. In a ..... time, I'll have paid back your money.  
 a. month's                      b. months'                      c. monthly                      d. a & c
13. There's a seven - ..... - tall tree in front of our house.  
 a. a metre                      b. metre                      c. metres                      d. metres'

## PART II

## LANGUAGE SKILLS

## 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions. (الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)

In the last decade, the culture of volunteering and doing community projects has grown in many different parts of Egypt. The best example of that is professor. Greenish is another example for that. It concentrates on the power of the youth. Greenish is an environmental movement that focuses on increasing society's awareness of environment to different schools, companies and universities. In addition, they arrange cleaning events in many communities to improve and environmental way of living.

One of their achievements includes the Ceusseil cleanup project. It succeeded in collecting more than 5000 waste items from the beach. They are also partners with "Bassita" in the "Very Nile" project that aims to remove all waste and trash from the Nile.

1. Magdi Yacoub helps people with ..... problems.  
a. eye                      b. ear                      c. lung                      d. heart
2. Greenish delivers educational content to .....  
a. schools                      b. companies                      c. universities                      d. a, b, & c
3. Greenish managed to collect waste from the ..... on its project the Qusseir cleanup.  
a. beach                      b. sea                      c. Nile                      d. a, b, & c
4. Greenish is an ..... movement.  
a. environmental.                      b. playing.                      c. fighting.                      d. trading.
5. The best title for this text is “..... in society”.  
a. The role of the women movement  
b. The role of teacher movement  
c. The role of men movement  
d. The role of Greenish Movement
6. The Greenish Movement concentrates on the age of .....  
a. children                      b. youth                      c. old                      d. babies
7. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to .....  
a. children                      b. Greenish Movement  
c. society                      d. schools
8. Greenish focuses on ..... society's awareness of environment.  
a. inhabiting                      b. reducing                      c. increasing                      d. refusing

## 2 Writing Tips - Writing a blog post      كتابة منشور مدونة

### ✪ Tips on how to write a successful blog post.

\* إرشادات خاصة بكتابة منشور مدونة جيد (نص الاستماع الخاص بكتاب الطالب صفحة ٤٧).

1. Start with your topic. Think about what will interest and inform your reader.

١. ابدأ بالفكرة الرئيسية وفكر فيما سيثير اهتمام القارئ ويعطيه معلومة.

2. Start with a headline for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.

٢. ابدأ بعنوان رئيسي لمدونتك، ويجب أن يخبر العنوان الرئيسي القارئ عن موضوع المدونة، ويجب أن يكون قصيرًا ويعطي معلومات وأن يكون ممتعًا ويجعل القارئ يرغب في قراءة بقية المدونة.



3. Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.

٣. ابحث عن صورة شخصية أو صورة مناسبة والتي ستوضح للقارئ موضوع منشور المدونة.

4. Plan the sections of your blog. Add a sub-heading for each section/new point.

٤. حدد أقسام مدونتك، وأضف عناونا فرعياً لكل قسم / نقطة جديدة.

5. Write your introduction paragraph. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader – use first and third person. Include a question.

٥. اكتب فقرة المقدمة، كن واضحاً فيما يتعلق بالغرض من منشور المدونة هذا، وتحدث إلى القارئ - استخدم ضمير المتكلم / المتكلمين (I / We). أو ضمائر الغائب (he - she - it) قم بتضمين سؤال.

6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.

٦. اكتب المتن الرئيسي للمدونة، واجعل الجمل وال فقرات قصيرة، وقم بتضمين صور حيثما كان ذلك مفيداً، وقم بالبحث لتجد الحقائق لتضمينها.

7. Write a conclusion. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself; use 'we'.

٧. اكتب خاتمة بالرجوع إلى العنوان الرئيسي الخاص بك والمقدمة، ولا تقم بتضمين معلومات جديدة في خاتمتك، وتحدث إلى القارئ مرة أخرى وقم بتضمين نفسك؛ واستخدم الضمير «نحن».

8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently. Use an online thesaurus to avoid repeating the same word too many times.

٨. اقرأ وصحح منشور المدونة الخاص بك، وتحقق من الإملاء والقواعد اللغوية وعلامات الترقيم. وتأكد من أنك لم تكرر الأفكار الرئيسية كثيراً. استخدم موسوعة مفردات عبر الإنترنت لتجنب تكرار نفس الكلمة مرات عديدة.

9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them ?

٩. اطلب من صديق قراءة منشور المدونة الخاص بك لتتأكد أنه ذو مغزى.

10. Cite all your sources of information. اذكر جميع مصادر المعلومات الخاصة بك.

## Model Blog Post

### Language development

In this post, I am going to throw light on the development of languages. First, I will explain what language development means. Then I will give an example of language development.

Like everything else, languages develop. If you ask me what makes languages develop, I will tell you that it is the nature of things. Nothing stands still يبقى جامداً. As everything in life develops, language develops necessarily in parallel. بالتوازي

Do you see the inventions which come into existence الوجود every day? Of course, we need names not only for them, but for each part of them as well. That will lead to finding new terms مصطلحات for these inventions and their parts. In this way, new words are added to languages.

I will give you a single example. Before 2013, it was impossible to find the word 'selfie' in any English dictionary. What happened was that modern technology has led to inventing this word. The development of smart phones caused the existence of this word. These mobiles, as you know, have cameras. Young people used their mobiles to take photos of themselves, whether alone or with other friends. A language innovator added the syllable 'ie' to the word 'self'. That's how this new word came into existence.

To conclude, languages develop with the development of life. However, we must do our best to protect the fundamentals اساسيات of languages from being vanished.

### Writing practice

- ✦ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

(البحيرة - دكو ٢٠٢٤)

*Why it is important to learn foreign languages*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## 3 Translation الترجمة

## 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. There are many reasons for admitting our mistakes. This enables us to build better relationships and allows us to take responsibility in our lives.

(الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)

- a. هناك العديد من الأسباب للاعتراف بأخطائنا هذا يمكننا من بناء علاقات أفضل ويسمح لنا بتحمل المسؤولية في حياتنا.
- b. هناك العديد من الأسباب لتفادي أخطائنا. هذا يمكننا من بناء علاقات أفضل ويسمح لنا بتحمل المسؤولية في حياتنا.
- c. هناك العديد من الأسباب للاعتراف بأخطائنا. هذا يمكننا من بناء علاقات أفضل ويسمح لنا بالتخلي عن المسؤولية في حياتنا.
- d. هناك العديد من الأسباب للاعتراف بعيوبنا. هذا يمكننا من بناء روابط أفضل ويسمح لنا بتحمل المسؤولية في حياتنا.

2. Teachers play a vital role in the lives of students through face-to-face interaction. A teacher is not only a source of information, but he is also a leader, a parent and a friend.

(الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يلعب المعلمون دورًا حيويًا في حياة الطلاب من خلال التفاعل وجهاً لوجه، فالمعلم ليس مجرد مصدر للمعلومات بل هو أيضًا ووالد وصديق.
- b. يمثل المعلمون قاعدة حيوية في حياة الطلاب من خلال التفاعل وجهاً لوجه، فالمعلم ليس مجرد مصدر للمعلومات، بل هو أيضًا قائد ووالد وصديق.
- c. يلعب المعلمون دورًا حيويًا في حياة الطلاب من خلال التفاعل وجهاً لوجه، فالمعلم مجرد مصدر للمعلومات وهو أيضًا قائد ووالد وصديق.
- d. يلعب المعلمون دورًا حواريًا في حياة الطلاب من خلال التفاعل وجهاً لوجه، فالمعلم ليس مجرد مصدر للمعلومات، بل هو أيضًا قائد ووالد وصديق.

3. Students with special needs are given due care. They are combined with other students at schools and given all the support they need.

(الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يتم إعطاء الطلاب ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة العناية الواجبة، وتم دمجهم مع الطلاب الآخرين في المدارس برغم كل الدعم الذي يحتاجون إليه.
- b. يتم منح الطلاب ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة العناية الواجبة، ويتم دمجهم مع الطلاب الآخرين في المدارس ويحصلون على كل الدعم الذي يحتاجون إليه.
- c. يتم إعفاء الطلاب ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة العناية الواجبة، ويتم دمجهم مع الطلاب الآخرين في المدارس على كل الدعم الذي يحتاجون إليه.
- d. يتم منح الطلاب ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة العناية الواجبة، ولا يتم دمجهم مع الطلاب الآخرين في المدارس ويحصلون على كل الدعم الذي يحتاجون إليه.

## 2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. لقد برزت أهمية التعليم على الأنترنت مع أزمة فيروس كورونا، حيث كان الحل الوحيد لإكمال

(الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)

العام الدراسي في ذلك الوقت.

- a. The importance of online education has emerged with the coronavirus crises. It was the only solution to complete the school's year at that time.
- b. The importance of online education has emerged with the coronavirus crisis. It was the only solution to complete the school year at that time.
- c. The importance of online education has merged within the coronavirus crisis. It was the only solution to complete the school's year at that time.
- d. The importance of online education had merged within the coronavirus crises. It was the only solution to complete the school year at that time.

٢٠. للصحافة دور كبير في تنمية الوعي العام تجاه القضايا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية، فهي تعرض  
المشاكل وتقدم لها الحلول.  
(الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Journalism has a big role in developing the public awareness towards economic and social issues because it shows the problems and introduces their solutions.
- b. Journalism has an impact of developing the common awareness for economic and social issues for showing the problems and gives their solution.
- c. Journalism plays a role in developing the common awareness for economic and social issues as showing the problems and explains the solutions.
- d. Journalism affects the developing of awareness of social and economic issues and suggests the solution to the problems.

٢١. القراءة قادرة على إخراجك من ظلام الجهل إلى نور المعرفة، ومن ضيق التعصب إلى رحابة  
التسامح والتعايش مع الآخر.  
(الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Reading is capable of taking you from the glory of ignorance to the light of knowledge, and from the narrowness of intolerance to the breadth of tolerance and coexistence with others.
- b. Reading is capable of taking you from the darkness of ignorance to the light of information, and from the narrowness of intolerance to the breadth of tolerance and coexistence with others.
- c. Reading is capable of taking you from the darkness of ignorance to the light of knowledge, and from the narrowness of tolerance to the breadth of tolerance and coexistence with others.
- d. Reading is capable of taking you from the darkness of ignorance to the light of knowledge, and from the narrowness of intolerance to the breadth of tolerance and coexistence with others.



## PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

◀ للفائقين فقط

## المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين Key Vocabulary for Advanced level

## abbreviation

- **abbreviate (d) = shorten (ed) (v)** يختصر (كلمة أو عبارة)  
**ex.** - Arab Republic of Egypt is **abbreviated** to ARE.
- **abbreviated (adj)** مُختَصِر  
**ex.** - The minister gave an **abbreviated** speech. خطبة
- **abbreviation (n)** اختصار  
**ex.** - WHO is the **abbreviation** of "World Health Organisation".  
 منظمة الصحة العالمية  
 لاحظ أن:
- **be the abbreviation of / for = be short for** اختصار لـ  
**ex.** - IT is the **abbreviation of / for** 'Information Technology'.  
 = IT is **short for** 'Information Technology'.

## communicate - communication

- **communicate (d) (with) (v)** يتواصل (مع)  
**ex.** - We can **communicate with** people all over the world through social media.  
 شفهيًا. - He has a special ability to **communicate** well in writing, not orally.  
 لاحظ أن:
- **communicate + شخص + to + شئ** ينقل رسالة / يبلغ ... لـ ...  
**ex.** - Mr Ayman **communicated** the good news **to** the staff of the office.
- **communicate (d) (v)** يعبر عن  
**ex.** - Rokaya **communicated** her anger by leaving the room.
- **communicate (d) (v)** ينقل (بالإيحاء) - يُغدي  
**ex.** - Our manager's confidence is automatically **communicated** to us.  
 مما سبق يتضح الفرق بين:
- **communicate with** يتواصل مع / يتصل بـ  
**ex.** - Modern technology helps us to **communicate with** other people easily.
- **communicate ... to** ينقل إلي / يوصل إلي  
**ex.** - We will be able to **communicate** messages **to** other people that we know.

• **communication (n)**

التواصل - الاتصال

**ex.** - Your **communication** skills help you succeed at work.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• **a channel / a means / form / method / system of communication**

وسيلة أو قناة اتصال / نظام تواصل

**ex.** - The most common **channels of communication** used by online businesses are email, newsletters and live chat.

• **communications (n)**

وسائل التواصل أو الاتصال

كلمة (communications) تعني وسائل التواصل مثل الإنترنت و الراديو و التلفزيون وكذلك الطرق والسكك الحديدية ، وبهذا المعني فهي جمع دائما:

**ex.** - Modern **communications** help us learn and work from home.

• **communicable (adj)**

مُعدي (مرض)

**ex.** - Flu is a **communicable** disease.

**message**

• **message (n)**

رسالة

**ex.** - I sent you a **message** with the information you need.

لاحظ أن:

- a message from رسالة من

- a message for رسالة ل

• **message (n)**

مغزي / درس مستفاد

**ex.** - The **message** of the film is that old people need special care.

لاحظ أن:

• **get the message**

يفهم

- When his expression changed, I knew that he **got the message**.

• **message (d) (v)**

يراسل (عبر الرسائل النصية وغيرها علي وسائل التواصل)

- She **messages** a lot of people from different countries.

• **messaging (n)**

التراسل / التواصل بالرسائل الإلكترونية

- Smartphones have made **messaging** easier.

**tone**

• **tone (n)**

نبرة الصوت (تدل علي مشاعر المتكلم)

- I miss my grandmother's kind **tone**.

- She doesn't like you to speak to her in a sharp **tone**.

• **tone (d) / tone up (v)**

يشد - يقوّي

- This exercise will **tone** your arm muscles.

• **tone ... down (phr. v)**

يلطّف - يخفف حدة

- Don't be cruel. Try to **tone** your speech **down**.

• **tone (n)**

أسلوب / طابع / وُقع

- The essay is sharp in **tone**. (بمعنى ان المقال ذو طابع حاد)



**Advanced Exercise** on Vocabulary

## • ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "He looked with interest at the advertisement." This means the advertisement ..... to him.  
a. appealed      b. interested      c. bored      d. concerned
2. Through crying, babies manage to ..... their needs to us.  
a. email      b. post      c. communicate      d. connect
3. My father ..... examples of my friends who have got the full mark in the exam I have failed.  
a. commented      b. reacted      c. cited      d. connected
4. He is a simple-minded person. I don't think he will ..... this complex message.  
a. leave      b. get      c. give      d. a & c
5. You can ..... your worry to the children without realizing it.  
a. connect      b. communicate      c. receive      d. check

**Advanced Exercise** on Language

## • ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ahmed has been studying hard. He ..... do well on the test tomorrow.  
a. could      b. should      c. might      d. has to
2. I wonder why Nada hasn't written to us. We ..... have heard from her last week.  
a. can      b. might      c. should      d. must
3. **A** : He did badly in the exam.      **B** : I feel sure he ..... it.  
a. couldn't have passed      b. isn't able to pass  
c. succeed in passing      d. can't pass
4. "You ought to have told him that the paint on that seat was wet." His trousers .....  
a. stained      b. is staining      c. got stained      d. a & c
5. She asked that we ..... early.  
a. arrives      b. should arrive      c. had arrived      d. arriving

# Test on Unit 4

تدريسه

\* التقييمات الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب  
\* تدريبات الأزهر الشريف  
بنك الأسئلة



- Understand    ● Apply    ● Create

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The teaching profession ..... good education and training.  
a. acquires    b. requires    c. enquires    d. inquires
- WHO is a/an ..... of "World Health Organisation". (المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. suffix    b. prefix    c. antonym    d. abbreviation
- To be among your close friends doesn't require ..... language.  
a. formal    b. innovator    c. former    d. official
- The teacher ..... angrily at the noisy class. (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. praised    b. thanked    c. frowned    d. cheered
- We usually use ..... English when we send text messages to our friends. (القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٣)  
a. informal    b. formal    c. usual    d. normal
- In text messages, we use ..... to make communication quicker. (الإسكندرية - شرق الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. articles    b. emojis    c. emails    d. sounds
- We need proper equipment to climb the mountain. The synonym of "proper" is ..... (كفر الشيخ - الحامول ٢٠٢٣)  
a. incorrect    b. suitable    c. fashionable    d. wrong
- You ..... at your son. He was frightened. (البحيرة - الدلتجات ٢٠٢٤)  
a. shouldn't shout    b. shouldn't be shouting  
c. should have shouted    d. shouldn't have shouted
- He ..... been a great engineer. He had the ability, but he wasted the chance. (الغربية - قطور ٢٠٢٤)  
a. must have    b. mustn't have    c. could have    d. needn't have
- You are wasteful, you ..... have spent so much money on clothes. (القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤)  
a. should    b. could    c. shouldn't    d. might
- Adel was working with me all day, so you ..... seen him at the park.  
a. could    b. could be    c. couldn't    d. couldn't have
- "I shouldn't have shouted at you yesterday." The speaker expresses ..... (الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٣)  
a. regret    b. happiness    c. obligation    d. blame
- She ..... bought the book, but she borrowed it from the library instead. (المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٤)  
a. must have    b. shouldn't have    c. could have    d. ought to
- The ship's captain ordered the sailors ..... harder.  
a. work    b. working    c. to work    d. must work
- My teacher warned me ..... use dangerous weapons.  
a. to    b. not to    c. if    d. whether



## 2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (الحیزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)

You go to bed at night, close your eyes, and drift off to sleep. Have you ever wondered how exactly sleep works? Plus, where do dreams come from? When you fall asleep, you go through the four stages of the sleep cycle.

This is when you feel yourself becoming **drowsy**. Your muscles begin to relax and your brain activity slows down. Your eye movements are slow during stage 1. It lasts for several minutes and you can be woken up easily.

When your sleep becomes a bit deeper. You won't wake up easily. The slow eye movements continue and your brain waves slow down more. Your body temperature goes down and your heart rate slows down.

This is known as deep sleep. It's more difficult for you to be woken up. And, although you are sleeping deeply, this is when sleepwalking or sleep talking occurs. So, all those sleepwalkers out there may not actually remember doing anything strange in their sleep the next day.

Then finally you move into REM. That stands for **rapid** eye movement. During the REM stage, your eyes move quickly beneath your closed eyelids. This is caused by certain activity. You may have vivid dreams during this stage. Your brain waves are more active than in stages 2 and 3. They're similar to when you're awake. It's easier for your brain to wake you up, but you may feel groggy or sleepy.

1. "You begin to feel drowsy. Your muscles relax." This happens in the ..... stage.  
a. fourth                      b. second                      c. first                      d. third
2. What happens in stage two ?  
a. Sleepwalking or sleep talking occurs.  
b. The person's body temperature goes down.  
c. The person can be woken up easily.  
d. The person may have vivid dreams.
3. The antonym of the underlined word '**drowsy**' is ".....".  
a. active                      b. vivid                      c. sleepy                      d. awake
4. When you are asleep, the quick eye movement is caused by ..... .  
a. the person's movement                      b. the person's thoughts  
c. the light around the person                      d. certain brain activity
5. In which stage does your brain activity slow down, and you aren't woken up as easily ?  
a. one                      b. two                      c. three                      d. RAM
6. In REM stage ..... .  
a. the eyes move quickly beneath the eyelids  
b. the muscles relax  
c. the brain activity slows down  
d. the brain waves are more inactive
7. The synonym of the word "**rapid**" is ".....".  
a. later                      b. gradual                      c. slow                      d. quick



8. One of the following is NOT one of the benefits of getting enough Sleep : Sleep helps you .....

- a. to function properly
- b. to learn
- c. concentrate
- d. respond slowly

3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Spare time can be useful if it is employed for developing one's character physically and mentally. So, we should all realise its importance and try to make the best use of it.

(الفيوم - الفيوم ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يجب أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا، لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول صنع الأفضل منه.
- b. يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا، لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول حسن استخدامه.
- c. يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا، لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول جعل الأفضل منه.
- d. يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم استخدامه لتغيير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا، لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن نوضح أهميته ونحاول حسن استخدامه.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

(الشرقية - مشتول ٢٠٢٤)

نسعى لإنشاء مصر الحديثة واستغلال مُنجزات العِلْم والتكنولوجيا.

- a. We seek to establish ancient Egypt and exploit the fruits of science and technology.
- b. We seek to establish modern Egypt and explore the fruits of science and technology.
- c. We seek to establish modern Egypt and exploit the fruits of science and technology.
- d. We seek to establish modern Egypt and exploit the fruits of art and technology.

4. Answer the following questions :

1. If you were a father and you had two sons, would you give your land to one of them only? Why/Why not?

(البحيرة - الدلجات ٢٠٢٤)

.....

2. If you were king Lear, how would you react to the two daughters betrayal?

(الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)

.....

3. How do you think Edmund plotted against his brother ? Why ?

(الدقهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤)

.....

5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic :

*“How to use social media sensibly”*

.....  
.....  
.....



# UNIT 5

SB pages 52 : 61  
WB pages 30 : 35

## Being smart online



**Objectives :** الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- ☛ **Reading** : An article about an online video channel; An article about how to use the internet for research
- ☛ **Writing** : An email and an essay on how to use social media sensibly

- ☛ **Listening** : Two boys discussing how to use social media; Five teenagers talking about the effects of the internet on young people
- ☛ **Speaking** : A presentation
- ☛ **Language** : seems to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to
- ☛ **Life skills** : Critical Thinking; Resilience



## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adapt (ed) (v)	يتكيف - يتأقلم	sponsored advert (n)	إعلان مُموَّل
advert = ad =	إعلان	subscribe (d) (v)	يُسجِّل (في موقع) - يشترك
advertisement (n)		take down (phr.v)	يُزيل (مُنشور)
banner advert (n)	لافتة إعلانية	targeted advertising (n)	إعلان مُوجَّه
consult (ed) (v)	يستشير	tone (n)	الشعور العام / التوجُّه
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	unreliable (adj)	غير موثوق به
download (ed) (v-n)	يُنزِّل (من الإنترنت) - التنزيل	up-to-date (adj)	مُحدَّث
follow (ed) (v)	يتابع - يتبع - ينفذ	update (d) (v-n)	يُحدِّث - تحديث
follower (n)	مُتابع	upgrade (d) (v)	يُحسِّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة
post (ed) (n - v)	منشور - ينشر على مواقع التواصل	upload (ed) (v-n)	يرفع (على الإنترنت) - الرفع
reliable (adj)	موثوق به	view (n)	عرض - رؤية (منشور/رسالة)
search results	نتائج البحث		

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

access (n)	مُدخل - إمكانية الوصول	obvious (adj)	واضح
advertisers (n)	المُعلِّنين	print (ed) (v)	يطبع
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	professional (adj)	محترف
browser (n)	متصفح	provide (d) (v)	يزود بـ - يوفِّر
button (n)	زر	publish (ed) (v)	ينشر
character (n)	رمز خاص - شخصية	relevant (adj)	ملائم - مناسب
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع	resource (n)	مُورد - مُنقَع
common (adj)	شائع	scan (ed) (v)	يتصفَّح (يقرا للبحث عن شيء ما)
effectively (adv)	بشكل فعَّال - بكفاءة	series (n)	سلسلة - مسلسل
excuse (d) (n-v)	عُذر - يَغذِّر	skim (med) (v)	يتصفَّح (يقرا بسرعة)
experience (d) (n-v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة	smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي
extra (adj-adv)	إضافي	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع



fake (adj)	مزيف - مكذوب	moral (n)	مغزى أخلاقي
honest (adj)	أمين	software (n)	برنامج
identity (n)	هوية - شخصية	speed (n)	سرعة
influence (d) (n-v)	تأثير - يؤثر علي	spread - spread (v)	ينشر
install (ed) (v)	يُنصَّب - يُركَّب	stamp (ed) (n - v)	طابع - يضع طابع - يوسم
instant (adj)	فوري	stealing (n)	السرقعة
Irish (adj - n)	أيرلندي	suppose (d) (v)	يفترض
journalist (n)	صحفي	task (n)	مهمة
junk food	وجبات سريعة	URL (Uniform Resource Locator)	رابط (الموقع او الصفحة)
keyword (n)	كلمة رئيسية (دلالية)	version (n)	نسخة - إصدار
knowledge (n)	المعرفة	warning (n)	تحذير
mega meal (n)	وجبة ضخمة		

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>consult (v)</b> يستشير	to ask for information or advice from someone because it is their job to know something
<b>cookies (n)</b> ملفات تعريف الارتباط	information that a website leaves in your computer so that the website will recognize you when you use it again
<b>download (v)</b> يُنزَّل (من الإنترنت)	- to move files <b>ملفات</b> from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer <i>(SB)</i> - to save something from the internet onto your computer <i>(WB)</i>
<b>follower (n)</b> مُتابع	someone who looks at the posts shared by a particular person using social networking sites
<b>reliable (adj)</b> موثوق به	- can be trusted or depended on
<b>take down (phr. v)</b> يُنزِل (منشور)	- to take something that you have posted online off the internet <i>(SB)</i> - to remove a message or photo you have put on social media <i>(WB)</i>
<b>tone (n)</b> الشعور العام / التوجه	- the general feeling or attitude expressed in a piece of writing, a speech etc.

<b>update (v)</b> يُحدّث	- to make something more modern and relevant ملائم by adding new information (SB) - to install يُنصّب the most recent version of a program (WB)
<b>upgrade (v)</b> يُحسّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة	- to improve or make more efficient كفاء - to make something better (WB)
<b>upload (v)</b> يرفع (على الإنترنت)	- to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet (SB) - to put information on social media (WB)
<b>up-to-date (adj)</b> مُحدّث	- including all the latest information

## Exercises On Vocabulary

### • Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Definitions

- To ..... is to improve or make more efficient or to make something better. (المنوفاة - شين الكوم ٢٠٢٤)  
a. upload                      b. upgrade                      c. download                      d. update
- If you ..... to a service, especially online, you agree to regularly receive it or receive information from it. (أسوان - كوم إمبو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. describe                      b. upgrade                      c. support                      d. subscribe
- To ..... is to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet or to put information on social media.  
a. upload                      b. upgrade                      c. consult                      d. update
- To ..... is to ask for information or advice from someone because it is their job to know something.  
a. download                      b. take down                      c. consult                      d. update
- To ..... is to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer or to save something from the internet onto your computer.  
a. download                      b. take down                      c. consult                      d. update
- A ..... is someone who looks at the posts shared by a particular person using social networking sites.  
a. behaviour                      b. follower                      c. cookies                      d. viewer
- Something or someone that is ..... can be trusted or depended on.  
a. outdated                      b. unreliable                      c. reliable                      d. up-to-date
- To ..... is to take something that you have posted online off the internet or to remove a message or photo you have put on social media.  
a. download                      b. take down                      c. consult                      d. update



## 2 Key vocabulary

9. They need more ..... information before they can take action.  
(السيوط - سادل سليم ٢٠٢٤)
- a. reliable      b. distant      c. disorganised      d. doubtful
10. It took me about ten minutes to ..... the video from the webpage.  
(القاهرة - مصر القديمة ٢٠٢٣)
- a. outdate      b. download      c. subscribe      d. upload
11. Have you seen that there are 6,000 ..... of my brother's account?  
(المنوفية - الباجور ٢٠٢٤)
- a. posters      b. subscribers      c. likes      d. followers
12. Our computers and smartphones keep ..... which tell websites where we've been online.  
(دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)
- a. cookies      b. adverts      c. prints      d. browsers
13. Why don't you ..... this video to YouTube so that many people can see it?  
(دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)
- a. download      b. upgrade      c. upload      d. update
14. Youth should learn how to ..... to difficult situations.  
(البحيرة - دوش عيسى ٢٠٢٣)
- a. addict      b. name      c. adapt      d. adopt
15. I can't benefit you, so you need to ..... a respected lawyer.  
(القاهرة - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤)
- a. order      b. consult      c. identify      d. support
16. Don't ..... personal photos on the internet, or they may be misused.  
a. post      b. paste      c. past      d. send
17. This program is ..... by a local businessman.  
(المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤)
- a. calculated      b. described      c. sponsored      d. transcribed
18. I ..... to this internet service.  
a. subscribed      b. supposed      c. downloaded      d. banned
19. I always know my dad's mood from his .....  
(كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٤)
- a. tan      b. tone      c. toon      d. tune
20. A successful journalist should always keep his information and news .....  
(كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٤)
- a. graded      b. upgraded      c. updated      d. outdated
21. We decided to ..... our internet speed for foster streaming.  
(المنيا - العدوة ٢٠٢٤)
- a. update      b. upgrade      c. boast      d. trust
22. The singer's new song received millions of ..... from his fans.  
(دمياط - السرو ٢٠٢٤)
- a. views      b. cookies      c. sights      d. scenes
23. I think that those too many ..... adverts along highways may distract drivers.  
a. cookie      b. online      c. banner      d. social media

24. I usually ..... a post if it seemed to annoy somebody or another.  
 a. upload                      b. download                      c. take up                      d. take down
25. It is known that ..... concentrates on what the public like.  
 a. banned adverts                      b. targeted advertising  
 c. sponsored adverts                      d. banner adverts
26. We trust websites that provide us with ..... news.  
 a. unreliable                      b. fake                      c. up-to-date                      d. old-fashioned

### 3 Important Vocabulary

27. Social media have attracted ..... because of their increasing popularity. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. clerks                      b. customers                      c. advertisers                      d. rivals
28. Young authors find it difficult to ..... their works. (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. come out                      b. publish                      c. spread                      d. appear
29. The technician will come to ..... the new air conditioner. (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. break                      b. smash                      c. attach                      d. install
30. If we want to read a text quickly to get the main points, then we ..... this text. (كفر الشيخ - قليين ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. skim                      b. scan                      c. skill                      d. screen
31. Nowadays, we can get any information at the touch of a/an .....  
 a. monitor                      b. ring                      c. button                      d. expert
32. This painting isn't original. It's .....  
 a. fact                      b. fake                      c. facial                      d. face
33. Unusual weather is becoming more ..... nowadays. Many people don't find it strange.  
 a. common                      b. rare                      c. scarce                      d. favorite
34. There are two ..... of the game, a long one and a short one.  
 a. virgins                      b. diversions                      c. versions                      d. visions
35. Working in the same field for twenty years has given him a lot of .....  
 a. experience                      b. installation                      c. share                      d. distraction
36. If you are sure about this piece of information, ..... your sources.  
 a. affect                      b. adapt                      c. name                      d. subscribe
37. Have you ever ..... bad behaviour on social media ?  
 a. experienced                      b. installed                      c. typed                      d. distracted
38. The hard time he had in prison is still ..... on his memory.  
 a. researched                      b. chatted                      c. stamped                      d. fired
39. You have no ..... for making such a mistake.  
 a. excuse                      b. create                      c. check                      d. game
40. The ..... of a story, a novel or a film is the lesson we learn from it.  
 a. chat                      b. character                      c. platform                      d. moral



## PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>check</b>	sources يتحقق من المصادر		access to لديه حق الوصول لـ
<b>collect</b>	personal details يجمع تفاصيل (بيانات) شخصية	<b>have</b>	experience in لديه خبرة في
<b>create</b>	a perfect essay يؤلف مقال نموذجي		knowledge of لديه معرفة بـ
<b>do</b>	a history essay يكتب مقال خاص بالتاريخ	<b>keep</b>	... safe يُبقي ... بأمان
	research يجري بحثاً	<b>make</b>	a presentation يقدم عرضاً
	things يقوم بأشياء	<b>name</b>	the sources يذكر المصادر
<b>give</b>	a homework task يُكفّ بمهمة كواجب منزلي	<b>put</b>	... on social media ينشر... على مواقع التواصل
	a presentation يقدم عرض تقديمي	<b>seem</b>	obvious يبدو واضحاً
	an example يعطي مثال	<b>stay</b>	safe يبقي بأمان
	information يعطي معلومات	<b>use</b>	... effectively يستخدم ... بشكل فعال
<b>go</b>	online يدخل على الإنترنت	<b>write</b>	a website ينشر محتوى على موقع

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
adapt يتكيف - يتأقلم	modify, adjust
fake مزيف - مكذوب	false, forged
honest أمين	trustful, sincere
instant فوري	urgent, immediate
obvious واضح	clear, apparent, evident
professional محترف	expert, experienced
reliable موثوق به - يُعتَمَد عليه	dependable, trustworthy, dedicated
upgrade يُحسّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة	improve, enhance
upgrade يُرقي	promote
up-to-date مُحدّث	modern, contemporary, fashionable

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite) العكس
adapt يتكيف - يتأقلم	reject يرفض
download يُنزل (من الإنترنت) - التنزيل	upload يرفع (على الإنترنت) - الرفع
fake مزيف - مكذوب	real, genuine, original أصلي / حقيقي - صحيح
follow يتابع	block, unfollow يحظر - يلغي متابعة

follow	يُنْفِذ - يطيع	break, disobey	يخالف - يعصي
helpful	مفيد	unhelpful	غير مفيد
honest	أمين	dishonest, deceitful	غير أمين - مخادع
instant	فوري	postponed, delayed	مؤجّل - متأخر
obvious	واضح	doubtful, ambiguous	مشكوك فيه - غامض
online	علي الإنترنت / متصل بالإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
professional	محترف	incompetent, amateur	هاوٍ - غير كفاء
reliable	موثوق به - يُعْتَمَد عليه	unreliable, untrustworthy	مشكوك فيه - لا يُثِقُ به
upgrade	يُحَسِّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة	degrade, reduce	يقلل من شأن
upgrade	يُرَقِّي	downgrade, demote	يُنزِلُ الدرجة - يخفض المنزلة
up-to-date	مُحَدَّث	out-of- date, old-fashioned	قديم - عفا عليه الزمن

#### 4 مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية Derivatives of key vocabulary

adapt	
<b>adapt (ed) (v)</b>	يتأقلم - يتكيف
- To succeed in your life, you need to <b>adapt</b> to different situations.	
<b>adaptation (n)</b>	التأقلم
- Success in your life requires <b>adaptation</b> to different situations.	
<b>adaptable (adj)</b>	قادر - متأقلم
- To succeed in your life, you need to be <b>adaptable</b> to different situations.	
advertise	
<b>advertise (d) (v)</b>	يُعلن عن
- Producers <b>advertise</b> their products in different ways.	
<b>advert = ad = advertisement (n)</b>	إعلان
- Producers depend on <b>adverts</b> to promote their products.	
<b>advertisers (n)</b>	المُعلنين
- <b>Advertisers</b> pay a lot of money to promote their products.	
<b>advertised (adj)</b>	مُعلن عنه
- I saw this product <b>advertised</b> on TV.	
consult	
<b>consult (ed) (v)</b>	يستشير
- You need to <b>consult</b> your doctor about your health.	
<b>consultation (n)</b>	استشارة
- You need <b>consultation</b> with your doctor about your health.	
<b>consultant (n)</b>	استشاري - أخصائي
- You need to talk to your <b>consultant</b> about your health.	



download	
<b>download (ed) (v)</b> تَنْزِلُ (من الإنترنت)	- I started to <b>download</b> the file.
<b>download (n)</b> الملف المُنزَّل	- The <b>download</b> will start in five seconds.
<b>downloader (n)</b> برنامج تنزيل ملفات	- I have installed a video <b>downloader</b> on my laptop.
<b>downloadable (adj)</b> قابل للتحميل	- This video is <b>downloadable</b> .
follower	
<b>follow (ed) (v)</b> يتبع - يتابع	- Thousands of people <b>follow</b> my Facebook page.
<b>follower (n)</b> تابع / مؤيد - متابع	- I have thousands of <b>followers</b> on my Facebook page.
<b>following (adj)</b> تالي / تابع	- When I finish this job, I will do the <b>following</b> one.
reliable	
<b>rely (ied) (v)</b> يعتمد	- Don't <b>rely</b> on others to achieve your own work.
<b>reliance (n)</b> التواكل - الاعتماد على الغير	- <b>Reliance</b> on others to achieve your own work is a bad quality.
<b>reliability (n)</b> الجدارة - الفوثوقية	- Your previous success supports your <b>reliability</b> .
<b>reliable (adj)</b> موثوق به	- Your previous success makes you <b>reliable</b> .
subscribe	
<b>subscribe (d) (v)</b> يُسجِّل (في موقع) - يشترك	- To <b>subscribe</b> , you have to pay LE 20,000.
<b>subscriber (n)</b> مُشترك - عضو	- To be a <b>subscriber</b> , you have to pay LE 20,000.
<b>subscription (n)</b> اشتراك	- <b>Subscription</b> costs LE 20,000.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

access to	إمكانية الوصول إلى	free ... for	مجاني لـ ...
all over the world	في كل أرجاء العالم	full of	مملوء بـ
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	look like	يشبه - يبدو كـ
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	make it personal	تصفي عليها طابع شخصي
careful about	حريص على	on social media	على وسائل التواصل
eager to	متلهّف لـ	special character	رمز خاص (ليس حرف أو رقم)
fact-checking	توثيق الحقائق	this/that is why	لهذا السبب

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

adapt ... to	يُوفَّق ... مع	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ
adapt to	يتكيف مع	take ... off	يزيل - يُلزِع
check ... against /with	يتحقق من ... من خلال	take down	يزيل منشور
find out	يكتشف / يعرف	upgrade ... with	يحدِّث ... بـ
read on	يستمر في القراءة		

## 7 Clear the confusion لَاحِظ الفِرق

### advertisement - commercial - announcement

- **advertisement / advert / ad** (إعلان تجاري)  
- Some adverts (= ads / advertisements) lie about the quality of the products.
- **commercial** (إعلان تجاري (في التلفزيون / الراديو))  
- I change the channel when commercials are shown.
- **announcement** (إعلان خبري (نشر تنبيهات - تعليمات - تحذيرات - قرارات))  
- The announcement of the final decision has been delayed until tomorrow.

### download - upload

- **download (n)** ملف مُنزل من الانترنت  $\neq$  **upload (n)** ملف مرفوع على الإنترنت  
- There are five downloads in this folder.
  - **download (n)** تنزيل الملفات  $\neq$  **upload (n)** رفع الملفات  
- The speed of download is always more than the speed of upload.
  - **downloading (n)** التنزيل من الانترنت  $\neq$  **uploading (n)** الرفع على الانترنت  
- Downloading videos is easier and faster than uploading them.
  - **download (v)** يُنزل ملف  $\neq$  **upload (v)** يرفع ملف  
- Abdulrahman has downloaded all Al Pacino's films.  
- Mr Mohammed used to upload educational files for free.
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- download ... from من ... يُنزل - download ... to / onto إلي ... يُنزل
  - upload ... to علي ... يرفع
- **downloadable (adj)** قابل للتنزيل  
- The files on this website are downloadable.

### software - hardware

- **software** (برنامج حاسوبي (يؤدي غرض معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي))  
- It is better if you download the latest software.
- **hardware** (مكونات / أجزاء / أدوات (الحاسب أو غيره))  
- The processor is part of the computer's hardware



## update - upgrade

- **update** (يُحدِّث (يجعل الشيء حديثاً))  
- The Windows version on your computer needs to be **updated**.
- **upgrade** (يُحسِّن (يضيف مزايا أو قدرات أفضل) / يُرقى التطبيق)  
- To **upgrade** this application, you have to pay 300 dollars.

## Exercise On Vocabulary study

## • ❖ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many companies pay a lot of money to ..... on television. (دمياط - السرو ٢٤ - ٢٠٢٤)  
a. publish      b. advertise      c. spread      d. show
2. You are obliged to follow the law." In this sentence, "follow" is the antonym of ..... (القاهرة - العاشر من رمضان ٢٤ - ٢٠٢٤)  
a. obey      b. disobey      c. unobey      d. inobey
3. Scientific honesty العلمية الأمانة is what makes me ..... my sources.  
a. have      b. create      c. do      d. check
4. My teacher asked me to do .....  
a. experience      b. a history essay      c. sources      d. a presentation
5. You can ..... a good presentation.  
a. make      b. go      c. do      d. seem
6. When you are online, it is important to ..... safe.  
a. stay      b. do      c. make      d. have
7. "This application is up-to-date." The adjective 'up-to-date' can be replaced by .....  
a. out-of-date      b. updated      c. outdated      d. powerful
8. "Mr Ashraf is a reliable teacher." In this sentence, 'reliable' means the opposite of .....  
a. dependable      b. untrustworthy      c. trustworthy      d. real
9. "He follows the law." The verb 'follows' in this sentence is the antonym of .....  
a. obeys      b. breaks      c. blocks      d. carries on
10. I don't see his posts because he has ..... me  
a. obeyed      b. broken      c. followed      d. unfollowed
11. Yes, I ..... online after I had done all my jobs.  
a. checked      b. went      c. seemed      d. paid
12. After subscription, you will ..... access to everything on our website.  
a. have      b. create      c. do      d. name
13. Successful businesses are highly ..... to economic change.  
a. adapt      b. adopt      c. adaptable      d. adopting

14. He upgraded his Facebook app ..... the latest software update.  
 a. with                      b. at                      c. off                      d. about
15. You have to adapt your spending ..... your income.  
 a. to                      b. of                      c. from                      d. by
16. You can ..... on him. Be sure he will do the job efficiently.  
 a. rely                      b. reliable                      c. unreliable                      d. reliability
17. I have never doubted your ..... . I trust you.  
 a. rely                      b. reliance                      c. unreliable                      d. reliability
18. His ..... on others makes him a failure.  
 a. rely                      b. reliance                      c. unreliable                      d. reliability
19. I need to get advice from a ..... about my headache.  
 a. subscribe                      b. subscribers                      c. consultant                      d. consult
20. I have no time to download these ..... right now.  
 a. followers                      b. follow                      c. update                      d. updates

## PART III READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### Doing research online

إجراء الأبحاث على الإنترنت

(SB page 52)

Your teacher has given you a homework **task**<sup>(1)</sup>. Where do you start your **research**<sup>(2)</sup> ?

The internet is very **useful**<sup>(3)</sup> with lots of information, but how do you **avoid**<sup>(4)</sup> **spending**<sup>(5)</sup> hours reading **unhelpful**<sup>(6)</sup> **websites**<sup>(7)</sup> ? **Read on**<sup>(8)</sup> to **find out**<sup>(9)</sup> how to use the internet **effectively**<sup>(10)</sup>.



- (1) مهمة
- (2) بحث
- (3) مفيد
- (4) يتجنب
- (5) قضاء
- (6) غير مفيد
- (7) مواقع
- (8) استمر في القراءة
- (9) يكتشف
- (10) بشكل فعال
- (11) خبرة
- (12) المعرفة
- (13) بيع
- (14) يتحقق من
- (15) مُحدَّث
- (16) مألوف به
- (17) يُحدَّث

1. Look for websites by people, companies or universities, who have **experience**<sup>(11)</sup> in or **knowledge**<sup>(12)</sup> of the topic you are researching. If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience.
2. Think about who has written the website. Is it a company that may be trying to **sell**<sup>(13)</sup> you something?
3. **Check**<sup>(14)</sup> if the website is **up-to-date**<sup>(15)</sup>. Is the information still **reliable**<sup>(16)</sup> and useful? When was it **updated**<sup>(17)</sup> ?



4. Always **consult**<sup>(18)</sup> more than one website. The advantage of looking at few different **sites**<sup>(19)</sup> is that you can check the information and you may find **extra**<sup>(20)</sup> facts.
5. What does the website **look like**<sup>(21)</sup>? If it is **badly**<sup>(22)</sup> **designed**<sup>(23)</sup> and is **full of**<sup>(24)</sup> grammar and **spelling**<sup>(25)</sup> **mistakes**<sup>(26)</sup>, then it is probably not very reliable.
6. Websites that have **named**<sup>(27)</sup> their **sources**<sup>(28)</sup> are usually more reliable and useful than sites that do not name their sources.
7. **Save**<sup>(29)</sup> the **URL (Uniform Resource Locator)**<sup>(30)</sup> of any useful **pages**<sup>(31)</sup> or **images**<sup>(32)</sup> so you can find them easily.

- يستشير (18)
- مواقع (19)
- إضافي (20)
- يبدو (21)
- يشكل سيء (22)
- مضم (23)
- مملوء بـ (24)
- تهدى (25)
- أخطاء (26)
- يذكر اسم (27)
- مصادر (28)
- يحفظ (29)
- الرابط (30)
- صفحات (31)
- صور (32)

## Hi!

(SB page 53)

Can you help me? I'm trying to do a history essay, but I've spent about 20 hours reading different websites and **blogs**<sup>(1)</sup>, and now I've got pages and pages of **notes**<sup>(2)</sup>. But I'm really **confused**<sup>(3)</sup>. I don't know which sites are good and which aren't - and they all say different things! And now I've forgotten how I found a really good site that I looked at earlier.

Help!!!!!!

Thanks,

Nagwa

- مُدونات (1)
- ملاحظات (2)
- متحير (3)

## Essay Dun

(WB page 30)

Download this app and you will never have to write an essay again! Just type in the title, the question you need to answer, and the word limit and the app will consult the system to create a perfect essay. It is 100 % reliable and works every time.

## Excuse-a-Maker

This useful app has been updated to include 2,000 new excuses which can be adapted to any situation. Just upload a photo of yourself and say why you need the excuse and where you are. You will receive a new up-to-date photo with the time and date stamped on it with your excuse!

## Are you internet smart ?

(WB page 30)

هل أنت ذكي في التعامل مع الإنترنت ؟

Do you really know how to **protect**<sup>(1)</sup> yourself **online**<sup>(2)</sup> ? There are **several**<sup>(3)</sup> things you can do to stay safe.

- Choose a strong **password**<sup>(4)</sup>. Did you know the most **common**<sup>(5)</sup> password in the world is '123456'? The best passwords should have numbers, letters and even a **special character**<sup>(6)</sup> e.g. Tl342mS!\* . It will be easier to remember if you make it personal in some way.
- When you go online, make sure you have **upgraded**<sup>(7)</sup> your **browser**<sup>(8)</sup> with the latest **software**<sup>(9)</sup> **update**<sup>(10)</sup> before you open a **webpage**<sup>(11)</sup>.
- Be careful what you **upload**<sup>(12)</sup>. Check what others can learn about you from what they can see **behind**<sup>(13)</sup> you, and take down any photos you do not want others to download.

All of these **tips**<sup>(14)</sup> seem **obvious**<sup>(15)</sup>, but you'll be surprised how many people are **careless**<sup>(16)</sup> online.

**Stealing**<sup>(17)</sup> someone's **identity**<sup>(18)</sup> is more common than you think. Do not make the mistake of thinking that it can't happen to you.

- (1) يحمي
- (2) على الإنترنت
- (3) عديد
- (4) كلمة مرور
- (5) شائع
- (6) رمز خاص
- (7) يُحسّن - يُزفّي
- (8) متصفح
- (9) برنامج
- (10) تحديث / ترقية البرنامج
- (11) صفحة على الإنترنت
- (12) يرفع
- (13) خلف / وراء
- (14) نصائح
- (15) واضح
- (16) قهول
- (17) سرقة
- (18) هوية - شخصية

## Targeted advertising

(SB page 54)

Our computers and **smartphones**<sup>(1)</sup> keep small pieces of information called **cookies**<sup>(2)</sup>, which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. Cookies are **meant to**<sup>(3)</sup> make it easier for us to find things that **interest**<sup>(4)</sup> us, but they also help **advertisers**<sup>(5)</sup> to sell things to us. So, when we see an **advert**<sup>(6)</sup> for something that **seems**<sup>(7)</sup> to be exactly what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called **targeted advertising**<sup>(8)</sup>.



- (1) هواتف ذكية
- (2) ملفات تعريف الارتباط
- (3) تهدف إلى
- (4) يثير اهتمام
- (5) المعلنين
- (6) إعلان
- (7) يبدو
- (8) الإعلان الموجه
- (9) يُعلن عن

Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can **advertise**<sup>(9)</sup> to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise places to eat when you're hungry. They can also send adverts to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.



Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large **banner**<sup>(10)</sup> adverts that always seem to **appear**<sup>(11)</sup> on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the **strangest**<sup>(12)</sup> places, like the small **sponsored**<sup>(13)</sup> adverts that you find in **search results**<sup>(14)</sup>.

Adverts are supposed to be honest, but we must be careful. When you see an advert online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

- (10) لافتة  
(11) يظهر  
(12) الأغرب  
(13) مُمول  
(14) نتائج البحث

## Don't believe everything you read !

(WB page 31)

The **title**<sup>(1)</sup> of this article is a piece of advice which we may have heard from our parents or **grandparents**<sup>(2)</sup>. Although it was **true**<sup>(3)</sup> in the past, the **speed**<sup>(4)</sup> at which we **have access to**<sup>(5)</sup> new information means that this **warning**<sup>(6)</sup> is even more important now.

In the past, **professional**<sup>(7)</sup> **journalists**<sup>(8)</sup> always checked the facts that they wanted to publish against at least two **reliable sources**<sup>(9)</sup> to make sure the story was correct. **Checking sources**<sup>(10)</sup>, and the time needed to **print**<sup>(11)</sup> something in a newspaper, meant that the news, which was meant to be new, was actually a day or two old.



Today the internet **provides**<sup>(12)</sup> **instant**<sup>(13)</sup> news and is a place where anyone can **share**<sup>(14)</sup> information with the rest of the world **at the touch of a button**<sup>(15)</sup>. This means that journalists often need to **publish**<sup>(16)</sup> their stories quickly, so **fact-checking**<sup>(17)</sup> isn't as good as it is meant to be. **This is why**<sup>(18)</sup> not everything you read is what it seems to be.

Even **serious**<sup>(19)</sup> newspapers, which are supposed to be reliable, can **make mistakes**<sup>(20)</sup>. Shane Fitzgerald, an **Irish**<sup>(21)</sup> **sociology**<sup>(22)</sup> student, wanted to **test**<sup>(23)</sup> the **influence**<sup>(24)</sup> of the internet. He posted a **fake**<sup>(25)</sup> phrase online. It was supposed to be something that a French **musician**<sup>(26)</sup> who had recently died had said. Almost immediately several newspapers published the phrase and it was read **all over the world**<sup>(27)</sup>.

- (1) عنوان  
(2) أجداد  
(3) صحيح  
(4) سرعة  
(5) لديهم قدرة للوصول ل  
(6) تحذير  
(7) محترف  
(8) صحفيون  
(9) مصادر موثقة  
(10) التحقق من المصادر  
(11) يطبع  
(12) يوفر  
(13) فوري  
(14) يشارك  
(15) بلمسة زر  
(16) ينشر  
(17) توثيق الحقائق  
(18) لهذا السبب  
(19) جاد  
(20) يرتكب أخطاء  
(21) أيرلندي  
(22) علم الاجتماع  
(23) يختبر  
(24) تأثير  
(25) مزيفة  
(26) موسيقار  
(27) في كل أرجاء العالم

The **moral**<sup>(28)</sup> of the story is to listen to those with more life experience than you and remember not to **trust**<sup>(29)</sup> everything you read online without checking it first.

(28) مغزى أخلاقي  
(29) يثق بـ

## PART IV LANGUAGE

### 1 Seem

- ملاحظات هامة عن الفعل (seem) :

١ تذكر أن الفعل (seem) لا يُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة :

- ex. - Mr Mohammed **was seeming** pleased with his students. (X)  
- Mr Mohammed **seemed** pleased with his students. (✓)

٢ تذكر أن الفعل (seem) فعل لازم لا يُبني للمجهول :

- ex. - This student **is seemed** to be punished. (X)  
- This student **seems** to be punished. (✓)

- ... **seem/seems/ seemed + adjective** صفة

الفعل (seem) هو أحد الأفعال التقريرية التي يتبعها صفة وليس ظرف :

- ex. - She **seems happily**. (X)                      - She **seems happy**. (✓)

- ... **seem/seems/ seemed + to + inf.**

تُستخدم (seem to) بمعنى (يبدو أن) لوصف الحالة التي يبدو عليها الأشخاص أو الأشياء :

- ex. - Sama **seems to have** too much work to do. (إثبات)  
- Sama **doesn't seem to have** any free time. (نفي)  
- Sama **seems not to have** any free time. (نفي)

- ... **seem/seems/ seemed + to + be + (inf.+ing)**

تُستخدم هذه الصيغة لوصف حالة مستمرة :

- ex. - Ahmed **seems to be having** some problems.

- ... **seem/seems/ seemed + to + have + p.p.**

تُستخدم هذه الصيغة لوصف حالة كانت مستمرة في الماضي :

- ex. - Rodayna **doesn't have** any money. She **seems to have spent** all the money.



– ... seem/seems/ seemed + جملة

→ It seems / seemed + (that / like) + جملة يبدو أن ...  
 لاحظ أنه يمكن حذف (that / like) :

ex. - It seemed (that) she didn't like the food.

ex. - It seems (like) he's going to sell his old car.

→ It seems / seemed + (as if) + جملة يبدو كما لو أن ...

ex. - It seems (as if) he needs help.

– There seems / seemed to be... ... يبدو أن هناك

ex. - There seems to be a problem with the air conditioner.

ex. - There seemed to be some blood on the floor in the crime scene.

Mini Test 1

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Rody ..... upset. I wonder what is wrong with her.  
 a. seem                      b. seems                      c. is seeming                      d. is seemed
- It seems ..... the village shop will have to close down. They can't find a buyer for it.  
 a. that                      b. if                      c. no word                      d. a & c
- It seems ..... that she needs help.  
 a. as if                      b. no word                      c. to me                      d. b & c
- He seems ..... busy.  
 a. being                      b. to being                      c. be                      d. to be
- Don't talk loudly. The baby seems ..... in the next room.  
 a. sleeping                      b. asleep                      c. to be sleeping                      d. b & c
- A : Why don't you talk to him now?  
 B : Wait. He seems ..... an important meeting.  
 a. having                      b. is having                      c. to be having                      d. to have had
- There seemed ..... no reason why she should not come with us, so we all travelled together.  
 a. that                      b. to be                      c. as if                      d. as though

- mean + (inf. + ing) يعني / يؤدي إلي/ يستلزم

- ex. - Starting a new business **means employing** a staff.  
- Taking the six o'clock train **means getting** up at five.

- mean that + يقصد جملة

- يُمكن أن تأتي جملة بعد (mean + that) ويمكن حذف (that) :

- ex. - Do you **mean that I am lazy**? = Do you **mean I am lazy**?

- mean to + inf. ينوي/يقصد/يتعمد

- ex. - He didn't **mean to hurt** you. It was just a mistake  
= He didn't **intend to hurt** you. It was just a mistake.

- ... be meant to + inf. من المفترض أن

١ تُستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن الضرورة (necessity) أو الإلزام (obligation) :

- ex. - You **are meant to start** work at seven.

٢ تُستخدم للتعبير عن المسؤولية (responsibility) أو الواجب (duty) :

- ex. - You **were meant to keep** the children out of trouble.

٣ تُستخدم بمعنى (suitable) :

- ex. - I don't think she's **meant to be** a teacher.  
= I don't think she's **suitable for** the job of a teacher.

٤ كما تُستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض من شيء ما (purpose) :

- ex. - This map **was meant to show** the places in this large city.  
- School **is meant to be** educational.

- be meant to + be + p.p.

- ex. - My flat **is meant to be decorated** next week.

- be meant to + be + (inf. + ing)

- تُستخدم هذه الصيغة المستمرة لتدل على حدث مستمر :

- ex. - You **are meant to be studying** your lessons. (حدث مستمر في المضارع)  
- You **were meant to be studying** your lessons. (حدث مستمر في الماضي)

- be meant to + have + p.p.

- تُستخدم هذه الصيغة التامة لتدل على شيء من المفترض أنه تم بالفعل في الماضي :

- ex. - Before the guests **arrived**, you **were meant to have prepared** everything.



Mini Test 2

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- His happy expression means ..... he has passed the exam.  
a. that                      b. no word                      c. a & b                      d. to
- Did you mean ..... this number?  
a. to dial                      b. dial                      c. that dial                      d. b & c
- Why are you here, Ali? You are ..... to be in the garden watering the plants.  
a. had                      b. meant                      c. seemed                      d. b & c
- This lorry ..... to carry the new furniture.  
a. means                      b. is meant                      c. is meaning                      d. mean
- Students are meant ..... hard.  
a. to work                      b. to working                      c. work                      d. to be worked
- The car engine is meant ..... before the drive to Alexandria.  
a. to check                      b. to be checked  
c. for checking                      d. to have checked
- Youssef is meant ..... in his room. I don't know why he is here.  
a. for studying                      b. to be studied  
c. to have studied                      d. to be studying

3 (be) supposed to

من المفترض أن / يُفترض أن

Important Basics ثوابت هامة

١ هذه الصيغة مبنية للمجهول وتبدأ بالمفعول :

ex. - The boys are supposed to go to bed at nine.

- في المثال السابق تلاحظ أن (The boys) مفعول للفعل (suppose) وليست الفاعل

٢ لا يمكن حذف حرف (d) من (supposed) في الصيغة (be supposed to) :

ex. - You are supposed to leave now. (Not: suppose)

٣ لابد من وجود مفعول وفعل (be) حسب الزمن قبل (supposed to)، ولابد أن يأتي بعدها

مصدر الفعل :

v. to be

Obj. المفعول + Present or : Past + supposed to + inf. ... المصدر

I	am	was			take part in the match. have enough food. be at work at 8:30.
He / She / It	is	was	supposed to		
You / We / They	are	were			

## الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع Simple present form

تتكون الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع من :

المصدر ... inf. + supposed to + am is are + المفعول Obj.

- I	am	supposed to	be there at 10. arrive soon. study hard for the exam.
- Aya	is	supposed to	
- The students	are	supposed to	

تُستخدم الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع في الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن اعتقاد شائع (common belief) بخصوص شخص / شيء معين :

ex. - This school **is supposed to have** the best staff.  
= Many people think that this school has the best staff.

٢ التعبير عن التوقع (expectation) أو الترتيب (arrangement) في المضارع أو المستقبل :

ex. **Manager:** How many clients **am I supposed to meet** tomorrow?  
**Secretary:** You **are supposed to meet** four clients, Sir.

٣ التعبير عن المسؤولية (responsibility) أو الإلزام (obligation) أو الواجب (duty) في المضارع أو المستقبل :

ex. - You **are supposed to be** quiet in a library.  
- Leen **is supposed to look** after her baby sister when her mother goes out tomorrow.

٤ التعبير عن النية (intention) أو الغرض (purpose) من شيء / شخص ما:

ex. - A TV channel logo **is supposed to help** viewers recognise it.  
- A mobile **is supposed to be** used for making and receiving calls.  
= A mobile **is meant to be** used for making and receiving calls.  
= A mobile **is intended to be** used for making and receiving calls.

## الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي Simple past form

تتكون الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي من :

المصدر ... inf. + supposed to + was/were + المفعول Obj.

- Ahmed	was	supposed to	arrive home at nine. visit the pyramids.
- The tourists	were	supposed to	



وتُستخدم الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي في الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن نية أو غرض لم يتحقق:

- You **were supposed to come** first, but we were shocked by your low marks.

٢ التعبير عن ترتيب أو توقع لم يتحقق في الماضي، وغالباً يصاحبها توضيح لذلك:

- I regret missing my plane. I **was supposed to fly** to London yesterday.

### Continuous form

### الصيغة المستمرة

تتكون الصيغة المستمرة في المضارع والماضي من :

Obj.      المفعول      + be + supposed to + be + (inf. + ing) ...

- Rodayna      is      supposed to      be sleeping now.  
- My brother      was      supposed to      be playing in the garden.

وتُستخدم الصيغة المستمرة في التعبير عن حدث من المفترض أن يكون مستمراً حسب الزمن :

ex. - I don't know why Rokaya isn't in her office. She **is supposed to be typing** some business letters.

ex. - Yara **is supposed to be flying** to London at five o'clock tomorrow.

ex. - Omar **was supposed to be watering** the plants in the garden yesterday morning.

### Perfect form

### الصيغة التامة

تتكون الصيغة التامة من :

Obj.      المفعول      + be + supposed to + have + p.p. ...

- Sama      was      supposed to      have written the essay.  
- The gardeners      were      supposed to      have watered the plants.

وتستخدم هذه الصيغة فقط في الماضي عندما يكون الافتراض نفسه في الماضي ويخص

أحداث سابقة عليه (يشبه استخدام الماضي التام):

ex. - When I saw Ahmed in the club, he **was supposed to have taken** his training.

### Mini Test 3

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Your new job is ..... to be more interesting and rewarding.  
a. suppose      b. supposing      c. supposed      d. supposedly
- Omar's plane ..... supposed to land at nine o'clock tomorrow.  
a. is      b. was      c. had      d. has
- Omar's plane ..... supposed to land at nine o'clock yesterday.  
a. is      b. was      c. had      d. has
- Sama is supposed ..... a taxi home after she finishes work today.  
a. to take      b. to be taken      c. to be taking      d. to have taken
- Sama has finished her work and now she is supposed ..... a taxi home.  
a. to taking      b. to be taken      c. to be taking      d. to have taken
- "You were supposed to be in your office at eight, Rokaya." This means Rokaya ..... in time.  
a. was      b. wasn't      c. isn't      d. is

### Exercises On Language

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### 1 Exercises from Previous Exams

- The report is supposed ..... by the end of the day. (أسوان - إدفو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. to send      b. to have sent      c. to be sent      d. being sent
- I didn't ..... to do it; it was by accident. (الأقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. seem      b. mean      c. suppose      d. seemed
- They are happy; they ..... be having a nice time. (الدقهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. seem to      b. are meaning to  
c. supposed to      d. won't
- It ..... to snow last week. (الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. didn't suppose      b. wasn't supposed  
c. wasn't seemed      d. meant
- This room ..... be the children's bedroom. (الجيزة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)  
a. is meant      b. seem to      c. is meant to      d. is seemed to



6. Why are you here, Tamer? You are supposed ..... at school. (القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. being                      b. to being                      c. be                      d. to be
7. The coach is pleased with my performance as it ..... to be improving. (الفيوم - إيطسا ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. means                      b. is supposed                      c. is meant                      d. seems
8. How is targeted advertising ..... to help us? (الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. supposed                      b. seem                      c. seemed                      d. means
9. I can't see this photo clearly. What is it ..... to be? (الدقهلية - شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. meaning                      b. seemed                      c. suppose                      d. meant
10. We ..... to help our parents, our society and community. (القليوبية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. aren't supposed                      b. are supposed                      c. are seeming                      d. should
11. What ..... to do in the company? I need to know all about my duties. (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. do I suppose                      b. am I supposed  
 c. am I seemed                      d. do I mean
12. You are ..... to start work at seven o'clock. (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. meant                      b. meaning                      c. supposing                      d. seemed
13. Much care ..... given to homeless children in poor countries. (المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. is seemed to be                      b. should have  
 c. is supposed to be                      d. must have
14. The train is meant ..... at 9 o'clock. (المنوفية - أشمون ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. leave                      b. leaves                      c. leaving                      d. to leave
15. Rana hasn't lost the game, but she seems ..... joking. (القليوبية - غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. to be                      b. to being                      c. being                      d. be
16. You are meant ..... in bed. I don't know why you are still awake. (القليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. for sleeping                      b. to be sleeping                      c. being sleep                      d. to be slept
17. You can't watch this TV programme. You are ..... study for your final exams. (البحيرة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. supposed                      b. supposing to                      c. supposed to                      d. seemed to

18. Please don't be angry with me, mom. I didn't ..... to break the vase. (الغريبة - قطور ٢٠٢٤)
- a. seem                      b. mean                      c. apply                      d. suppose
19. Schools ..... to provide excellent education for all students. (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٤)
- a. are meant                      b. mean                      c. supposed                      d. are seemed
20. What ..... to do in a situation like this? (الشرقية - بلبس ٢٠٢٤)
- a. do we supposed                      b. we are supposed  
c. are we supposed                      d. we should have
21. Being a teacher means ..... a lot of homework. (الفيوم - إطنسا ٢٠٢٤)
- a. to correct                      b. to be correcting  
c. correcting                      d. correct
22. My car doesn't start normally. There ..... to be some problems with its engine. (أسوان - كوم إمبو ٢٠٢٤)
- a. seem                      b. seems                      c. mean                      d. means
23. A company's logo ..... to help people identify its products easily. (المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤)
- a. meant                      b. mean                      c. meaning                      d. is meant

**2 Check your understanding :**

24. He was supposed to win the game. This means we ..... (الجزيرة - الصف ٢٠٢٤)
- a. expect him to win                      b. expected him to win  
c. expect him not to win                      d. didn't expect him to win
25. You were supposed to be at school at eight, Ali. This means Ali ..... in time. (المنيا - مغاغة ٢٠٢٤)
- a. was                      b. wasn't                      c. isn't                      d. is





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

addict (ed) (n / v)	مُدمن - يُدمن	sensible (adj)	حكيم - عقلاني
addicted (adj)	مُدمن (صفة)	symbol (n)	رمز
behaviour (n)	سلوك - تُصْرَف	year of birth	سنة الميلاد
profile (n)	الملف الشخصي		

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

anyway (adv)	علي أي حال	likes (n)	إعجابات (لايكات)
brainstorm (ed) (v)	يستثير التفكير	platform (n)	مَنصَّة - رصيف
connect (ed) (v)	يدخل على - يتصل - يربط	plus (conj)	بالإضافة إلى (ذلك)
criticise (d) (v)	ينتقد	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
cute (adj)	جميل	privacy (n)	الخصوصية
develop (ed) (v)	يُطوِّر - يتطور	programmers (n)	مُبرمجين
distract (ed) (v)	يُشتَّت - يصرف انتباه	programming (n)	البرمجة
employee (n)	مُوظَّف	rank (ed) (n - v)	رُتبة - يضع في منزلة
entertain (ed) (v)	يُسرِّي - يُزْفُه عن	register (ed) (v)	يُسجِّل
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح - يُفسر	represent (ed) (v)	يُمثِّل
feelings (n)	مشاعر	share (d) (v)	يشارك - ينشر
fire (d) (v)	يفصل من العمل	similar (adj)	مُشابه - متشابه
forever (adv)	للأبد	solve (d) (v)	يحل
forum (n)	مُنْتدى	superficiality (n)	سطحيَّة - عدم تركيز
game (d) (v - n)	يلعب - مباراة / لعبة	useful (adj)	مفيد
highlight (ed) (v)	يُبرز - يُسلِّط الضوء على	victim (n)	ضحية
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	viewpoint (n)	وجهة نظر

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>addict</b> (n) مُدمن	someone who is very interested in something and spends a lot of time doing it
<b>behaviour</b> (n) سلوك - تُصْرَف	the things that a person or animal does
<b>profile</b> (n) الملف الشخصي	a short description وُصف that gives important details تفاصيل about a person, a group of people, or a place

sensible(adj) حكيم - عقلائي	reasonable and shows good judgment حُكم
symbol (n) رمز	a picture or shape that has a particular meaning or represents a particular organization or idea
view (n) عرض - رؤية	an occasion when a post, an image or a video is watched online

## Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Definitions

- ..... is the things that a person or animal does.  
a. View                      b. Behaviour                      c. Tone                      d. Cookies
- A/An ..... is someone who is very interested in something and spends a lot of time doing it.  
a. innovator                      b. programmer                      c. addict                      d. downloader
- A ..... is a short description that gives important details about a person, a group of people, or a place.  
a. like                      b. cookie                      c. file                      d. profile
- ..... means reasonable and shows good judgment.  
a. Sensible                      b. Behavioural                      c. Reliable                      d. Up-to-date

### 2 Key vocabulary

- Emojis are ..... which represent feelings. (المنوفاية - السادات ٢٠٢٤)  
a. behaviour                      b. smart phones                      c. cookies                      d. symbols
- My uncle is always a/an ..... man. he always can make the right decisions. (المنيا - سموط ٢٠٢٤)  
a. sensitive                      b. sensible                      c. sincerely                      d. insane
- She changed her ..... photo black mourning the Palestinian victims. (الشرقية - بليس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. album                      b. camera                      c. shape                      d. profile
- It is not the right thing to let children ..... to social media.  
a. behave                      b. direct                      c. addict                      d. symbolise

### 3 Important Vocabulary

- It's bad to ..... others in public. (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. support                      b. motivate                      c. praise                      d. criticize
- Egyptian squash players are ..... number one in the last competition. (القاهرة - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤)  
a. faced                      b. distributed                      c. boosted                      d. ranked



11. Now, the Ministry of Education introduces a variety of famous educational ..... for students to learn from. (سوماج - جرجا ۲۰۲۴)
- a. sights      b. canals      c. views      d. platforms
12. When we were young, our grandfather's stories ..... us a lot.
- a. entertained      b. delayed      c. inspected      d. trained
13. Don't let what people say ..... you. Concentrate on your goal.
- a. district      b. distract      c. deposit      d. despise
14. This ..... discusses environmental issues.
- a. forum      b. privacy      c. pros      d. cons
15. We had a meeting to ..... new ideas.
- a. brainstorm      b. install      c. rank      d. represent
16. I think ..... is a promising career.
- a. viewpoint      b. presentation      c. programming      d. superficiality
17. It is a waste of time ..... online.
- a. excusing      b. creating      c. checking      d. gaming
18. I prepared well for my ..... at the meeting, so my audience liked it.
- a. feelings      b. presentation      c. programming      d. superficiality
19. I ..... some of the videos from the school trip on the school site.
- a. experienced      b. installed      c. shared      d. distracted
20. Some people are interested in the number of ..... they have on their posts.
- a. knowledge      b. likes      c. victims      d. warnings
21. You should respect the ..... of others.
- a. forum      b. privacy      c. pros      d. cons
22. He is one of the ordinary people, so they think he ..... them.
- a. solves      b. registers      c. brainstorms      d. represents
23. I respect your ..... about my suggestion even if I do not think it is right.
- a. viewpoint      b. presentation      c. programming      d. superficiality
24. Work hard or you will be .....
- a. researched      b. chatted      c. stamped      d. fired
25. He was the ..... of a car accident in which he lost his leg.
- a. stamp      b. identity      c. victim      d. effect
26. You can make money online. ...., you can have fun.
- a. Plus      b. Because      c. Instead of      d. So
27. The ..... of his writing is the main reason for his failure.
- a. viewpoint      b. presentation      c. programming      d. superficiality
28. The media ..... the bad need for economic growth to solve most of our problems.
- a. ranked      b. highlighted      c. brainstormed      d. represented

## PART II

# VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a blog post on يكتب منشور عن	look	terrible يبدو فظيماً
	... for a job يقوم ب... كوظيفة	make	rules يضع قواعد
game	online يلعب على الإنترنت	miss	something important يفقد شيئاً هاماً
get	back to يعود إلى	pay	attention to ينتبه لـ
go	on forums يدخل على المنتديات	post	a message يرسل رسالة
have	effects on له تأثيرات على	represent	feelings يمثل أو يشير إلى مشاعر
	likes يحصل على إعجابات	show	strange behaviour يتصرف بغرابة
keep	... entertained يُسلي		

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
criticise ينتقد	blame, disapprove of
entertain يُسلي - يُزفه عن	please, amuse, satisfy
fire يفصل من العمل	dismiss, sack
sensible حكيم - عقلاي - واقعي	practical, realistic, responsible, reasonable, rational, logical

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite) العكس
criticise ينتقد	praise, approve of يمدح - يستحسن
entertain يُسلي - يُزفه عن	displease, annoy, upset يضايق
fire يفصل من العمل	hire, employ, take on يوظف - يُشغل
sensible حكيم - عقلاي - واقعي	foolish أحمق
strange غريب	familiar, usual مالوف - معتاد
stupid غبي	intelligent, smart ذكي
suitable مناسب	unsuitable غير مناسب



## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

addict		
<b>addict(n)</b>	مُدمن	- He is a drug <b>addict</b> .
<b>addiction(n)</b>	إدمان	- He suffers from drug <b>addiction</b> .
<b>addicted(adj)</b>	مُدمن	- He is <b>addicted</b> to drugs.
behave		
<b>behave (d) (v)</b>	ينصرف	- This boy <b>behaves</b> badly.
<b>behaviour (n)</b>	سلوك - نَصْرَف	- This boy's <b>behaviour</b> is bad.
<b>behavioural (adj)</b>	سلوكي	- This boy has <b>behavioural</b> problems.
criticise		
<b>criticise (d) (v)</b>	ينتقد	- He <b>criticises</b> films.
<b>critic (n)</b>	ناقد	- <b>Critics</b> talked about my latest film positively.
<b>critical (adj)</b>	نقدي - حرج	- I didn't like her <b>critical</b> comments. (نقدي) - I was in a <b>critical</b> (حرج) situation.
<b>criticism (n)</b>	النقد	- Positive <b>criticism</b> is useful.
employ		
<b>employ (ed) (v)</b>	يوظف - يستغل	- This supermarket has <b>employed</b> 20 assistants. - Egypt has <b>employed</b> bright sunlight to generate electricity.
<b>employer(n)</b>	صاحب عمل	- As a teacher, the government is my <b>employer</b> .
<b>employee(n)</b>	مُوظَّف	- The <b>employees</b> here like their jobs.
<b>employable(adj)</b>	قابل للتوظيف	- If you are <b>employable</b> , this means you have good qualifications and skills.
<b>employment (n)</b>	التوظيف - الاستغلال	- The <b>employment</b> of young people is one of the goals of the new plan.
<b>unemployment (n)</b>	البطالة	- <b>Unemployment</b> is a big problem.
entertain		
<b>entertain (ed) (v)</b>	يُنتلّي / يرقّه عن	- There are some shows to <b>entertain</b> children.
<b>entertainer(n)</b>	فنان ترفيهي	- This singer is a great <b>entertainer</b> .
<b>entertaining(adj)</b>	مُنتلّل	- This show is <b>entertaining</b> .
<b>entertainment(n)</b>	التسلية / الترفيه	- For <b>entertainment</b> , you can go to the cinema.

## 5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

addicted to + n / (inf.+ing)	مُدمن علي	keep in contact with	يبقي على اتصال بـ
after all,	على أي حال	loads of	الكثير من
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ - بسبب	on your own	بمفردك/وحدك
be distracted with / by	فُشِئت بـ	on your profile	علي حالتك (صفحتك الشخصية)
for ages	لفترة طويلة	set of	مجموعة من
have nothing to do with	لا علاقة له	so far	حتى الآن
I see your point	أفهم ما تقصد	social media app	تطبيق تواصل اجتماعي
in a few years' time	خلال سنوات قليلة	the other day	مؤخراً
in person	شخصياً	young people	الشباب
in short	باختصار		

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

chat to / with	يحدث مع	go out	يخرج
connect to	يدخل علي	put up	يضع - يرفع
decide to	يقرر أن	share ... with	يشارك ... مع
divide into	يقسم إلي - ينقسم إلى		

## 7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

### app - application

- **app = application** (برنامج يقوم بعمل معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف)  
- An antivirus is an **app (=application)** that protects a computer from malware **برمجيات خبيثة** and viruses.
- **application** (طلب التحاق (بناي أو جامعة أو وظيفة ... إلخ))  
- The secretary received 200 **applications**. (**Not : apps**).

### platform - pavement

- **platform (n)** رصيف محطة القطار أو المترو  
- The train to Aswan leaves at 9:00 from **platform** 11.
- **platform (n)** منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث)  
- He felt embarrassed **مُحرج** when he climbed the steps to the **platform**.
- **platform (n)** منصة الكترونية  
- Mr Mohammed will launch his educational **platform** soon.
- **pavement (n)** رصيف الشارع  
- Cars are not allowed to park on the **pavement**.



## represent - act

- **represent (v)** يُمثّل (ينوب عن شخص أو مؤسسة ...)  
- Rodayna **represented** our office at the conference.
- **act (v)** يُمثّل (يقوم بدور في فيلم/مسرحية ...)  
- He wants to **act** and become a movie star.
- **act (v)** يتصرف  
- I didn't know how to **act** at that difficult situation.

## sensible - sensitive

- **sensible** عاقِل / حَكِيم / معقول  
- Stopping the war was a **sensible** decision.
- **sensitive** حساس / سريع التأثير  
- I was a **sensitive** child. I got upset very easily.

## Exercises On Vocabulary study

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :
  1. "The lady has been criticised for wasting money". The antonym of the word "criticise" is ..... (المتن - أسئلة ٢٤ - ٢٠)
    - a. disapprove
    - b. blame
    - c. advertise
    - d. praise
  2. I ..... a blog post on yesterday's match.
    - a. did
    - b. gamed
    - c. represented
    - d. paid
  3. My teacher said that I had ..... a perfect essay.
    - a. paid
    - b. done
    - c. looked
    - d. played
  4. When you like something, you ..... it.
    - a. approve of
    - b. disapprove of
    - c. criticise
    - d. agree
  5. When something is rational, it is ..... .
    - a. foolish
    - b. sensible
    - c. particular
    - d. general
  6. To "entertain" is antonymous with ..... .
    - a. displease
    - b. please
    - c. amuse
    - d. satisfy
  7. He lost his job. He was ..... .
    - a. hired
    - b. sacked
    - c. employed
    - d. taken on
  8. He gained much weight ..... his love of food.
    - a. so
    - b. so far
    - c. that's why
    - d. as a result of
  9. I download trusted ..... from Google Store.
    - a. apps
    - b. ads
    - c. adverts
    - d. announcements

10. The attention I ..... to what the teacher said helped me understand the lesson.  
 a. checked      b. went      c. seemed      d. paid
11. Amr put ..... a nice photo of his on his Instagram yesterday.  
 a. out      b. in      c. up      d. down
12. I share a lot of interests ..... my cousin Malak.  
 a. in      b. with      c. for      d. on
13. 'For ages' means for .....  
 a. good      b. bad      c. a long time      d. years
14. Our university accepts ..... from Arab students.  
 a. apps      b. applications      c. a & b      d. applicable
15. Don't be so ..... to criticism. Try to benefit from it.  
 a. sensitive      b. sensible      c. reliable      d. unreliable

### PART III

## READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

**Hamdi :** Hey Khaled, can you help me?

I'm **doing a blog post on**<sup>(1)</sup> how to use social media well. Can you help me think of some interesting points to include, please?

**Khaled :** Yes, sure. What have you got **so far**<sup>(2)</sup> ?

**Hamdi :** OK, I think I'm going to begin by talking about your **profile**<sup>(3)</sup>. That's important on social media.

**Khaled :** **Definitely**<sup>(4)</sup> !

**Hamdi :** Great! What shall I write?

**Khaled :** Well, I like seeing who I'm **chatting with**<sup>(5)</sup> on social media, so I believe you should always **put up**<sup>(6)</sup> a nice picture of yourself on your profile. I **hate**<sup>(7)</sup> it when people have **symbols**<sup>(8)</sup> or something **instead of**<sup>(9)</sup> their photo – you don't know who you are talking to.

**Hamdi :** I disagree, symbols tell you more about someone's thinks.

**Khaled :** Really, Hamdi? Well, I think it's important that people don't know too much. For example, in my opinion, it's a bad idea to include your date of birth to show your age.

(SB page 56)

- (1) يكتب منشور عن  
 (2) حتى الآن  
 (3) الملف الشخصي  
 (4) بالتأكيد  
 (5) يردن مع  
 (6) يضع  
 (7) يكره  
 (8) رموز  
 (9) بدلاً من



**Hamdi** : I see your point. Did you know that about 50% of teenagers have experienced bad **behaviour**<sup>(10)</sup>. So, I think you're right not to give people too much information about yourself.

(10) سلوك

**Khaled** : After all, you have to be **sensible**<sup>(11)</sup> on social media if you want to enjoy it safely.

(11) عاقل

**Hanan** : Leila, did you see the post that Hany put up **the other day**<sup>(1)</sup> about **social media behaviour**<sup>(2)</sup> in Egypt?

(WB page 32)

**Leila** : No, I was too busy updating my profile. Do you know how difficult it is to take a good photo of yourself?

**Hanan** : I know what you mean. I just used a photo of my cat. **Anyway**<sup>(3)</sup>, as I was saying, did you know that Hany's post said that 22 million people in Egypt **connect to**<sup>(4)</sup> one **popular social media app**<sup>(5)</sup> every day?

**Leila** : Wow! That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media **platform**<sup>(6)</sup>!

But getting back to your profile photo, why don't you use a photo of yourself?

**Hanan** : Don't you worry about what all those people might see **on your profile**<sup>(7)</sup> ? For example, imagine you post a photo of yourself doing something **stupid**<sup>(8)</sup> now, and in a few years' time you **apply for**<sup>(9)</sup> a job and the company look at your social media profile to see what kind of person you are. What opinion will they have of you?

**Leila** : I see your **point**<sup>(10)</sup>, but in my opinion, social media should be personal and **has nothing to do with**<sup>(11)</sup> your job.

**Hanan** : I disagree. I read about a man who was **fired**<sup>(12)</sup> from his job for **criticising**<sup>(13)</sup> his company on his personal profile. You can never be too careful. You don't know who might see your posts.

**Leila** : I didn't think posting a photo was so important!

- (1) مؤخرًا  
(2) سلوك علي مواقع التواصل  
(3) علي أي حال  
(4) يدخل علي  
(5) تطبيق تواصل اجتماعي شهير  
(6) منصة  
(7) علي حالتك (صفحتك الشخصية)  
(8) غبي  
(9) يتقدم بطلب لـ  
(10) أفهم ما تقصد  
(11) لا علاقة له بـ  
(12) يفصل من العمل  
(13) ينتقد

**Hanan :** The thing is that as soon as you post something, it is there forever<sup>(14)</sup>. So, be careful with those **selfies**<sup>(15)</sup> you're taking!

**Plus**<sup>(16)</sup>, Hany told me that he was once the **victim**<sup>(17)</sup> of bad **behaviour**<sup>(18)</sup> after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans. He reported it and everything is **fine**<sup>(19)</sup> now, but it really **affected**<sup>(20)</sup> him at the time.

**Leila :** Wow! Well, I might think twice about updating my profile picture and just keep the photo of my dog. I think she's so **cute**<sup>(21)</sup> and my selfies all **look terrible**<sup>(22)</sup> anyway!

**Hanan :** I agree, I think your dog is lovely and it's a safer photo, too.

**Leila :** Hey, look! Have you seen what Mona's wearing in the photo she's just posted?

- (14) للأبد
- (15) صورة سيلفي
- (16) بالإضافة لذلك
- (17) ضحية
- (18) سلوك
- (19) بخير
- (20) يؤثر علي
- (21) جميل
- (22) يبدو فظيحا

**Narrator: 1**

**Dalida :** Hi, I'm Dalida. I think the biggest effect that the internet has on young people is it **keeps them entertained**<sup>(1)</sup> – there's always something to watch or listen to, and I'm never **bored**<sup>(2)</sup>.

**Narrator: 2**

**Injy :** Hi, I'm Injy. **Like**<sup>(3)</sup> most of my friends, I think I'm **addicted to**<sup>(4)</sup> the internet. If I'm not checking my social media apps, I feel worried that I'm **missing something important**<sup>(5)</sup>. It means I have a lot of **arguments**<sup>(6)</sup> with my parents **at mealtimes**<sup>(7)</sup> and when we **go out together**<sup>(8)</sup>.

**Narrator: 3**

**Ayman :** Hello. I'm Ayman. I am so pleased I have the internet to help me with my homework. **Imagine**<sup>(9)</sup> if you had to go to the library and read **loads of**<sup>(10)</sup> books for every homework or project!

**Narrator: 4**

**Osama :** Hi, my name's Osama. I **game online**<sup>(11)</sup> which is really fun, so I think the internet has a good effect on my life, but I do worry about my sister. She gets sad because she thinks her friends all have better lives than her and do more exciting things. She can't understand that they only post the good things and not the bad things.

(SB page 57)

- (1) تسليةهم
- (2) نشاعر بالملل
- (3) مثل
- (4) مُدمن ل
- (5) يفقد شيئاً هاماً
- (6) نزاعات - نزاعات
- (7) في أوقات الوجبات
- (8) نخرج معاً
- (9) تخيل
- (10) الكثير من
- (11) يلعب على الإنترنت



## Narrator: 5

**Girl 2 :** Hi, Radwa here. I love the internet. I love computer programming<sup>(12)</sup> so I go on forums<sup>(13)</sup> to chat to<sup>(14)</sup> other programmers<sup>(15)</sup> – students and people who do it for a job<sup>(16)</sup>. I have learned so much. And if I have a problem that I can't solve<sup>(17)</sup> to do with<sup>(18)</sup> programming, someone on the forum can usually help me.

(12)	البرمجة
(13)	يدخل علي المنتديات
(14)	يحدث مع
(15)	مبرمجين
(16)	يقوم بها كوظيفة
(17)	يحل
(18)	لها علاقة بـ

## Exercises On Language

Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Step-by-step exercises

- "You are meant ..... the car engine.  
a. to check      b. to be checked      c. be checked      d. that check
- The new furniture ..... supposed to be delivered next Monday.  
a. is      b. are      c. was      d. were
- My English is much better than it was two years ago. For example, listening ..... difficult, but now it is quite easy.  
a. seems      b. seemed      c. seemed like      d. seems like
- Sorry! I didn't ..... to interrupt you."  
a. suppose      b. mean      c. seem      d. b & c
- The new furniture ..... supposed to be delivered last Monday, but nothing arrived.  
a. has      b. are      c. was      d. were
- She seems ..... excited about the offer.  
a. like      b. as if      c. to be      d. that
- He is supposed ..... a rest after he studies unit 5.  
a. to take      b. to be taken      c. taking      d. to have taken
- His happy expression means ..... he has passed the exam.  
a. that      b. no word      c. a & b      d. to
- This film seems ..... boring.  
a. being      b. to be      c. now word      d. b & c
- He has studied unit 5 and he is supposed ..... a rest now.  
a. be taken      b. taking      c. to be taking      d. have taken
- A rest is supposed ..... after he studies unit 5.  
a. be taken      b. to be taken      c. to be taking      d. have taken
- Amr ..... supposed to have called his parents.  
a. is being      b. isn't      c. was      d. had

13. Ali wasn't at school today. That's strange because he ..... well last evening at the party.  
 a. seemed      b. seemed like      c. seemed to      d. seemed as if
14. What ..... ?  
 a. is this word meaning      b. was that word meaning  
 c. this word means      d. does this word mean
15. "When I get home, my mum ..... supposed to be preparing lunch.  
 a. is      b. was      c. has been      d. had been
16. .... most students in secondary schools want to join the faculty of medicine.  
 a. He seems      b. They seem      c. It seems      d. It is seemed
17. I don't know why he is unhappy. After coming first, he is supposed to ..... his most important goal for the year.  
 a. achieve      b. be achieved      c. be achieving      d. have achieved
18. Getting up late means ..... the train to Aswan.  
 a. misses      b. miss      c. missing      d. to miss
19. When I called him, he was supposed to ..... the essay. That's why I was surprised when he told me that he had already finished it.  
 a. be busy doing      b. be still doing  
 c. have already done      d. a & b
20. "When I called him, he was supposed to ..... the essay. That's why I was surprised when he told me that he hadn't finished it by then.  
 a. be busy doing      b. be still doing  
 c. have already done      d. a & b
21. My father meant for you ..... the office.  
 a. run      b. to run      c. that runs      d. runs
22. Some new clients were supposed to ..... by my manager yesterday.  
 a. meet      b. be met      c. have been met      d. a & b
23. "Supposing ..... you lost your money; how would you react?  
 a. that      b. no word      c. to      d. a & b
24. Ashraf seemed ..... . He took part in a full match.  
 a. not good      b. well      c. fitly      d. unfit
25. I must apologise, but really I didn't ..... you any harm.  
 a. mean      b. suppose      c. seem      d. make
26. There ..... to be no reason for alarm.  
 a. seems      b. seem      c. is seeming      d. is seemed
27. Amira ..... that her mother will support her.  
 a. is supposed      b. supposes      c. supposing that      d. a & b
28. The new flat ..... a view of the Nile.  
 a. means to have      b. means to be had  
 c. is meant to have      d. is meant to be had



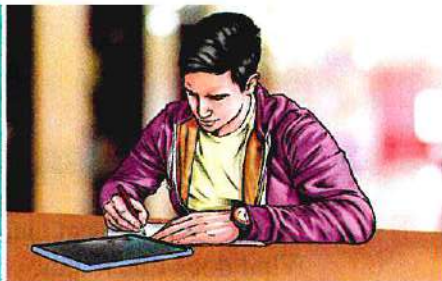
## 2 Exercises from Previous Exams

29. They are supposed ..... the meeting to discuss this urgent matter. (البحيرة - حوش عيسى ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. attend                      b. to attend                      c. attending                      d. to attending
30. The festival ..... to bring people together. (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is meant                      b. supposed                      c. seem                      d. seems that
31. The film ..... to start at 8.30, but it didn't begin on time. (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. seem                      b. meant                      c. was supposed                      d. supposed
32. This play seems ..... boring. (الفيوم - أيشواي ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. to be                      b. being                      c. been                      d. has been
33. That piece of cloth ..... to be a shirt, but the tailor made it a pair of trousers. (البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. seemed                      b. supposed                      c. was meant                      d. was supposing
34. Nora is wearing a nice new dress. She ..... beautiful. (الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. seems                      b. feels                      c. is seemed                      d. means
35. Schools ..... to follow rules of safety. (الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. supposed                      b. are meant                      c. are seemed                      d. must
36. Saber's phone never stops ringing. He ..... to know a lot of people. (أسبوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. is seeming                      b. seems                      c. was meant                      d. was supposed
37. I can't see this photo clearly. What is it ..... ?  
 a. meant to be                      b. seemed to be                      c. supposed to                      d. meaning to be
38. This cafe ..... to serve nice coffee. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. supposed                      b. is seemed                      c. means                      d. is meant
39. It seems .....; I can hear the rain drops on my window. (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. rains                      b. rain                      c. to have rained                      d. to be raining
40. You ..... to be here an hour ago! (البحيرة - كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. were supposed                      b. meant  
 c. are seemed                      d. were supposing
41. Mohammed Abdel Wahab ..... to be very healthy before having a heart attack in 2006. (سوهاج - اضميم ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. meant                      b. supposed                      c. seemed                      d. known
42. The planned project ..... more than just a train station. (الغربية - بسيون ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. seems to                      b. meaning                      c. is meant to be                      d. is supposed
43. Adverts ..... be honest, but we must be careful. (سوهاج - البأيتنا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. are meant                      b. are supposed to  
 c. are seemed to                      d. meant to

### 3 Check your understanding

44. "The police suspect **يشك** that he has a criminal background **تاريخ إجرامى**." What does this mean?  
a. It seems that he has a criminal background.  
b. He seems to have a criminal background.  
c. a & b  
d. His background is criminal.
45. "The wedding party is supposed to start at 11 p.m." This sentence expresses a/an .....  
a. arrangement  
b. common belief  
c. obligation  
d. purpose
46. "You were supposed to be in shape, Saleh." This means Saleh .....  
overweight.  
a. isn't  
b. was  
c. wasn't  
d. was never
47. "I meant Rodayna to look after the baby." This means .....  
a. I intended to choose Rodayna to look after the baby  
b. I was against leaving the baby with Rodayna  
c. I told Rodayna not to look after the baby  
d. a & c
48. "I don't think you are meant for a lawyer." This means you are not ..... for this job.  
a. important  
b. obliged  
c. suitable  
d. a & b
49. "You aren't supposed to use your mobile while driving." Which of the following give / gives the same meaning?  
a. You mustn't use your mobile while driving.  
b. You don't have to use your mobile while driving.  
c. You are allowed to use your mobile while driving.  
d. a & c
50. "I think she is busy." What does this mean?  
a. She seems to have been busy.  
b. It seems that she is busy.  
c. She seems to be busy.  
d. b & c
51. "You passed your exams, Ali. So, you were expected to be happy." This means .....  
a. Ali looks happy  
b. Ali looked happy  
c. Ali didn't look happy  
d. Ali doesn't look happy
52. "You aren't supposed to smoke in a public place." This means .....  
a. Smoking in a public place is allowed  
b. Smoking in a public place isn't allowed  
c. Smoking in a public place was allowed  
d. Smoking in a public place wasn't allowed





تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

## PART I

## LANGUAGE HINTS

## adapt

## • adapt to

بتكيف / يتأقلم مع

بهذا المعنى يأتي بعد (adapt to) اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

ex. - Camels have adapted to life in the desert.

- Sama has adapted to travelling a lot as an air hostess. مضييفة طيران

## • adapt ... to

يُكَيَّف / يُهَيِّئ ... لـ

بهذا المعنى يأتي بعد (adapt ... to) فعل في المصدر (inf.) :

ex. - Engineers have adapted petrol engines to use natural gas. الغاز الطبيعي

## • adapt ... for

يُهَيِّئ / يُعِد ... لـ

ex. - They adapted this part of the park for children.

للحظ الفرق بين:

## • adaptability (n)

قابليَّة التَّكَيِّف (القدرة على التَّكَيِّف مع موقف أو وضع معين)

ex. - His adaptability to different situations makes him successful.

## • adaptation (n)

عملية التَّكَيِّف أو التهيئة - التأقلم

ex. - Adaptation to life in a foreign country takes some time.

ولاحظ أيضاً الفرق بين :

## • adaptable (adj)

قابل للتكيف مع / سهل التَّكَيِّف مع / مُبَرَّن

ex. - He is adaptable to different situations.

## • adapted (adj)

مُكَيَّف / مُهَيِّئ مع

ex. - This engine is well-adapted to using vegetable oil.

## spend

## • spend money on+ n. / (inf.+ ing)

= spend the money to + inf.

ينفق المال علي

ex. - I spent a lot of money on (building) this house.

= I spent a lot of money to build this house.

• **spend time + n. / (inf.+ ing)**

يقضي الوقت في

**ex.** - He spent an hour writing an essay.

• **It's a waste of time / money + (inf.+ ing)**

إنها مضيعة للوقت / المال

**ex.** -It's a waste of time chatting online.

### Plus

يُمكن استخدام (plus) لربط جملتين بمعنى (بالإضافة إلى ذلك)

• **Plus + جملة = in addition / besides + جملة**

**ex.** - She works hard. Plus, she looks after a big family.

= She works hard. In addition, she looks after a big family.

= She works hard. Besides, she looks after a big family.

### be/have

• **to do with + اسم = be related to + اسم** متعلق بـ / على علاقة بـ

**ex.** - She is confident. It has something to do with her happy childhood.

### teach – learn

- يمكن استخدام (how to + inf.) أو (to + inf.) بعد الفعلين learn/teach :

**ex.** - I want you to teach me (how) to ride a horse.

- بينما يستخدم (how to + inf.) بعد الفعلين (know/show)

- A young girl showed me how to operate the machine.

## Exercise On Language Hints

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She spent her money on ..... clothes.

(الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)

a. buy                      b. buying                      c. bought                      d. buys

2. .... doing my homework, I went out for a walk with my friends.

(الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤)

a. In addition                      b. In addition to                      c. Despite                      d. So

3. My friend Sayed spends a lot of his money ..... fast food. (الجزيرة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٣)

a. in                      b. at                      c. on                      d. with

4. When Mohammed Ali presented the giraffe to France, the French set their eyes ..... it for the first time.

(الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)

a. in                      b. on                      c. at                      d. to

5. I was locked ..... my house, I had left my keys at home. (الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة ٢٠٢٤)

a. in                      b. out of                      c. out                      d. into



6. I had to walk because there was no ..... for me in the car. (اسوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)
- a. room                      b. chair                      c. time                      d. move
7. Rodayna has adapted ..... in the countryside.
- a. to live                      b. to living                      c. to life                      d. b & c
8. I adapted the water pump ..... on electricity instead of petrol.
- a. to run                      b. to running                      c. running                      d. b & c
9. Sama spends her pocket money ..... chocolate.
- a. to buy                      b. buying                      c. on buying                      d. a & c
10. It is a waste of money ..... all this chocolate, Sama.
- a. to buy                      b. buying                      c. on buying                      d. a & c
11. I spent the weekend ..... after the plants in the garden.
- a. looking                      b. to look                      c. on looking                      d. look
12. At the weekend, I was busy ..... after the plants in the garden.
- a. looking                      b. to look                      c. on looking                      d. look
13. He studies medicine. ...., he is a professional squash player.
- a. In addition                      b. Plus                      c. a & b                      d. In addition to
14. Omar refused to take the money. It is ..... with his honesty.
- a. being done                      b. to be done                      c. doing                      d. to do
15. I taught Ahmed how .....
- a. drive                      b. to drive                      c. driving                      d. a & b
16. I showed him ..... to park his car.
- a. where                      b. how                      c. if                      d. a & b

## PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

### 1 Reading

⊕ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Shopping is a necessary part of life which very few people can avoid. It is a daily routine for some people. Some people shop for pleasure while others shop to buy the necessary items. The weekend is usually a good time to go shopping because people have free time from work. At this time, the shops are usually busy. Some people go shopping to browse products in shops even when they do not have much money. This is known as window-shopping and allows people to plan and save for the things they want to buy. Some people spend a lot of time looking for bargains while others do

not think of the price and are happy to spend a lot. Some people believe that more expensive items are better in quality but this is not always true. It is sensible to buy items which are **affordable**. Sometimes shopping can be stressful when choosing a gift to buy other people for a special occasion. Shopping online is often popular with people who have a busy lifestyle. People are able to order their necessary and luxury items from their own home. Delivery is usually free and items are often cheaper than in shops. The only real problem is that the item description and quality may be different from what **they** hoped for. This could mean the customer may become disappointed with the item they receive and will need to return it at their own cost. People who go shopping often use self-service payment machines. This saves much time.

1. Why is the weekend a good time to go shopping?
  - a. It is very busy on the weekend.
  - b. People are free from work.
  - c. Things are usually cheaper.
  - d. The shops are closed.
2. What are people doing when they go shopping just to have a look and not to buy?
  - a. Bargain hunting
  - b. Window shopping
  - c. They do not have much money
  - d. Looking for the best quality
3. What do some people usually think about items of better quality?
  - a. They are cheaper.
  - b. They are harder to find.
  - c. They are more expensive.
  - d. They are on sale.
4. When can shopping be stressful?
  - a. When shops are about to close.
  - b. When it is very busy.
  - c. When buying a gift for someone.
  - d. On the weekend.
5. Is there sometimes a problem with online shopping?
  - a. No, the shops are open 24 hours a day.
  - b. No, there are no problems.
  - c. Yes, there are too many queues.
  - d. Yes, with the quality and description of the item.
6. .... people can avoid shopping.
  - a. Many
  - b. Nearly all
  - c. A lot
  - d. Very few
7. The underlined word "**they**" refers to .....
  - a. items
  - b. machines
  - c. people
  - d. sellers
8. The underlined word "**affordable**" means to be .....
  - a. inexpensive
  - b. expensive
  - c. costly
  - d. very few



## 2 Writing Tips – Opinion with reason إرشادات الكتابة : إعطاء الرأي المسبب

Giving opinion with reasons	التعبير عن الرأي مع ذكر السبب
form	example
I think / believe...because... أعتقد أن ... لأن ...	- I think all people should help charity organisation because it needs help.
In my opinion / view...as... من وجهة نظري, ... لأن ...	- In my opinion, he should take a rest as he looks very tired.
If you ask me, ... should + inf. ... so that .....	- If you ask me, you should join a charity so that you can help poor people.
في رأيي, ينبغي على ... أن ... لكي ...	
- I agree / disagree because ... أتفق / لا أتفق لأن ...	- I agree because doing a sport keeps you fit.
- I see your point, but ... أتفهم وجهة نظرك لكن ...	- I see your point, but buying this car will cost a lot of money.

### Model Email

- ✪ Write an email of about (180) words to your friend Nadi(a) telling him / her about the advantages and disadvantages of smart phones. Your email is nabil(a@student.com and your friend's email is nadi(a@student.com

**From :** nabil (a)@student.com

**To :** nadi (a)@student.com

**Subject :** advantages and disadvantages of smartphones

**Dear Nadi(a),**

How are you, Nadia? I hope you and your family are your best. It gives me great pleasure to send this email to you. I want to tell you about my opinion of smartphones.

Like everything else, smartphones have advantages and disadvantages. On one hand, they have made communication easier than before. You can call anybody anywhere at any time. You can also send text messages. They allow you to send and receive video calls. You can also log on the internet quickly through them. Smart phones have a lot of applications that give you access to huge information and let you follow unlimited people and webpage. So, no surprise to know that you can work and get money through smartphones.

On the other hand, mobile phones have some disadvantages. People have stopped visiting each other because it has become easier to phone them. Some young people use smartphones in bad ways. They can also cause some health problems.

Finally, I think that we have to use smartphones in a way that makes us benefit from them and, at the same time, avoid their downsides. Now, what do you think of smartphones? I'm waiting for your reply.

Yours,  
Nabil(a)

### Writing practice

- ✪ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

(القاهرة - الخليفة و المقطم ٢٠٢٤)

#### The effects of media on our modern life

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### 3 الترجمة Translation

- ✪ 1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. The internet has destroyed the art of conversation and made people unhappy by forcing them to want things they don't need. However, it helps people to update their knowledge of the world affairs. (القاهرة - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤)

- a. لقد دمر الإنترنت فن الحديث وجعل الناس غير سعداء بدفعهم للرغبة في أشياء لا يريدونها، لذلك ساعد الناس في تحديث معرفتهم بشؤون العالم
- b. لقد دمر الإنترنت فن المحادثة وجعل الناس تعساء بإجبارهم على الرغبة في أشياء لا يريدونها، لهذا ساعد الناس في تطوير معرفتهم بقضايا العالم.
- c. لقد دمر الإنترنت فن الكلام وجعل الناس تعساء بدفعهم للسعي إلى أشياء لا يريدونها، حتى أنه ساعد الناس في تحديث معرفتهم بشؤون الكون.
- d. لقد دمر الإنترنت فن المحادثة وجعل الناس تعساء بدفعهم للرغبة في أشياء لا يريدونها، رغم أنه ساعد الناس في تحديث معرفتهم بقضايا العالم.



2. Never get frustrated when you fail to overcome any obstacle to reach your objectives. The more you insist on pursuing your ambitions, the more success you achieve.

(البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)

- a. لا تستمر في الإحباط أبداً عندما تحاول التغلب على أي عقبة للوصول إلى أهدافك، وكلما ازداد إصرارك على السعي نحو طموحاتك سوف تحقق نجاحاً أكبر.
- b. لا تشعر بالحزن أبداً عندما تفشل في التغلب على أي عقبة للوصول إلى أهدافك، وكلما ازداد إصرارك على السعي نحو طموحاتك كلما حققت نجاحاً أكبر.
- c. لا تستمر في الإحباط أبداً عندما تفشل في التغلب على أي عقبة للوصول إلى أحلامك، وكلما ازداد إصرارك على السعي نحو طموحاتك كلما حققت نجاحاً أكبر.
- d. لا تشعر بالإحباط أبداً عندما تفشل في التغلب على أي عقبة للوصول إلى أهدافك، وكلما ازداد إصرارك على السعي نحو طموحاتك كلما حققت نجاحاً أكبر.

3. Traditional education is unable to cope up with the huge jumps of science. The aim of education isn't to help students memorize but to acquire knowledge and skills.

(الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. التعليم التقليدي قادر على التعامل مع القفزات الكبيرة للعلم، فهدف التعليم ليس مساعدة الطلاب على الحفظ لكن اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات.
- b. التعليم التقني غير قادر على التعامل مع القفزات الهائلة للعلم، فهدف التعليم ليس مساعدة الطلاب على الحفظ لكن اكتساب التلقين والمهارات.
- c. لا يستطيع التعليم التقليدي أن يواكب القفزات الكبيرة للعلم، فهدف التعليم ليس مساعدة الطلاب على الحفظ لكن اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات.
- d. لا يستطيع التعليم التقليدي أن يواكب القفزات الهائلة للعلم، فهدف التعليم مساعدة الطلاب على الحفظ وكذلك اكتساب المعرفة والمهارات.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

ا. للبقاء آمناً على الانترنت، يجب عليك حماية حسابك بكلمات مرور قوية. إن أفضل كلمات مرور يجب أن تحتوي على أرقام وحروف وحتى ورموز خاصة.

(أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. To stay safety online, you should protect your accounts with strong passwords. The best password should have numbers, letters and even special persons.
- b. To stay safe online, you should protect your accounts with strong passwords. The best password should have numbers, letters and even special characters.
- c. To stay safety online, you should protect your accounts with a strong password. The best password should not have numbers, letters and even special characters.
- d. To stay safe online, you must protect your accounts with a strong password. The best password should have numbers, letters and even special persons.

٢. يستخدم الكثير من الناس بطاقات الائتمان لشراء السلع والخدمات لأنها أكثر أماناً وأكثر راحة.

(البحيرة - الدلتجات ٢٠٢٤)

- A lot of people use credible cards to buy goods and services as they are safer and more comfortable.
- A lot of people use identity cards to buy goods and services as they are safer and more comfortable.
- A lot of people use credit cards to buy goods and surfaces as they are safer and more comfortable.
- A lot of people use credit cards to buy goods and services as they are safer and more comfortable.

٣. من أهداف التعليم بناء مواطن قادر علي مواجهة المستقبل، كما يهدف أيضاً إلى إعداد جيل من العلماء لخدمة البشرية.

(القاهرة - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٤)

- One of the aims of education is to build up a person who is able to face the future. Education also aims to preparing a generation of scientists for the service of humanity.
- From of the aims of education are to build up a citizen who is able to face the future. Education also aim at preparing a generation of scientists for the service of humane.
- Some of the aims of education are to build up a citizen which is able to face the future. Education also aims at preparing a generation of scientists for the service of humans.
- One of the aims of education is to build up a citizen who is able to face the future. Education also aims at preparing a generation of scientists for the service of humanity.

## PART III

# JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

◀ للفائقين فقط

## المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين Key Vocabulary for Advanced level

### consult

- consult(ed)(v)** يبحث عن معلومة في (بدون حرف جر)
  - You can **consult** GPS if you get lost.
- consult someone = see / ask someone** يستشير / يطلب المشورة / يستفتي  
الأمور القانونية. الأُمور القانونية.
  - I usually **consult** my lawyer about legal affairs.
- consult with** يتشاور مع
  - I need to **consult with** my lawyer.



• **consultant(n)**

مستشار / ناصح / خبير

- You need advertising **consultants** to help you with the new marketing campaign. حملة تسويقية.

• **consultant(n)**

استشاري (طبيب خبير في فرع معين من الطب)

- Do you agree with me that a young doctor is sometimes more helpful than a **consultant**?

**download - upload**

• **download (n)** ≠ **upload (n)**

ملف مرفوع على الانترنت

- There are five **downloads** in this folder.

• **download (n)** ≠ **upload (n)**

رفع الملفات

- The speed of **download** is always more than the speed of upload.

• **downloading (n)** ≠ **uploading (n)**

الرفع على الانترنت

- **Downloading** videos is easier and faster than **uploading** them.

• **download (v)** ≠ **upload (ed) (v)**

يرفع ملف

- Abdulrahman has **downloaded** all Al Pacino's films.

- Mr Mohammed used to **upload** educational files for free.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- download ... from من ... يُنزل - download ... to / onto إلي ... يُنزل

- upload ... to علي ... يرفع

• **downloadable (adj)**

قابل للتنزيل

- The files on this website are **downloadable**.

**reliable**

• **rely (ied) on / upon (v)**

يعتمد علي

- Don't make your children **rely on** you all the time. Let them depend on themselves.

• **reliable (adj)**

يُعتَمَد عليه / أهل للثقة

- Bassem is a **reliable** man. You can trust him.

• **reliability (n)**

الدقة - الموثوقية - الجدارة

- I'm not sure about the **reliability** of this information.

• **reliance (n)**

الاعتماد / الاتكال

- There's increasing **reliance** on computers.

## up & down with computer terminology

تُستخدم كل من (up / down) في الكثير من مصطلحات الحاسب الآلي مثل:

- **up** : upload – upgrade – update – (up-to-date)
- **down** : download – take down

### Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To make a strong password, use numbers, letters and a special .....  
a. character      b. personality      c. letter      d. post
2. He is not fit. I think that has ..... his eating habits.  
a. to do with      b. to be done      c. done with      d. do with
3. I have to check this piece of information ..... reliable references to make sure it is reliable.  
a. against      b. with      c. a & b      d. to
4. Luxor was just a city. Then, it was ..... to the status of a governorate محافظة in 2009.  
a. degraded      b. demoted      c. updated      d. upgraded
5. The ..... of the report is stinging. حاد The writer seems to be completely against the plan.  
a. tone      b. cookies      c. behaviour      d. banner

### Advanced Exercise on Language

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It ..... only yesterday when I first met my wife.  
a. seems      b. seems to      c. seems like      d. a & c
2. Some new clients are supposed to ..... tomorrow.  
a. meet      b. be met      c. have been met      d. a & b
3. "I didn't mean to step on your foot." The speaker wants to express lack of .....  
a. responsibility      b. intention      c. duty      d. obligation
4. Suppose ..... you see a large dog in a dark street, will you run away?  
a. to      b. not to      c. what      d. no word
5. They supposed ..... a lot of money.  
a. me to have      b. I to have      c. to have      d. b & c



# Test on Unit 5

توبه

\* التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب  
\* تدريبات الأزهر الشريف بنك الأسئلة



• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't worry. My car's quite old, but it's still ..... . (الاقصر - أرمنت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. doubtful      b. distant      c. reliable      d. disorganised
2. Students usually ..... files from some websites to use them in their research. (الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)  
a. remove      b. upload      c. download      d. draw
3. I usually ..... my parents and elder brother if I have a problem.  
a. consult      b. detect      c. predict      d. hire
4. Many famous actors use social media such as Facebook to attract more ..... . (الاسماعيلية - القنطرة غرب ٢٠٢٣)  
a. consultants      b. followers      c. bullies      d. enemies
5. The old man's ..... changed dramatically when he saw the money.  
a. ton      b. tone      c. tin      d. tonne
6. They have just ..... the timetable, so we know these train times are correct. (الدقهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. upgraded      b. updated      c. solved      d. got into
7. Thank you for your kind offer. I can carry my luggage ..... my own.  
a. with      b. in      c. by      d. on
8. Tomorrow is the final exam. All the lessons are ..... to be revised.  
a. meaning      b. supposed      c. seemed      d. supposing
9. Your flat has been robbed! This ..... that you have to report to the police. (الشرقية - مشتول السوق ٢٠٢٤)  
a. seems      b. means      c. meant      d. is meant
10. My teacher was ..... to give me a prize yesterday but he must have forgotten. (الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)  
a. seemed      b. supposed      c. mean      d. supposing
11. She gets good marks although she isn't clever. She ..... to be a cheat.  
a. is supposed      b. means      c. seems      d. supposes
12. Seat belts are ..... to reduce the risk of death or serious injuries during car accidents. (أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. supposes      b. supposes      c. supposed      d. supposing
13. The presentation is ..... to be about the effects the internet can have on young people's lives. (أسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٣)  
a. seems      b. means      c. seemed      d. meant
14. The conference ..... to be at 10 am. If so, I won't be able to attend it.  
a. was supposed      b. is supposed      c. is seemed      d. was meant
15. My homework ..... to be full of mistakes; the teacher is angry with me. (أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٤)  
a. means      b. supposes      c. seems      d. sees



2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (السكندرية - غرب الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

Detective Anderson was a renowned investigator known for his perfect problem-solving skills. On a foggy evening in Alexandria, he received a distress call from Mrs Roberts, who claimed that her priceless diamond necklace had been stolen. With no time to waste, Detective Anderson rushed to Mrs Roberts' mansion.

Upon arrival, he found the mansion in disarray. It seemed like a place of chaos rather than grandeur. Anderson discreetly interviewed the staff and narrowed down his suspects: the butler, the chef, the gardener, and the housekeeper. As he carefully examined the crime scene, he noticed a broken window in Mrs Roberts' room.

The detective meticulously gathered evidence, analyzing fingerprints and footprints. He discovered a clue—a strand of long, red hair caught on the shattered glass. Anderson interrogated each suspect, meticulously noting their alibis and examined their behaviour carefully. Finally, he pieced together the puzzle.

After careful consideration, Detective Anderson called everyone to the living room. He dramatically revealed the thief's identity and motives. It was the housekeeper, Mrs Roberts' trusted confidante. She had dyed her hair to mislead investigators. Motivated by greed and the opportunity to sell the diamond necklace discreetly, she had carefully planned the theft.

The police arrived promptly to take the housekeeper into custody. Mrs Roberts, relieved that her treasured necklace would soon be returned, thanked Detective Anderson for his expertise and swift resolution of the case.

1. What type of text is this?
  - a. A detective story
  - b. A newspaper article
  - c. An argumentative essay
  - d. A science fiction story
2. According to the passage, which of the following is true?
  - a. The weather was rainy.
  - b. Mrs Roberts was furious in the end.
  - c. The house was large and beautiful.
  - d. The police arrested the housekeeper.
3. The word 'priceless' in the first paragraph means .....
  - a. not very expensive
  - b. extremely valuable
  - c. of low value
  - d. of bad quality
4. The underlined pronoun "he" in the second paragraph refers to .....
  - a. the gardener
  - b. the butler
  - c. Detective Anderson
  - d. Mrs Roberts
5. It is inferred from the text that .....
  - a. you should trust all people
  - b. even the most trusted people can betray
  - c. detectives' work is not important
  - d. it isn't good to dye your hair in red
6. How did Detective Anderson solve the case?
  - a. By analyzing fingerprints and footprints
  - b. By examining the housekeeper's behaviour
  - c. By piecing together clues
  - d. All of the above



7. What was the motive of the theft?  
 a. revenge                      b. jealousy                      c. greed                      d. fame

8. Which of the following best summarises the fourth paragraph?

- a. Revealing the thief's identity and motives.  
 b. Mrs Roberts' sadness concerning the theft.  
 c. Examining the crime scene was perfect.  
 d. The foggy evening's crime.

3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Reading is very useful. It stimulates the memory centres of your mind and arouses your imagination. Also, it helps recall information and stabilize your emotions.

(الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)

- a. القراءة شيقة جداً، فهي تحفز مراكز الذكري في عقلك وتثير خيالك، كما أنها تساعد في استدعاء المعلومات وكذلك استعراض عواطفك.  
 b. القراءة مفيدة جداً، فهي تحفز مراكز الذاكرة في عقلك وتثير خيالك، كما أنها تساعد في استدعاء المعلومات وكذلك استقرار عواطفك.  
 c. القراءة شيقة جداً، فهي تحفز مراكز الذاكرة في عقلك وتثير خيالك، كما أنها تساعد في زيادة المعلومات وكذلك استنفا عواطفك.  
 d. القراءة مفيدة جداً، فهي تحفز مراكز الذاكرة في خيالك وتثير عقلك، كما أنها تساعد في استدعاء المعلومات وكذلك استقرار عواطفك.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

يجب علينا أن ننشئ الأبطال على الثقة بالنفس والوطنية واحترام الآخرين، وكل هذا سوف ينعكس على شخصيتهم كمواطنين صالحين مفيدين لوطنهم في المستقبل.

(الاسماعيلية - أبو صوير ٢٠٢٤)

- a. We should bring our children up on self-tolerance, patriotism and respecting other people. All these will be reflected on their personalities as good citizens useful to their country in the future.  
 b. We should bring our children up on self-confidence, patriotism and respecting other people. All these will be supported on their personalities as good citizens useful to their country in the future.  
 c. We should bring up our children on self-confidence, patriotism and suspecting other people. All these will be reflected on their personalities as good citizens useful to their country on the future.  
 d. We should bring up our children on self-confidence, patriotism and respecting other people. All these will be reflected on their personalities as good citizens useful to their country in the future.

4. Answer the following questions:

1. The great King Lear became a hopeless and powerless man. Illustrate.

(الشرقية - منشأة أبو عمر ٢٠٢٤)

2. Goneril and Regan were deceitful. Explain.

(الفيوم - اطسا ٢٠٢٤)

3. Gloucester says, "It's a stab in the back" What do you think Gloucester meant?

(المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)

5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

(الفيوم - اطسا ٢٠٢٤)

*The internet has become an important invention in our life*

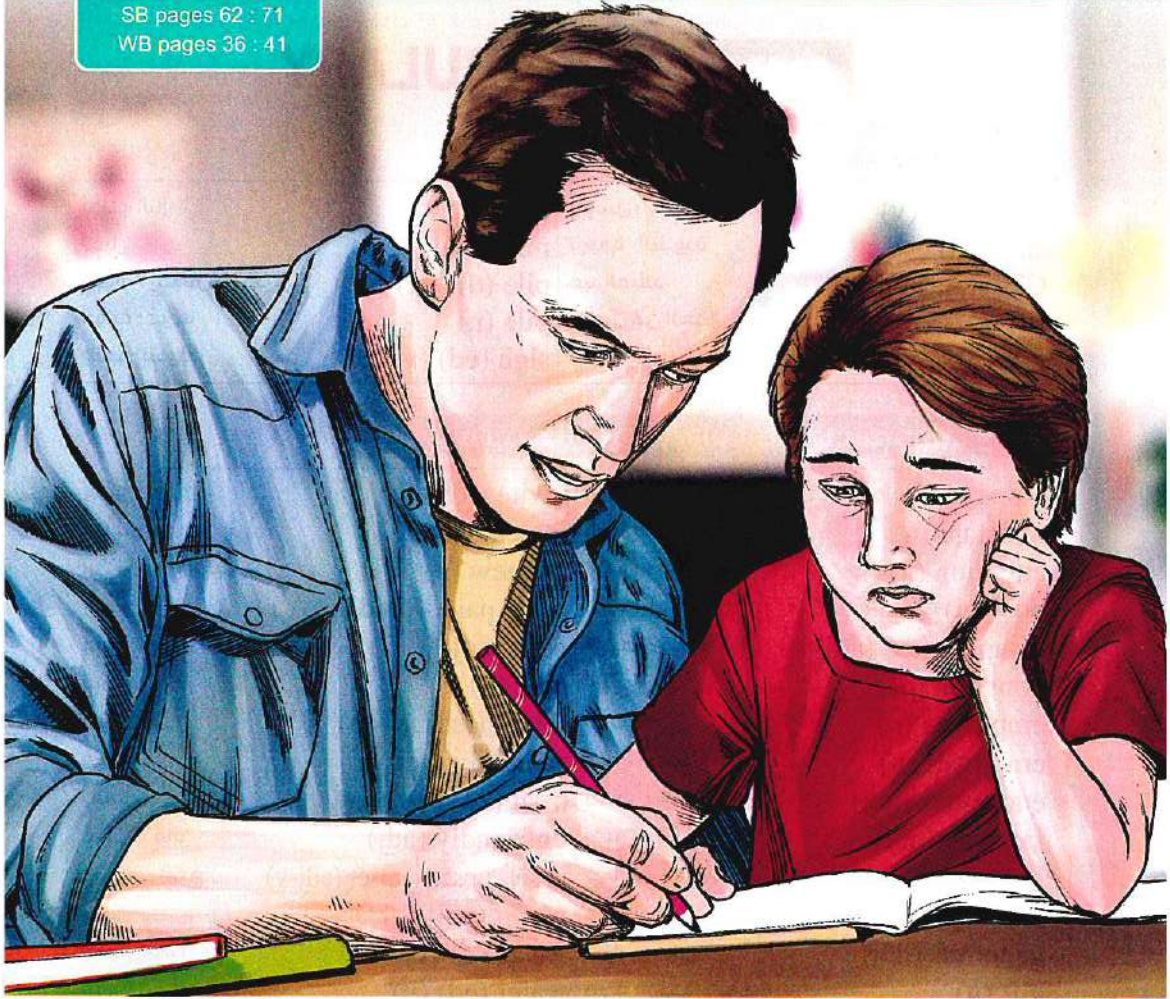


# UNIT 6

## Learning from our mistakes

SB pages 62 : 71

WB pages 36 : 41



**Objectives :** \_\_\_\_\_ : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- ❖ **Reading** : Two extracts from an abridged version of A Christmas Carol by Charles Dickens
- ❖ **Writing** : An essay on your regrets
- ❖ **Listening** : A radio programme about regrets

- ❖ **Speaking** : Role-play about recognising mistakes
- ❖ **Language** : Conditionals (zero, first, second and third)
- ❖ **Life skills** : Learning from our mistakes





## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

beg (ged) (v)	يتوسّل - يستجدي - يتسول	fire (d) (v)	يطلق النار
carol (n)	ترنيمة - أنشودة	mean (adj)	بخيل
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد	pile (d) (up) (v)	يُكُوْم / يُكَدِّس - يتكدس
fire (d) (v)	يفصل من العمل	pile (n)	خومة - غرمة
fire (n)	مدفأة - نار	sigh (ed) (v - n)	يتنهد - تنهيدة

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

alone (adv)	وحيثًا	invite (d) (v)	يدعو - يعزم
assistant (n)	مُساعد	logical (adj)	منطقي
attention (n)	النباه - اهتمام	nephew (n)	ابن الأخ أو الأخت
boss (n)	رئيس العمل	pay - paid - paid (v)	يدفع ثمن
disappointed (adj)	مُحَبِّط - خائب الأمل	poor (adj)	فقير
donation (n)	التبرّع	race (n)	سباق
employee (n)	موظف	regret (ted) (v - n)	يندم - الندم
employer (n)	صاحب عمل	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
enormous (adj)	ضخم - هائل	treat (ed) (v)	يعامل - يعالج
faraway (adj)	بعيد	unfriendly (adj)	غذائي - فاتر
foggy (adj)	ضبابي - أغيث	upset - upset - upset (adj-v)	منزعج - يزعج
friendly (adj)	ودود	warm (adj)	دافئ
generous (adj)	كريم - سخّي	waste (d) (v)	يُضَيِّع / يُهدِر
gift (n)	هدية - منحة - موهبة	water (ed) (v)	يروّي / يسقي
including (prep)	بما في ذلك		

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>beg(ged) (v)</b> يتوسّل - يستجدي	to ask for يطلب something in a way that shows you need it very much.
<b>carol(n)</b> ترنيمة - أنشودة	a traditional Christmas song

<b>mean(adj)</b>	بخيل	not happy to spend money or give anything to other people
<b>pile(n)</b>	كومة - غرمة	a group of things put on top of each other
<b>sigh (n)</b>	تنهيدة	a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed

## Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Definitions

- ..... are religious songs or rituals that people sing at Christmas.  
(دمياط - الروضة ٢٠٢٤)
- A ..... is a group of things put on top of each other.  
a. touch      b. pile      c. sigh      d. beggary
- To be ..... means not happy to spend money or give anything to other people.  
a. mean      b. beggar      c. logical      d. disappointed
- A ..... is a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed.  
a. site      b. sign      c. sigh      d. sight
- To ..... is to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.  
a. ignore      b. upset      c. regret      d. beg

### 2 Key vocabulary

- This rich man is too ..... to donate any money to charity.  
(الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)
- We found an amazing photo in a/an ..... of books in our basement.  
(المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤)
- He ..... me to help him because he was in trouble.  
(البحيرة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤)
- He didn't say anything, but I knew Dad was disappointed when I heard his .....
- He was ..... from his job due to his laziness.  
(المنيا - بني مزار ٢٠٢٤)



11. The policemen ..... at the gang as they were leaving the bank with the stolen money.  
a. dismissed      b. fired      c. sighed      d. begged

### 3 Important Vocabulary

12. Mona really ..... wasting her time on that film; it was very boring. (الشرفية - مشتول السوق ٢٠٢٤)  
a. pleases      b. affects      c. regrets      d. rejoices
13. It was ..... of him to donate two million pounds for charity. (المنوية - السادات ٢٠٢٤)  
a. generous      b. stingy      c. cowardly      d. miserly
14. When his son failed his exam, the father was too ..... (الاسكندرية - العامرية ٢٠٢٣)  
a. disappointed      b. happy      c. glad      d. delighted
15. In squash, you have to beat the person you are playing against .....  
a. lonely      b. private      c. alone      d. particular
16. His ..... words made us all leave the meeting.  
a. generous      b. kind      c. warm      d. unfriendly
17. It is ..... that a child makes mistakes.  
a. mean      b. logical      c. disappointed      d. foggy
18. She floods her children with her ..... feelings.  
a. disappointed      b. sick      c. warm      d. unfriendly
19. His ..... as a teacher makes him very successful. He has a natural ability to teach children.  
a. reunion      b. tone      c. gift      d. regret
20. Using her things without permission really ..... her.  
a. ignores      b. upsets      c. treats      d. fires
21. My father took us all to the park, ..... my baby sister.  
a. including      b. inviting      c. firing      d. extracting
22. It is very dangerous to drive fast on a ..... weather.  
a. main      b. logical      c. disappointed      d. foggy
23. Charities depend mainly on ..... from people.  
a. attacks      b. memories      c. donations      d. relationship
24. Eating too much food makes me feel .....  
a. generous      b. sick      c. well      d. unfriendly
25. Pay ..... to every word your teacher says.  
a. attention      b. memory      c. donation      d. relationship
26. He was a kind gentleman who ..... his servants well.  
a. ignored      b. upset      c. treated      d. fired
27. I asked my ..... to make a brief report about the new plan.  
a. leader      b. assistant      c. feedback      d. friendship

## PART II

# VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

<b>change</b>	his mind	يغير رأيه	<b>have</b>	a bad dream	يري حلماً مزعجاً
<b>do</b>	exercise	يتمرن		dinner	يتناول العشاء
<b>feel</b>	alone	يشعر بالوحدة	<b>keep</b>	... warm	'يُبقى ... دافئاً
	healthy	يشعر أنه بصحة جيدة	<b>miss</b>	a train	يفوته القطار
<b>fire</b>	a gun	يطلق النار	<b>need</b>	donations	يحتاج تبرعات
<b>get</b>	burnt	يحترق	<b>pay</b>	attention to	يلتبه - يولي اهتماماً بـ
	lost	يتوه	<b>see</b>	his mistakes	يدرك أخطائه
	angry	يغضب			

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
alone	وحيد	lonely, isolated, solitary, deserted, abandoned, friendless, desolate
disappointed	مُحبط - خائب الأمل	frustrated, saddened, depressed, dissatisfied
logical	منطقي	reasonable, rational
mean	بخيل	stingy, cheap
mean	قاسي	unkind, cruel
generous	كريم	hospitable
foggy	ضبابي - أغيث	misty, cloudy
mistake	خطأ	error, fault

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
alone	وحيد	loved, wanted	محبوب - مطلوب
disappointed	مُحبط - خائب الأمل	pleased, satisfied	سعيد - راضي
foggy	ضبابي - أغيث	clear, bright	صافي
friendly	ودود	unfriendly, cruel	عذائي - فائر
logical	منطقي	irrational, illogical	غير منطقي
mean	بخيل	generous, hospitable	كريم - سخّي
mean	قاسي	kind	طيب - عطوف



## 4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

<b>beg</b>	
<b>beg (ged) (v)</b> يتوسّل - يستجدي	- She <b>begged</b> her mother to let her join the school trip.
<b>beggar (n)</b> مُتسوّل (شحات)	- I think he is a professional <b>beggar</b> , not a poor man.
<b>beggary (n)</b> الفقر المُدقّع (الشديد)	- He lives in absolute <b>beggary</b> .
<b>fire</b>	
<b>fire (d) (v)</b> يُطلق النار - يفصل من العمل	- He <b>fired</b> his gun at the thieves. - He was <b>fired</b> because he was careless.
<b>fire (n)</b> نار - حريق - مدفأة	- The house was on <b>fire</b> . - I sat by the <b>fire</b> and started to read.
<b>fired (adj)</b> مفصول من العمل	- The <b>fired</b> employees have to look for employment.
<b>mean</b>	
<b>meanness (n)</b> البخل - الشخ	- She was shocked by her husband's <b>meanness</b> .
<b>mean (n)</b> بخيل	- She didn't expect her husband to be so <b>mean</b> .
<b>pile</b>	
<b>pile (d) (up) (v)</b> يُكوّم / يُكدّس - يتكدس - يتدافع	- We <b>piled</b> the boxes <b>up</b> neatly. - The bell rang and the kids started <b>piling</b> into the classroom.
<b>pile (n)</b> كومة	- I found an old photo in a <b>pile</b> of books on the desk.

## 5 Expressions &amp; Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a deep breath out	زفير شديد	in a way that shows	بطريقة توضح أن
be happy about	يسعد بـ	in an unfriendly tone	بنبرة عدائية
be late for	متأخر علي	need help with	يحتاج مساعدة في
each other	بعضهم البعض	on top of	فوق
far away	بعيد	spend money on	ينفق مالاً علي
feel so alone	يشعر بالوحدة الشديدة	stay in touch	يبقي على اتصال
in a logical order	بترتيب منطقي		

## 6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

ask ... for	يطلب ... من	run off	ينطلق
come into (a place)	يدخل	smile at	يتبسّم لـ
feel about	يشعر تجاه	speak to/with	يتحدث إلي
invite ... to	يدعو ... إلي	wake up	يستيقظ - يوقظ
pay ... for	يدفع ... ثمناً لـ	work for	يعمل لحساب / لدي
pay ... to	يدفع ... لـ		

## Exercise On Vocabulary study

● ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. He was dismissed due to his laziness. The word ..... can replace the word dismiss. (القلوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. burn                      b. fire                      c. flame                      d. shoot
2. My uncle isn't mean; he is ..... (الدقهلية - بلفاس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. a miser                      b. wicked                      c. generous                      d. stingy
3. What you say seems logical to me. This means I find it is ..... (المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. rational                      b. irrational                      c. illogical                      d. incredible
4. "After the exam, the student felt disappointed." "Disappointed" is a synonym for ..... (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. appointed                      b. worried                      c. depressed                      d. satisfied
5. I ..... your pardon to help me. (المنوفية - أشمون ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. bag                      b. hug                      c. beg                      d. hit
6. We all love and respect Hamza as he is ..... He is very helpful.  
 a. ugly                      b. friendly                      c. silly                      d. lonely
7. "Having no friends makes him feel alone." The adjective 'alone' in this sentence is the antonym for .....  
 a. loved                      b. unwanted                      c. lonely                      d. misty
8. "I was disappointed by her reaction." This means her reaction didn't ..... me.  
 a. satisfy                      b. shock                      c. frustrate                      d. depress
9. I will speak ..... Omar about the matter.  
 a. from                      b. to                      c. of                      d. off
10. You need to ..... more attention to your teachers at school.  
 a. pay                      b. miss                      c. fall                      d. had
11. He usually ..... his mistakes when he calms down.  
 a. makes                      b. goes                      c. sees                      d. does
12. He picked up his keys and ran .....  
 a. for                      b. into                      c. off                      d. by
13. Take this mobile ..... a gift from me to you.  
 a. such                      b. such as                      c. as                      d. like
14. He doesn't like to spend money out of .....  
 a. meaningful                      b. meaningless                      c. mean                      d. meanness
15. I don't want money, Sir. I am not a .....  
 a. beg                      b. begged                      c. beggar                      d. beggary



## PART III READING &amp; LISTENING

## Reading Text

## A Christmas Carol

ترجمة الميلاد (رواية لـ "تشارلز ديكنز")

SB page (62)

It was the end of December. It was **dark**<sup>(1)</sup> outside and the streets were **foggy**<sup>(2)</sup>. Scrooge was a very rich **businessman**<sup>(3)</sup>, but he was **mean**<sup>(4)</sup> and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his **assistant**<sup>(5)</sup>, Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't **pay for**<sup>(6)</sup> a big **fire**<sup>(7)</sup> to **keep them warm**<sup>(8)</sup>.

There was only a small fire and it was very **far away**<sup>(9)</sup>. "It's late. Can I **go home**<sup>(10)</sup>, Mr Scrooge?" Bob **begged**<sup>(11)</sup>. "Have you finished your work?" asked Scrooge.

Bob looked at the **enormous**<sup>(12)</sup> **pile**<sup>(13)</sup> of work left to do and **sighed**<sup>(14)</sup>.

"You can't go home if you don't finish your work," continued Scrooge.

"If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?" asked Bob.

"No," said Scrooge.

**Suddenly**<sup>(15)</sup> the door opened and Scrooge's **nephew**<sup>(16)</sup>, Fred, **came into**<sup>(17)</sup> the office. He gave his uncle a **friendly**<sup>(18)</sup> **smile**<sup>(19)</sup>.

"Bah!" said Scrooge, "Why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're **poor**<sup>(20)</sup>. What have you got to **be happy about**<sup>(21)</sup>?"

"If you are so **rich**<sup>(22)</sup>, why are you so sad?" replied Fred. "**Perhaps**<sup>(23)</sup> if you were poor like me, you'd be happy like me, **too**<sup>(24)</sup>."

"Have you come to ask me for money?" asked Scrooge in an **unfriendly**<sup>(25)</sup> **tone**<sup>(26)</sup>.

"No," replied his nephew. "I've come to **invite**<sup>(27)</sup> you to dinner."

"Bah!" said his uncle.

(1) ظلام - مُظلم

(2) ضبابي - أغيث

(3) رجل أعمال

(4) بخيل

(5) مُساعد

(6) يدفع ثمن

(7) مدفأة

(8) تدفئهم

(9) بعيد

(10) يذهب للمنزل

(11) يقول متوسلاً

(12) ضخمة

(13) كومة - عُرقة

(14) يتلهد

(15) فجأة

(16) ابن الأخ

(17) يدخل

(18) ودود

(19) ابتسامة

(20) فقير

(21) يسعد بـ

(22) غني

(23) ربما

(24) أيضاً

(25) غدائيّ - مآثر

(26) نبرة صوت

(27) يدعو - يعزم

## A Christmas Carol :

SB page (64)

### After a dream

The next morning, Scrooge **woke up**<sup>(1)</sup> in his bed. He'd had a **terrible**<sup>(2)</sup> dream, but now he could **see his mistakes**<sup>(3)</sup>. If he hadn't felt so **alone**<sup>(4)</sup>, he wouldn't have cared only about money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have **treated**<sup>(5)</sup> other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't have felt so alone.



- (1) استيقظ
- (2) فظيع
- (3) بذكر أخطائه
- (4) وحيد
- (5) يعامل
- (6) الجزار
- (7) كهدية مني لـ
- (8) تفعل ذلك لأجلي
- (9) انطلق
- (10) يغير رأيه
- (11) يتناول العشاء
- (12) يدخل

But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. "You! Boy!" he shouted out of the window. "Do you know the **butcher's**<sup>(6)</sup> shop?"

"Yes, Mr Scrooge," shouted the boy. He was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smile.

"I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as **a gift from me to**<sup>(7)</sup> his family. Will you **do this for me**<sup>(8)</sup> if I pay you?"

"Of course," said the boy and then he **ran off**<sup>(9)</sup> before Mr Scrooge **changed his mind**<sup>(10)</sup>. Scrooge went out in the street and said, "Good morning," to all the people he met and he smiled at them. Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied, "Good morning, Mr Scrooge," and that made Scrooge very happy.

Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could **have dinner**<sup>(11)</sup> with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to **come inside**<sup>(12)</sup>.



## PART IV LANGUAGE

## 1 Zero conditional

الحالة الصفيرية

Statement  
الجملة الخبرية

مضارع بسيط ... + مضارع بسيط , عندما / إذا / When / If

→ ex. - When / If I feel tired, I take some time to rest.  
= I take some time to rest when / if I feel tired.Yes / No Q.  
السؤال بـ (هل)

Do / Does + subj. + inf. + if / when + مضارع بسيط ?

→ ex. - When / If you feel tired, do you take some time to rest?  
= Do you take some time to rest when/if you feel tired?'Wh-' Q.  
السؤال بأداة  
استفهام

Q.W. + do / does + subj. + inf. + if / when + مضارع بسيط ... ?

→ ex. - What do you do if / when you feel tired?  
= If/When you feel tired, what do you do?

## Uses الاستخدامات

1 التعبير عن العادات الثابتة أو المواقف التي لها نتيجة منطقية :

ex. - If / When I don't get enough sleep, I feel tired the next day.

2 التعبير عن الحقائق العامة :

ex. - If / When we boil water, it turns into steam.  
= If/When water is boiled, it turns into steam.  
= If boiled, water turns into steam.

3 إذا كانت الحقيقة تخص موقف معين أو محددة بوقت معين نستخدم الحالة الأولى وليس الحالة الصفيرية:

ex. - If it rains heavily, streets become wet. (حقيقة عامة - حالة صفيرية)  
- If it rains heavily tonight, streets will become wet. (موقف محدد - حالة أولي)  
- If we water plants regularly, they grow well. (حقيقة عامة - حالة صفيرية)  
- If we water these plants regularly, they will grow well. (موقف محدد - حالة أولي)

## Mini Test 1

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I take a rest ..... I feel stressed.  
a. unless                      b. if                      c. when                      d. b & c
- Ice melts if the weather temperature .....  
a. rises                      b. is risen                      c. rose                      d. had risen

3. What ..... if chocolate is left in the sun?  
 a. had happened    b. would happen    c. happens    d. is happened

## 2 First conditional

الحالة الأولى

If / Unless + مضارع بسيط + .... will / can / may + inf. ....

Statement  
الجملة الخبرية

- ex. - If he works hard, he'll pass the next exam.  
 = He'll pass the next exam if he works hard.

Will / Can / May + subj. + inf. .... + if + مضارع بسيط ... ?

Yes / No Q.  
السؤال بـ (هل)

- ex. - Will he pass the next exam if he works hard?  
 = If he works hard, will he pass the next exam?

Q.W. + will / can / may + subj. + inf. .... + if + مضارع بسيط ... ?

'Wh-' Q.  
السؤال بأداة  
استفهام

- ex. - What will happen if he works hard?  
 = If he works hard, what will happen?

### Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ تعبر الحالة الشرطية الأولى عن مواقف قابلة للحدوث في المستقبل :

ex. - If I have enough money, I will buy a car. (I believe I'll have enough money).

٢ يمكن أن تحل (can - may - might - must - should) محل (will) في جملة جواب الشرط

في الحالة الشرطية الأولى - لاحظ المثال التالي :

- ex. - If I feel hungry at work, I will have a snack. (متأكد sure)  
 - If I feel hungry at work, I may have a snack. (من المحتمل probably)  
 - If I feel hungry at work, I might have a snack. (من الممكن possibly)  
 - If I feel hungry at work, I must have a snack. (ضرورة necessity)  
 - If you can't do the job, you should apologise. (نصيحة/advice) أو اقتراح (suggestion)

٣ لا نستخدم المستقبل بعد (if) مباشرة لكن نستخدم المضارع البسيط :

ex. - If I (will follow - follow) a diet, I will get fit.

- What will you buy if you (have - will have) a million dollars? If I feel hungry at work, I can have a snack. (قدرة / إمكانية / ability / possibility)



## Mini Test 2

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- If my glasses ....., it will be difficult for me to drive.  
a. breaks                      b. break                      c. are broken                      d. b & c
- My mother ..... sad if I pass the exam.  
a. is                      b. will be                      c. won't be                      d. doesn't be
- ..... it easy if he knows that I have dropped his mobile?  
a. Will he take                      b. Does he take  
c. What will he take                      d. What does he take
- What will happen if our car ..... out of petrol on the desert road?  
a. run                      b. runs                      c. is run                      d. will run

ملاحظات تساعدك على حل سؤال الاختيار من متعدد

١ استخدم المضارع البسيط بعد (if) إذا كانت جملة جواب الشرط تتكون من أحدي الصيغ التالية :

1. **Inf. / Don't + inf. / Never + inf. ....**

(جملة أمر أو نهى)

ex. - Don't eat too much fat if you (want – wanted – had wanted) to lose weight.

- If one of your friends (has – had – had had) a problem, help him/her.

2. **Let's + inf. ....**

ex. - Let's take a rest and have a drink if you (are – were – had been) tired.

3. .... **had better ('d better) + inf. ....**

ex. - You'd better work hard if you (hope – hoped – had hoped) to succeed.

4. .... **would rather ('d rather) + inf. ....**

ex. - I'd rather stay at home if the weather (is – was – had been) windy.

٢ استخدم (will + inf.) في جملة جواب الشرط إذا كان فعل الشرط أحد الصيغ التالية :

1. **If + subj. (would like / would love / would prefer.....)**

ex. - If you would like to attend the party, I (will go – would go – would have gone) with you.

2. **If + subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing ....**

(مضارع مستمر)

ex. - She (won't go – wouldn't go – wouldn't have gone) out if she is revising for her exams.

3. **If + subj. + have / has + p.p.**

(مضارع تام)

ex. - If he has left home, you (won't be – wouldn't be – wouldn't have been) able to meet him.

٣ لاحظ الفرق بين (if / in case) :

تعلي (if) أن الحدث سيقع إذا توفر شرط معين، فإذا لم يتوفر الشرط لن يحدث شيئاً:

ex. - I'll stay at home if it rains. (But I won't stay at home if it doesn't rain)

تستخدم (in case) بمعنى (في حالة) لتدل على أننا سلقوم بشيء ما تحسباً لحدث شيء معين:

ex. - I'll stay at home in case it rains. (I'll stay at home because it may rain)

### Mini Test 3

Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
- Don't go out if you ..... exhausted.  
a. will feel      b. feel      c. felt      d. are felt
  - If you need help at any time, ..... me.  
a. has called      b. would call      c. will call      d. call
  - Let's go for a walk if you ..... bored.  
a. were      b. have      c. are      d. b & c
  - If you ..... a headache, you'd better take a rest.  
a. have      b. will have      c. had      d. had had
  - I'd rather take a taxi if the weather ..... hot.  
a. is      b. was      c. had been      d. will be
  - I ..... a ticket if you would prefer to travel by plane.  
a. books      b. booked      c. would book      d. will book

### 3 Second conditional

الحالة الثانية

**Statement** الجملة الخبرية  
**If / Unless + ماضي بسيط (تصريف ثان) + would / could / might + inf.**  
 → ex. - If he **trained** hard, he'd **win** the match.  
 = He'd **win** the match **if** he **trained** hard.

**Yes / No Q.** السؤال بـ (هل)  
**Would / Could / Might + subj. + inf. + if + ماضي بسيط ?**  
 → ex. - **Would** he **win** the match **if** he **trained** hard?  
 = **If** he **trained** hard, **would** he **win** the match?

**'Wh-' Q.** السؤال بأداة استفهام  
**Q.W. + would / could / might + subj. + inf. + if + ماضي بسيط ?**  
 → ex. - What **would** he **do** if he **trained** hard?  
 = **If** he **trained** hard, what **would** he **do**?

### Mini Test 4

Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
- If you went out in that rainy weather, you ..... get wet.  
a. will      b. won't      c. would      d. wouldn't
  - She'd lose weight if she ..... a diet.  
a. follow      b. followed      c. would follow      d. will follow



3. What ..... if the car hit this rock?  
a. happen                      b. happens                      c. will happen                      d. would happen
4. What ..... if the car hits this rock?  
a. happened                      b. happening                      c. will happen                      d. would happen

### Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ تعبر الحالة الثانية عن مواقف تخيلية أو غير محتملة الحدوث في الوقت الحاضر والمستقبل:  
ex. - If he **were** taller, he'd be good at basketball.

٢ إعطاء النصيحة بالصيغة (If I were ... ):  
ex. - If I **were** you, I **would see** a doctor. You look very ill.  
- لاحظ إمكانية استخدام (were) مع المفرد في حالة التخيل والنصيحة في الحالة الثانية:  
ex. - Nada **is** ill today. If she **were / was** healthy, she **would help** you.

### ملاحظات تساعدك على حل سؤال الاختيار من متعدد

١ الأفعال (cut – put – hit – shut – read...) البسيط إذا لم يضاف لها (s) مع (he – she – it) لا تتغير عند تصريفها وتعتبر في الماضي  
ex. - If he **shut** the door to the farm, the animals (**won't – wouldn't**) go out.

٢ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had + noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار (would + inf.)  
ex. - If Abdu **had** a camera, I (will borrow– **would borrow**– would have borrowed) it from him.

٣ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had to + inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار (would + inf.)  
ex. - If we **had to** work at the weekend, we (will get– **would get**– would have got) a reward.

٤ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have+ noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار ماضي بسيط  
ex. - If Sama (win – **won** – had won) the competition, she **would have** a prize.

٥ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have to+ inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار ماضي بسيط  
ex. - If Omar (spends – **spent** – had spent) all his money, he **would have to** borrow.

٦ من الممكن استخدام التصريف الثالث للفعل كصفة  
ex. - If the company **had motivated** employees, it **would** make more profits.  
- If I **had written** work, I **would** do it before going to bed.

### Mini Test 5 Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If she were fit, she would take part in the race. This means she ..... fit.  
a. is                      b. isn't                      c. wasn't                      d. would be
2. If I ..... a bird, I'd live in a nest.  
a. were                      b. was                      c. a & b                      d. wasn't

3. I ..... you if I had enough time.  
 a. would have called                      b. will call  
 c. called                                        d. would call
4. If I had to see a doctor, that ..... Dr Alaa.  
 a. would be                                    b. would have been  
 c. will be                                        d. is
5. The police officer ..... you if your car boot had stolen goods.  
 a. would arrest                                b. would have arrested  
 c. will arrest                                    d. arrests

## 4 Third conditional

الحالة الثالثة

**Statement** الجملة الخبرية  
**if + had + p.p.... + would / could / might + have + p.p.**  
 → ex. - If he **had won** the competition, he'd **have got** the prize.  
 = He'd **have got** the prize if he **had won** the competition.

**Yes / No Q.** السؤال بـ (هل)  
**Would + subj. + have + p.p. + if + had + p.p. ?** ماضى تام ...  
 → ex. - **Would** he **have got** the prize **if** he **had won** the competition?

**'Wh-' Q.** السؤال بإدابة استفسار  
**Q.W. + would + subj. + have + p.p. + if + had + p.p. ?** ماضى تام ...  
 → ex. - **What** **would** he **have got** if he **had won** the competition?  
 = **If** he **had won** the competition, what **would** he **have got**?

- تستخدم الحالة الثالثة فى حالة تخيل عكس ما حدث فى الماضى :

ex. - I didn't feel ill yesterday. If I had felt ill, I would have stayed at home.

### Mini Test 6

Apply

- ⊕ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
- I ..... a nice time if I had been to Alexandria.  
 a. will have                      b. would have                      c. would have had                      d. have
  - If that milk ..... boiled, there would have been no bacteria in it.  
 a. had                                      b. had been                                      c. would be                                      d. would have
  - If I ..... enough time to go home, I would have lunch outdoors.  
 a. had                                      b. didn't have                                      c. had had                                      d. hadn't had



4. "If Amr had come first, he would have got a car as a present." This means Amr ..... the car.  
 a. got                      b. had got                      c. won't get                      d. didn't get

### Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

**1** If = as long as طالما = providing (that) بشرط أن = provided (that) بشرط أن جملة + بشرط أن

**ex.** - If Malak does exercise regularly, she will keep fit.

- As long as Malak does exercise regularly, she will keep fit.

**2** If + جملة = with / by / in case of + noun / (inf. + ing)

**ex.** - If he works hard, he will achieve his goals in life.

= In case of working hard, he will achieve his goals in life.

**3** Unless + جملة = Without / But for لولا / بدون + (inf. + ing) / noun

**ex.** - Unless he earns enough money, he will have to sell his car.

= Without earning enough money, he will have to sell his car.

**4** Unless + جملة ماضي بسيط = If it weren't for + (inf. + ing) / noun

**ex.** - Unless he had enough time, he wouldn't help me.

= If it weren't for having enough time, he wouldn't help me.

**5** Unless + جملة ماضي تام = If it hadn't been for + (inf. + ing) / noun

**ex.** - Unless he had arrived early at the station, he would have missed the train.

= If it hadn't been for arriving early at the station, he would have missed the train.

**6** If + جملة مضارع / ماضي بسيط = Should + subj. + inf. ....

- If he has a lot of money, he will help poor children.

= Should he have a lot of money, he will help poor children.

**7** If + جملة ماضي بسيط = Were + subj. + (to + inf. ....) / Were + subj. + .....

- If you phoned me, I would come. = Were you to phone me, I would come.

- If I were taller, I would join a basketball team.

= Were I taller, I would join a basketball team.

**8** If + subj. + had + اسم = Had + subj. + اسم .....

- If I had a car, I would drive you home.

= Had I a car, I would drive you home.

**9** If + subj. + had + p. p. = Had + subj. + p. p. ....

- If he had finished the report, he would have left the office.

= Had he finished the report, he would have left the office.

**Mini Test 7****Apply**

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- ..... she works hard, she can achieve her goal.  
a. Unless      b. As long as      c. With      d. Without
- ..... hard work, she can achieve her goal.  
a. Unless      b. As long as      c. With      d. Without
- ..... she works hard, she won't achieve her goal.  
a. Unless      b. As long as      c. With      d. Without
- ..... working hard, she won't achieve her goal.  
a. Unless      b. As long as      c. With      d. Without

**Exercise On Language****Apply**

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

**1 Exercises from Previous Exams**

- If ice gets hot, it .....  
a. melts      b. won't melt  
c. would melt      d. would have melted
- If you look at the sky tonight, you ..... the stars. (المنوفية - أشمون ٢٠٢٤)  
a. see      b. will see      c. don't see      d. would see
- If you look at the sky at night, you usually ..... the stars.  
a. see      b. will see      c. don't see      d. would see
- If metals ....., they expand. (الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. heating      b. are heated      c. will heat      d. heated
- He won't do any work ..... you pay him first.  
a. without      b. in order to      c. until      d. unless
- I ..... a headache if I spend too long on the computer. (القاهرة - المستقبل ٢٠٢٤)  
a. get      b. would get      c. gets      d. are got
- When you leave iron in the open air, it ..... (القاهرة - العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)  
a. will rust      b. rust      c. rusts      d. would rust
- If you ..... in my shoes, you would be happy like me. (كفر الشيخ - كفر شكر ٢٠٢٤)  
a. were      b. are      c. had      d. had been
- If he read the newspaper, he ..... all the current news. (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)  
a. would know      b. will know      c. knows      d. 'd have known



10. I'm sorry; if I ..... free time, I'd have met you yesterday. (الجزيرة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. had                      b. had had                      c. have                      d. would have
11. What ..... if you had missed the bus to work yesterday? (القبليوية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. did you do                      b. you would have done  
 c. would you have done                      d. would you do
12. If she ..... very rich, she would have bought that expensive car. (القبليوية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. is                      b. can be                      c. were                      d. had been
13. I'd have that mobile if I ..... enough money. (المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. have                      b. had                      c. had had                      d. had been
14. There is a possibility that Jack will be late. If so, I ..... his place. (السوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. will be taken                      b. take                      c. will take                      d. 'd take
15. .... our goalkeeper, we would have lost the match. (السوان - ادفو ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. In case of                      b. If it weren't for  
 c. If it hadn't been for                      d. Unless
16. Without taking a taxi, you ..... have arrived late. (الأقصر - إسنا ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. couldn't                      b. shouldn't                      c. could                      d. should
17. .... he have enough money, he will be able to buy the book. (الجزيرة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. Should                      b. In case of                      c. If                      d. Unless
18. If Salma set the table for lunch, she ..... the dishes. (الجزيرة - الصف ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. will wash                      b. won't wash  
 c. wouldn't wash                      d. would be washed
19. If it ..... for your mobile, I couldn't phone the police for help. (الدقهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. isn't                      b. weren't                      c. hadn't been                      d. hasn't been
20. If I had used clothes, I ..... them to charities. (الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. would give                      b. will give  
 c. would have given                      d. must give
21. .... his courage, he wouldn't have been rewarded. (المنيا - مطاي ٢٠٢٤)  
 a. In case of                      b. If  
 c. If it weren't for                      d. Without
22. Write down your name on your book ..... you lose it. (الشرقية مشنول السوق ٢٠٢٣)  
 a. if                      b. in case                      c. in case of                      d. unless

23. .... Adel be taller, he would join the basketball team. (الفيوم - ابطسا ٢٠٢٣)
- a. If                      b. Should                      c. Were                      d. Had
24. .... they had much time, they would have studied better. (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٤)
- a. If                      b. Were                      c. Should                      d. Had
25. .... walking is useful, I will practise it. (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٤)
- a. Unless                      b. In case of                      c. Without                      d. If
26. We'll hire a car when we get there ..... it's not too expensive. (المنوفية - الباجور ٢٠٢٤)
- a. supposing                      b. don't                      c. providing                      d. wouldn't
27. If he had broken bones, he ..... walk for his work. (المنيا - منوي ٢٠٢٤)
- a. could                      b. can't                      c. will                      d. couldn't

## 2 Check your understanding

28. If I were you. I would work to a plan. This sentence means you ..... to a plan. (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٣)
- a. should have worked                      b. could have worked  
c. should work                      d. shouldn't work
29. "If I were tall enough, I would join the police." This means that I ..... tall enough. (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٤)
- a. am                      b. am not                      c. was                      d. wasn't
30. If I spoke German, I would ask German tourists about their favorite food. This means I ..... German. (المنيا - سمالوط ٢٠٢٤)
- a. don't speak                      b. have spoken                      c. could speak                      d. won't speak







## PART I VOCABULARY

### 1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bring ... back (phr. v)	يُذَكِّر - يُعيد ذكري	hang out with (phr. v)	يُعاشر- يَلف - يَرافِق
fall out (phr. v)	يتشاجر - يتساقط	keep in touch (with)	يُبقِي على اتصال (بِ)
get into (phr. v)	يُندمج - يَلف - يَورط في	lose touch (with)	تُقطع علاقته (بِ)
get on with (phr. v)	يُحسِن التَعامَل مع		

### 2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

apparently (adv)	من الواضح - ظاهرياً	opposite (adv - prep.)	في مواجهة
caption (n)	تَعلِيق / تَعلِيق	organise (d) (v)	يُنظِم
close (adj)	مَقْرَب	own (ed) (v)	يَملك
feedback (n)	التَظايع / مُردود	pocket (n)	جِيب
friendship (n)	صداقة	polite (adj)	مؤدَّب
guess (ed) (v)	يُخَمِّن	pretty (adj)	جَميل
ignore (d) (v)	يَجاهل	prompt (n)	عامل مُحفِّز - باعث
leader (n)	قائد	relationship (n)	علاقة
mall (n)	مركز تجاري (مول)	reunion (n)	جمع التَشمَل
memory (n)	ذكري - ذاكرة	sadly (adv)	من الفَحْز - بِحزن
necklace (n)	قلادة - عُنُق		

### 3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
<b>bring back (phr. v)</b> يُذَكِّر - يُعيد ذكري	to make you remember
<b>fall out (phr. v)</b> بتشاجر	- to stop being friendly - to have a quarrel مشاجرة
<b>get into (phr. v)</b> يُندمج - يَلف - يَستسيغ	- to start enjoying - to begin to enjoy something or be interested in it
<b>get on with (phr. v)</b> يُحسِن التَعامَل مع	to be friendly with

<b>hang out with (phr. v)</b> يُعاشر - يالف - يُرافق	to spend time with
<b>keep in touch with</b> يبقي على اتصال بـ	to continue to communicate with
<b>lose touch</b> تنقطع علاقته بـ	to stop communicating

## Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

### 1 Definitions

- To ..... is to make you remember. (اللقصر - إسنا ٢٠٢٤)
  - lose touch
  - keep in touch with
  - bring back
  - get into
- To ..... is to stop being friendly or to have a quarrel.
  - hang out with
  - get on with
  - get into
  - fall out
- To ..... is to start enjoying or to begin to enjoy something or be interested in it.
  - lose touch
  - keep in touch with
  - bring back
  - get into
- To ..... is to be friendly with.
  - hang out with
  - get on with
  - get into
  - fall out
- To ..... is to spend time with someone.
  - hang out with
  - get on with
  - get into
  - fall out
- To ..... is to continue to communicate with someone.
  - lose touch
  - keep in touch with
  - bring back
  - get into
- To ..... is to stop communicating.
  - lose touch
  - keep in touch with
  - bring back
  - get into

### 2 Key vocabulary

- As we grow old, some of our teeth begin to deteriorate and ..... . (سوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢٤)
  - pile
  - lose touch
  - hang out
  - fall out
- I'm not good at ..... in touch with other friends when I am busy or away. (كفر الشيخ - الرياض ٢٠٢٤)
  - having
  - keeping
  - losing
  - going



10. He used to ..... out with his friends at a café playing chess.  
(الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٤)  
a. keep                      b. hang                      c. fall                      d. break
11. The trip ..... back a lot of happy memories.  
(الاسماعيلية - ابو صوير ٢٠٢٤)  
a. took                      b. sent                      c. bought                      d. brought
12. Omar and I are no longer friends. I have ..... with him.  
(كفر الشيخ - بيلا ٢٠٢٤)  
a. fallen out                      b. hung out                      c. got into                      d. kept in
13. Sociable people ..... others whether they know them or not.  
(الفيوم - يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٤)  
a. go on                      b. fall out                      c. get on with                      d. fall out with
14. You can press "unfriend" when you want to ..... friends on social media.  
a. lose touch with                      b. keep in touch with  
c. subscribe to                      d. upload

### 3 Important Vocabulary

15. He paid great attention to the instructor and gave him positive .....  
(القليوبية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٤)  
a. assistant                      b. friendship                      c. communication                      d. feedback
16. If you turn your back to someone, it means you ..... them.  
(المنيا - ابو قرقاص ٢٠٢٤)  
a. apologize                      b. ignore                      c. subscribe                      d. shelter
17. Winning the gold medal is a happy ..... I will never forget.  
a. attention                      b. memory                      c. donation                      d. relationship
18. ...., everything went well. That's clear to everyone.  
a. Apparently                      b. Alone                      c. Sadly                      d. Completely
19. My mother cares very much about family .....  
a. reunion                      b. tone                      c. distraction                      d. regret
20. The housing problem is the ..... interest of the government this year.  
a. main                      b. lonely                      c. disappointed                      d. foggy
21. We are not friends. We have an employer-employee .....  
a. attention                      b. memory                      c. donation                      d. relationship
22. Our ..... is more important to me than business. I can't do without *عن يستغني* you.  
a. leader                      b. assistant                      c. feedback                      d. friendship
23. ...., she refused our help. We knew she needed it badly.  
a. Only                      b. Alone                      c. Sadly                      d. Lonely
24. His strong character and decisiveness *الحزم* make him a good .....  
a. leader                      b. assistant                      c. feedback                      d. friendship

## PART II

# VOCABULARY STUDY

### 1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

feel	ignored	يشعر بالتجاهل	have	a bad relationship with	يكون علي علاقة سيئة بـ
	uncomfortable	يشعر بعدم الارتياح		keep	attention on
get	worse	يزداد سوء	share	sad moments with	يحزن لاجل / مع
give	... a smile	يبتسم لـ ...	take	interest in	يهتم بـ
go	past	يمر بـ / يجتاز		a taxi	يستقل تاكسي
have	a cold	يعاني من نزلة برد			

### 2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
apparently	ظاهرياً
apparently	من الواضح
close	قريب جداً - مُقَرَّب
ignore	يتجاهل
relationship	علاقة
	seemingly
	clearly, obviously
	near, nearby, intimate
	disregard, pay no attention to
	relation, connection, tie, link

### 3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
close	قريب جداً - مُقَرَّب	distant, far, faraway	بعيد
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين
ignore	يتجاهل	pay attention to, be concerned with	يهتم بـ

### 4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

according to	حسب / طبقاً لـ	go back in time	يتذكر ما مضي - يعود بالزمن
as a gift from me to	كهدية مني لـ	go on a picnic	يذهب في نزهة
as usual	كالمعتاد	in contact with	علي اتصال بـ
as well	ايضاً	in the middle of	في منتصف
bad for	ضار بـ	upload ... to a website	يرفع ... علي موقع
be friendly with	ودود مع	well-written	مكتوب جيداً
get in touch with	يتواصل مع		



## 5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

argue with	يتجادل مع	learn from	يتعلم من
care about	يهتم لأمر	move away	يبتعد
communicate with	يتواصل مع	pick up	يتناول - يلتقط
continue to	يستمر في	thank ... for	يشكر ... علي
forget to	ينسى أن		

## 6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

## get on with ≠ fall out with

- **get on with + شخص (phr. v)** يحسب التعامل مع - يكون علي علاقة جيدة بـ  
- I have two close friends whom I **get on with**.
- **get on with + شئ (phr. v)** يستمر في القيام بـ  
- Stop talking and **get on with** your task, Salma.
- **get on + (phr. v)** يتأقلم  
- After two weeks, Sama started to **get on** at her new school.
- **fall out with + شخص = to have a quarrel with (phr. v)** يتشاجر مع  
- Don't **fall out with** people or you will have no friends.
- **fall out (phr. v)** يتساقط - يسقط  
- A lot of girls suffer from their hair **falling out**.

## hang out with ≠ spend no time with

- **hang out + (with) شخص** يقضي وقت طويل (مع شخص / في مكان)  
- Can you tell me who you have been **hanging out with**?  
- I don't know where Karim **hangs out**.  
لاحظ أن الفعل (hang) بهذا المعنى تصريفه الثاني والثالث (hung) أما إذا كان الفعل (hang) بمعنى (يعدم) يكون فعل منتظم ويُصَرَّف بإضافة (ed).
- **spend no time + (with) شخص** لا يقضي وقت مع  
- My father is so busy that he nearly **spends no time with** us at home.

## keep in touch (with) ≠ lose touch (with)

- **keep in (close) touch + (with) شخص** يبقي علي تواصل مع  
- Video calls help me **keep in touch with** my brother in Saudi Arabia.  
- My mother **keeps in close contact with** us all.
- **lose touch + (with) شخص** يفقد التواصل مع  
- He travelled abroad long years ago and I **lost touch with** him.

### get into ≠ stop being interested in

- **get into (phr. v)** يبدأ في الاستمتاع بـ - يألف - ينخرط في  
- A student who is not sociable finds it difficult to **get into** new friendships.
- **get into / in + مكان (phr. v)** يدخل - **get in** (ب / بدون مكان)  
- The door is locked, so I can't **get into / in** our flat.  
- The door is locked, so I can't **get in**. (Not: get into)
- **stop being interested in** يفقد الاهتمام بـ  
- Rami **stopped being interested in** football.

### bring back

- **bring ... back (phr. v)** يُذكر - يُعيد ذكرى  
- Seeing any of my old friends **brings back** a lot of childhood memories.  
= Seeing any of my old friends **brings** a lot of childhood memories **back**.
- **bring ... back (phr. v)** يُعيد - يستعيد - يعيد استخدام أو استعمال  
- My father has decided to **bring back** our old house.  
- The city council has decided to **bring back** (reintroduce) the old electric trams.

## Exercise On Vocabulary study

### • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Amr spent a lot of time watching TV and just hanging ..... with some friends. (المنوفاة - الباجور ٢٠٢٤)  
a. in                      b. on                      c. out                      d. at
- A true friend is hard to find! Do not ..... touch with your good friends. (بني سويف - الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)  
a. keep                      b. get                      c. lose                      d. stay
- I felt ....., so I left the party.  
a. connected                      b. contacted                      c. ignored                      d. included
- "He is apparently kind." This means I am ..... he is really kind.  
a. sure                      b. certain                      c. not sure                      d. against
- "He didn't pay attention to me." This means he ..... me.  
a. ignored                      b. welcomed                      c. hanged out                      d. got into
- "I have a close friend." This means this friend is .....  
a. distant                      b. intimate                      c. far                      d. faraway
- After leaving school, try hard to ..... in contact with your schoolmates.  
a. make                      b. keep                      c. pay                      d. take
- I forgot ..... the door. This means I didn't close it.  
a. to close                      b. closing                      c. close                      d. closes



9. Mrs Amira thanked us ..... our hard work.  
a. for                      b. into                      c. off                      d. with
10. According ..... experts, gold prices will rise again.  
a. of                      b. to                      c. from                      d. into
11. The red light is on. This means I can't get .....  
a. to                      b. into                      c. in                      d. b& c
12. What surprises me is that Amir, the quiet and shy خجول young man, has recently ..... politics.  
a. spent no time with                      b. stopped being interested in  
c. got into                      d. fallen out with

## PART III READING & LISTENING

### 1 Reading Texts

#### How are your friendships?

WB page (39)

Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and, **in the middle of**<sup>(1)</sup> a conversation, when you're talking, they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people **feel ignored**<sup>(2)</sup> and upset. And the problem may be **getting worse**<sup>(3)</sup> because over 81% of Egyptian teenagers between the ages of 15 and 17 now **own**<sup>(4)</sup> a phone.



Studies have shown that just having a mobile phone out while **having a conversation**<sup>(5)</sup> makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other. And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being **polite**<sup>(6)</sup> and not really listening. So, using a phone like this can **damage**<sup>(7)</sup> even good **friendships**<sup>(8)</sup>.

However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends. Understanding the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to **pick up**<sup>(9)</sup> your phone while talking to a friend, think about what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more important than your friend? Perhaps you should **keep your attention on**<sup>(10)</sup> the person you are talking to.

And if a friend ignores you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it makes you feel.

So, if you want to be a kind and **honest**<sup>(11)</sup> friend, keep your phone in your **pocket**<sup>(12)</sup> and your eyes on your friendship.

- (1) في منتصف  
(2) يشعر بالتجاهل  
(3) يزداد سوء  
(4) يمتلك  
(5) يتحاور  
(6) مؤدب  
(7) يُدمر - يُفسيد  
(8) صداقات  
(9) يتناول - يلتقط  
(10) تظل متنبهاً إلى  
(11) أمين  
(12) جيب

## 2 Listening Texts



(SB page 66)

### Presenter:

In today's show, we're **going back in time**<sup>(1)</sup> and looking at some of our **regrets**<sup>(2)</sup>. Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that, I think, will **bring back**<sup>(3)</sup> **memories**<sup>(4)</sup> for many of us. This is what he says ...

I used to talk to my family and play with my brothers after school! I also used to **phone**<sup>(5)</sup> my grandparents and my cousins. But then I **got into**<sup>(6)</sup> using social media more.

I started using social media to talk to my friends after school too. We all liked the same things. It was fun and we all **got on with**<sup>(7)</sup> each other. Sometimes I'd **hang out with**<sup>(8)</sup> them online for hours chatting.

I **guess**<sup>(9)</sup> I **lost touch with**<sup>(10)</sup> my cousins and my grandparents a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I didn't call them. I didn't tell my grandparents about my day at school.

But when my friends started **falling out with**<sup>(11)</sup> each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too. Now, I'm sorry. I shouldn't have **ignored**<sup>(12)</sup> my family. I wish I'd **kept in touch with**<sup>(13)</sup> my cousins more. I should have called my grandparents, and I wish I could change what happened.

**Sadly**<sup>(14)</sup>, this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're getting into something new, we can forget to **take an interest in**<sup>(15)</sup> the people who really care about us. Thank you for sharing your story with us, Tarek.

- (1) نتذكر ما مضى
- (2) الندم
- (3) يُعيد
- (4) ذكريات
- (5) يتصل
- (6) يالف
- (7) يُحسِن التعامل مع
- (8) يقضي وقتاً طويلاً مع
- (9) يُخفّن
- (10) ينقطع الإتصال مع
- (11) يتشاجر مع
- (12) يتجاهل
- (13) يبقى على تواصل مع
- (14) من المُحزن
- (15) يُظهر اهتماماً بـ

### Prep School Memories

(WB page 38)

**Hoda** : Hey Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola? She's posted some old photos from when we were in prep school.

**Lamia** : Really? Let's see. But, I **don't remember an Ola**<sup>(1)</sup> in our class.



(1) لا أتذكر أحداً يُسمّي علا



**Hoda** : Yes, you do. She used to sit **opposite**<sup>(2)</sup> you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you **both**<sup>(3)</sup> wanted to be the **leaders**<sup>(4)</sup>.

**Lamia** : Ahhh, yes. I remember now. I shouldn't have **argued with**<sup>(5)</sup> her so much because she was a kind person really.

**Hoda** : Look. Here she is in the photo.

**Lamia** : Ahh, wow!

**Hoda** : ... and look at us! Oh, no way! Just look at your hair!

**Lamia** : Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!

**Hoda** : Oh, no! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories. That was the dress I was **wearing**<sup>(6)</sup> when I lost my favourite **necklace**<sup>(7)</sup>. I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.

**Lamia** : But the necklace was very pretty and if you hadn't taken it to school, Samira wouldn't have **spoken to**<sup>(8)</sup> you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!

**Hoda** : That's true! I guess, and we are still very good friends now.

**Lamia** : And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they **moved away**<sup>(9)</sup> to go to high school and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.

**Hoda** : Yes, we had some great times together and if we had **stayed in touch**<sup>(10)</sup>, we would have been able to **organise**<sup>(11)</sup> a school **reunion**<sup>(12)</sup>. I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!

**Lamia** : That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.

**Hoda** : Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.

(2) في مواجهة

(3) كل من

(4) قائد

(5) يتجادل مع

(6) يرتدي

(7) قلادة - عقد

(8) يتحدث إلي

(9) يتبعد

(10) يبقى علي اتصال

(11) ينظم

(12) جمع الشمل

**Judy:**

SB page (67)

Huda was my best friend. We'd **always**<sup>(1)</sup> hang out together at school. We made each other **laugh**<sup>(2)</sup> a lot and we were very **close**<sup>(3)</sup>.

Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school **as well**<sup>(4)</sup>. We'd listen to music, look at magazines and chat for hours.

(1) اعتاد ان

(2) يضحك

(3) مقرب

(4) ايضاً

One weekend, we went shopping at the mall<sup>(5)</sup>. We had a great time as usual<sup>(6)</sup>, but that was when she showed me her new smartphone.

Apparently<sup>(7)</sup>, it was a really good phone and Huda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

(5) مركز تجاري (مول)

(6) كالمعتاد

(7) من الواضح - ظاهرياً

## PART IV LANGUAGE

### Expressing Regret التعبير عن الندم

هناك عديدة للتعبير عن الندم منها :

1 **Subj. + Should / Shouldn't + have + p.p.**

You should have studied **hard.**

كان من المفترض أن تذاكر بجد. (لكن ذلك لم يحدث).

- Karim shouldn't have wasted his time.

كان من المفترض ألا يضيع كريم وقته. (لكنه فعل).

2 **If + جملة ماضى تام + ... would have + p.p.**

If he had trained hard, he **would have** won the match.

لو أنه تدرّب كان سيفوز. (لكنه لم يتدرّب وبالتالي لم يفوز)

3 **... wish + (that) + جملة ماضى تام**

I wish (that) **he had driven at a low speed.**

أتمنى لو أنه قاد بسرعة منخفضة. (لكنه لم يفعل)

I wish (that) **he hadn't driven at a high speed.**

أتمنى لو أنه لم يقود بسرعة عالية. (لكنه فعل)

عند التعبير عن شيء غير متحقق في المضارع نستخدم جملة ماضى بسيط بعد (wish) :

ex. - I wish I **lived** in Alexandria. It **is** very hot here in Aswan.



## Mini Test

Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- He's sorry he hurt your feelings. He really ..... to you like that.
  - should talk
  - shouldn't talk
  - should have talked
  - shouldn't have talked
- I work as a sales assistant. I wish I ..... the chance to study medicine at university when I was a student.
  - have
  - had
  - had had
  - could have
- I wasted my time last year. If I ..... it, I would have got the full mark.
  - had wasted
  - hadn't wasted
  - wasted
  - didn't waste
- I ate too much and now I feel ill. I wish that I ..... that much.
  - had eaten
  - hadn't eaten
  - ate
  - didn't eat

## Exercise On Language

Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

## 1 Step-by-step exercises

- If her father ..... alive, he would be pleased with her work.
  - is
  - was been
  - were
  - had been
- He won't catch the train if he ..... soon.
  - didn't pack
  - will not pack
  - hadn't packed
  - doesn't pack
- If it doesn't rain tomorrow, I ..... to the library.
  - go
  - will go
  - have gone
  - would go
- If I ..... younger, I'd work in the New Delta Project.
  - were
  - am
  - have been
  - had been
- If Hisham ..... with us, he would have a good time.
  - would come
  - had come
  - would have come
  - came
- Would you have lent him the money if you ..... how badly he needed it ?
  - had known
  - knew
  - would know
  - have known
- If the book were cheap, I ..... buy it.
  - will
  - would
  - can
  - may
- If you don't stop listening to that loud music, your headache ..... worse.
  - got
  - will get
  - would get
  - gets



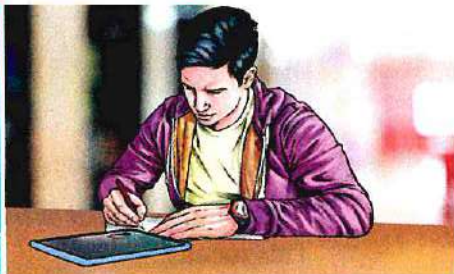


25. If they had a strong will, they ..... the match. (القبليوية - بينها ٢٣-٢٠)  
 a. will win      b. would win      c. won      d. would have won
26. If you pour oil on water, it ..... (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٣-٢٠)  
 a. will float      b. would float      c. float      d. floats
27. If he ..... abroad, he would have a lot of money. (البحيرة - الدلتجات ٢٣-٢٠)  
 a. travels      b. had travelled      c. travelled      d. has travelled
28. If ice ....., it melts. (القبليوية - بينها ٢٣-٢٠)  
 a. heat      b. is heated      c. heated      d. was heated
29. .... having free time, let's have coffee together.  
 a. Without      b. In case of      c. If      d. Unless
30. If the company proposed a good salary, ..... the job?  
 a. would you accept      b. will you accept  
 c. would have you accepted      d. do you accept
31. If he ....., he would have to attend the party.  
 a. had been invited      b. had invited  
 c. invited      d. was invited
32. We ..... at home if it hadn't rained.  
 a. would stay      b. would have stayed  
 c. wouldn't have stayed      d. wouldn't stay
33. I wouldn't have been late if the train ..... early. (الفيوم - أبشواي ٢٣-٢٠)  
 a. had arrived      b. arrived      c. hadn't arrived      d. didn't arrive
34. If Ahmed had read that book, he ..... what happened at the end. (الفيوم - شرق الفيوم ٢٣-٢٠)  
 a. would have known      b. knows  
 c. would know      d. will know
35. .... he been careful, he wouldn't have had that terrible accident. (المنيا - العدوة ٢٣-٢٠)  
 a. If      b. Unless      c. But for      d. Had
36. .... he run, he would have caught the train.  
 a. If      b. Had      c. Should      d. Were
37. .... he a car, he'd give me a lift. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٣-٢٠)  
 a. Were      b. Had      c. Should      d. If
38. .... working hard, you won't achieve your dreams.  
 a. If      b. Unless      c. Without      d. As long as
39. If the money I had ..... enough, I'd have rented a better flat. (البحيرة - أبو المطاير ٢٣-٢٠)  
 a. been      b. was      c. had      d. had been
40. If the coach had talented players, he ..... the final match.  
 a. wouldn't have won      b. would have won  
 c. would win      d. will win

### 3 Check your understanding

41. "Abdulrahman can achieve great success because he is intelligent."  
This means .....
- a. if he is intelligent, he achieves great success
  - b. if he weren't intelligent, he wouldn't achieve great success
  - c. if he were intelligent, he would not achieve great success
  - d. if he had been intelligent, he would have achieved great success
42. "If he were tall, he would play basketball." What does this mean?
- a. He is tall but he can't play basketball.
  - b. He is tall, so he can play basketball.
  - c. He wouldn't play basketball because he wasn't tall.
  - d. He won't play basketball because he isn't tall.
43. "We didn't make a loss because of your decision." This means .....
- a. if it hadn't been for your decision, we would have made a loss
  - b. if it weren't for your decision, we would make a loss
  - c. but for your decision, we would not have made a loss
  - d. but for your decision, we would make a loss
44. "If you work hard, you will be successful." I want to say that .....
- a. you work hard, so you will be successful
  - b. you won't be successful as you don't work hard
  - c. should you work hard, you will be successful
  - d. you won't be successful even if you work hard
45. "If I feel sick, I'll take some medicine." This means .....
- a. I'll take some medicine in case of feeling sick
  - b. I take some medicine when I feel sick
  - c. I'll take some medicine because I might feel sick
  - d. I'll take some medicine because I feel sick
46. "In case I feel sick, I'll take some medicine." This means .....
- a. I'll take some medicine only if I feel sick
  - b. I'll take some medicine when I feel sick
  - c. I'll take some medicine because I might feel sick
  - d. I'll take some medicine because I feel sick
47. "Had I enough money, I would help you." This means .....
- a. I had enough money, so I helped you
  - b. I don't have enough money, so I can't help you
  - c. I didn't have enough money, so I couldn't help you
  - d. I won't help you although I have enough money





تنويه للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية بنك الأسئلة

## PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

### used to - would

١ للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة نستخدم:

→ ... used to + inf. ... = ... would + inf. ...

- ex. - When I had enough time, I **used to go** to work on foot. (✓)  
- When I had enough time, I **would go** to work on foot. (✓)

٢ نستخدم هذه الصيغ للتعبير عن عادات الماضي في مدي زمني كبير وليس خلال مدة قصيرة، فالعادة لا تسمي هكذا إلا إذا تكررت لفترة طويلة نسبياً:

- ex. - He **used to do** exercise every day **last month**. (✗)  
- He **used to do** exercise every day **when he was young**. (✓)  
- He **did** exercise every day **last month**. (✓)

٣ نستخدم (used to) فقط وليس (would) عند التعبير عن عادات الماضي مع الأفعال التقريرية مثل:

be, like, love, hate, want, need, prefer, own, sound, agree, disagree, know, understand, feel, remember, forget, seem, suppose, contain, ... etc.

- ex. - When I was young, I **would love** to watch cartoons. (✗)  
- When I was young, I **used to love** watching cartoons. (✓)

٤ نستخدم (used to) فقط وليس (would) عند التعبير عن العادات السلوكية البارزة والهامة في الماضي:

- ex. - When he was a young man, he **would smoke**. (✗)  
- When he was a young man, he **used to smoke**. (✓)

### a / an / the + people's names

١ يمكن استخدام (the) قبل اسم العائلة في صيغة الجمع للإشارة إلى العائلة بالكامل:

- ex. - Abdulrahman invited **Ayman** to his wedding. (الدعوة لأيمن فقط)  
- Abdulrahman invited **the Aymans** to his wedding. (الدعوة لأسرة أيمن كلها)

٢ يمكن استخدام (the) قبل اسم شخص لتمييز شخص عن آخرين يحملون نفس الاسم:

- ex. - Don't give the invitation to this Linda. **The Linda** I mean is the woman in the white blouse over there.

٣ يمكن استخدام (a / an) قبل اسم شخص غير معروف بالنسبة للمتحدث:

ex. - There's a **Khalid** waiting for you outside.

(لا يعرف المتحدث أي شيء عن خالد هذا)

ex. - There wasn't an **Ola** in our class last year.

(لا يتذكر المتحدث أنه كان هناك طالبة تُسمَّى غلا)

— **In addition to - Besides - As well as - Also - as well - too** —

١ تُستخدم روابط العطف التالية بمعنى (بالإضافة إلى ذلك) ويأتي بعدها جملة:

→ **In addition, / Besides (that) / + ...** جملة

ex. - She is a secretary. **In addition**, she runs a bookshop.

- She cooked lunch. **Besides (that)**, she did the housework.

٢ تأتي روابط العطف التالية بمعنى (بالإضافة إلى) ويأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير أو (inf.+ing) :

→ **In addition to / Besides / As well as + noun / pronoun** ضمير / (inf. + ing)

ex. - **In addition to going** to the market, we went to the zoo.

- **As well as going** to the market, we went to the zoo.

- **Besides me**, two more friends will visit you.

- **Besides cooking** lunch, she cleaned the house.

٣ لاحظ استخدام (also / as well / too) بمعنى (أيضا) في الجمل المثبتة :

ex. - She visited her aunt. She **also** visited her grandma.

= She visited her aunt. She visited her grandma, **too**.

= She visited her aunt. She visited her grandma **as well**.

٤ لاحظ استخدام (either) بمعنى (أيضا) في الجمل المنفية :

ex. - I **didn't do** my homework. I **didn't take** a rest **either**.

\_\_\_\_\_ **but - However - although - though -**  
\_\_\_\_\_ **even if - despite - in spite of** \_\_\_\_\_

١ تُستخدم الروابط التالية لربط جملتين متناقضتين وتأتي في الوسط فقط :

→ **but** لكن / **however** + مع ذلك جملة ...

ex. - He has a lot of money **but** he is not happy.

- He has a lot of money, **however** he is not happy.

٢ يمكن أن تربط (**but**) صفتين أو طرفين متناقضين :

ex. - He works **quickly but accurately**.

- He is **small but strong**.

- She is **intelligent but lazy**.



٣ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها جملة وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط :

→ **although / though** / برغم أن / **even though / even if + ...** جملة

**ex.** - **Although / Though** she works hard, she has some free time to enjoy herself.  
- She has some free time to enjoy herself **although / though** she works hard.

٤ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير أو (**inf. + ing**) وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط :

→ **Despite / In spite of** من / برغم من / **noun / pronoun** ضمير / (**inf. + ing**)

**ex.** - **Despite having** a lot of money, he is not happy.  
= He is not happy **despite having** a lot of money.

### Exercise On Language Hints

● ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I have told you before. .... Omar you want to meet isn't here. (الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)
- There's no balcony, ....., there's a view. (الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٤)
- ..... Hossam had an injury in his left leg, he finished the match.
- ..... his poor behaviour, Amir is a really sweet boy.
- ..... having plenty of room, the flat is quiet.
- Yes, I remember that there was ..... Omnia among the applicants.
- ..... have travelled to Alexandria.
- Sama ..... lunch every day before she got married.
- Sama ..... lunch every day last week.
- I ..... prefer green, now I prefer pink.

## 1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (الاسكندرية - المنزه ثان ٢٠٢٤)

Every one of us dreams of becoming famous one day or another. Sportsmen and champions of games and sports enjoy great fame. Film stars, singers and musicians are known all over the world. They have admirers and fans that follow them on social media and hang their photographs on the walls of their houses. Politicians and great men are famous people and their fame goes far and wide. Anyhow, fame isn't easily obtained, but it is the result of hard work and suffering.

The life of famous people isn't an easy one. It is very busy and full of troubles and responsibilities. They appear smiling but in fact, they are unhappy and their time is arranged for them. Newspapers and magazines write about **them** and sometimes about their private lives, so this annoys them. Their smallest mistakes appear larger by those who dislike them. Though fame has its troubles, a great number of people desire to get it.

- Famous people may appear smiling although .....
  - they have admirers and fans.
  - their time is arranged for them.
  - they're far from being happy.
  - their fame has gone far.
- "Their time is arranged for them." This means.....
  - they're free to do what they like.
  - their freedom is far.
  - they aren't free to do what they like.
  - they have free time.
- According to the passage, fame is .....
  - easily obtained
  - not easily obtained
  - all good
  - all bad
- Who makes the small mistakes of people sound large? - Their .....
  - fans
  - admirers
  - families
  - enemies
- Many people have the ..... to get fame.
  - desire
  - care
  - trouble
  - policy
- The word "fans" and "admirers" are .....
  - antonyms
  - synonyms
  - opposites
  - collocations



7. Writing about famous people's lives .....them.  
 a. pleases      b. helps      c. bothers      d. ties
8. The underlined word "them" refers to .....  
 a. newspapers      b. magazines      c. famous people      d. lives

## 2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

✦ Write an essay of about 180 words under the title:

### 'If' in my life

Perhaps it seems strange to write under such a title. However it is an easy topic to write about. In this essay, I'm going to use this title in a three-tense sense: a past tense, a present sense and a future one. I'll summarise my life and dreams under this title.

Physically, بدنياً I was overweight in primary school. If I hadn't been born with a natural love of food, I wouldn't have been overweight. I would have had a carved body. No silly schoolmates would have made fun of my appearance.

One day, my PE teacher had a personal talk with me. He told me that I had the ability to get rid of the extra weight. All I needed was strong will إرادة to control my love of food and to follow a strict صارم fitness programme. If it hadn't been for his advice, I would have put on more weight. I wouldn't have got in shape. Now, I am fit and I have the carved body I used to dream of.

I am a secondary school student. I am in secondary two. If I weren't a student, I would have enough time to do my hobbies. I would be able to play football as much as I can. However, that wouldn't be good at all. If I weren't a student, this means I would have no educational dreams and no promising future.

Next year, I will be in secondary three. I will do my best to get the highest marks possible. If I get 99.5 %, I will join the faculty of medicine. Perhaps I will be a successful surgeon. I will travel abroad to improve my skills as a surgeon. I will follow on the footsteps of Professor Magdy Yacoub.

### Writing practice

✦ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

(الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)

*"To err is human"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. It has always been said that failure is instructive. The person who is really intelligent learns much more from his failures than from his successes.

(الجيزة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يُقال دائماً أن الفشل مفيد، فالشخص الذي فعلاً يتعلم من اخفاقاته أكثر بكثير من نجاحاته.  
 b. يُقال دائماً أن الفشل مُرّ، فالشخص الذي فعلاً يتعلم من اخفاقاته أكثر بكثير من نجاحاته.  
 c. يُقال دائماً أن الفشل مستفيد، فالشخص الذي فعلاً يتعلم من اخفاقاته أكثر بكثير من نجاحاته.  
 d. يُقال دائماً أن الفشل مفيد، فالشخص الذي فعلاً يتعلم من اخفاقاته أقل بكثير من نجاحاته.

2. The issue of climate change is one of the most important challenges that the world faces today. It causes severe economic and health damage to most countries in the world.

(الدقهلية - بلفاس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. تُعتبر قضية تغير المناخ واحدة من أهم التحديات التي تواجه العالم حالياً، حيث تسبب أضراراً اقتصادية وصحية جسيمة تعاني منها معظم دول أفريقيا.  
 b. تُعتبر قضية تغير الطقس واحدة من أهم التحديات التي تواجه العالم حالياً، حيث تسبب أضراراً اقتصادية وصحية جسيمة تعاني منها معظم دول العالم.  
 c. تُعتبر قضية تغير المناخ واحدة من أهم التغيرات التي تواجه العالم حالياً، حيث تسبب أضراراً اقتصادية وصحية جسيمة تعاني منها معظم دول العالم.  
 d. تُعتبر قضية تغير المناخ واحدة من أهم التحديات التي تواجه العالم حالياً، حيث تسبب أضراراً اقتصادية وصحية جسيمة تعاني منها معظم دول العالم.

3. The best way to solve traffic jams is by using public transportation because it will be more efficient and reliable.

(الدقهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢٤)

- a. تُعتبر أفضل طريقة لحل الاختناقات التنفسية هي استخدام المواصلات العامة لأنها ستكون أكثر كفاءة وثقة.  
 b. تُعتبر أفضل طريقة لحل الاختناقات المرورية هي استخدام المواصلات العامة لأنها ستكون أكثر كفاءة وثقة.  
 c. تُعتبر أفضل طريقة لحل الاختناقات المرورية هي استخدام الخدمات العامة لأنها ستكون أكثر كفاءة وثقة.  
 d. تُعتبر أفضل طريقة لحل المواصلات المرورية هي استخدام الشاحنات العامة لأنها ستكون أكثر كفاءة وثقة.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

1. لست أدري لماذا يخشى الناس البدايات في كل شيء يفعلونه، قد يكون ذلك لأن البدايات تكون دائماً صعبة وتحتاج إلى المغامرة والثقة بالنفس.

(البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. I don't know why people fear beginnings in everything they do. This is because beginnings are always difficult and require adventure and self-confidence.  
 b. I don't know why people fear beginning in everything they do. This may be because beginnings are always difficult and require adventure and self-confidence.  
 c. I don't know why people fear beginnings in everything they do. This may be because beginnings are always difficult and require adventure and self-confidence.  
 d. I don't know why people fear beginnings in everything they make. This may be because beginnings are always difficult and require adventure and self-confidence.



٢. أي شخص ناجح هو من يتصرف طبقاً لأهداف مَعَدَّة مسبقاً يعمل على تحقيقها، أما الشخص الذي ليس له أهداف فسوف يظل في مكانه.  
(الجزيرة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)

- Anyone who is successful is the one who acts according to pre-set goals that they are working to achieve and the person who has no goals will remain in their place.
- Anyone who is successful is the one who acts according to pre-set goals that he is working to achieve and the person who has no goals will remain in their place.
- Anyone who is successful is the one who acts according to pre-set goals that they are working to achieve and the person who has not goals will remain in his place.
- Anyone who is successful is the one who acts according to pre-set goals that he is working to achieve and the person who has any goals will remain in his place.

٣. يوجد العديد من المزايا للمعيشة بالخارج، حيث يستطيع المرء اكتساب الخبرات الكثيرة والإلمام بالثقافات الأخرى، بالإضافة إلى تنمية قدراته في الاعتماد على النفس لتحقيق أحلامه.  
(الشرقية - قافوس ٢٠٢٤)

(الشرقية - قافوس ٢٠٢٤)

- There are a lot of merits to living abroad, where a person can get experiments and familiarize themselves with cultures. In addition to developing their abilities to self-reliance to make their dreams.
- There are many advantages to living abroad, as one can get a lot of experiences and learn about other cultures in addition to developing their abilities in self-reliance to achieve their dreams.
- There are many cons to living abroad, as one can gain many experiences and familiarity with other cultures. In addition to developing their abilities to rely on oneself for achieve their dreams.
- There are a lot of atmospheres to living abroad, where a person can get used to it and familiarize themselves with other cultures. In addition to developing their abilities to reliance to improve their dreams.

### PART III

## JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

### Key Vocabulary for Advanced level

### المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

#### mean

• **mean – meant – meant = represent (v)**

- What does this word mean?

يعني - يُعطي معني

• **mean – meant - meant = intend (v)**

- He didn't mean to hurt you.

يقصد - يتعمد - ينوي

### لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

يقصد - يتعمد

#### • mean to + inf.

- I am sure she didn't mean to break the vase.

#### • mean + to + inf. / شخص / شئ

يقصد أن + شخص / شئ ...

- I haven't meant the vase to break.

لم أقصد أن تكسر الزهرة.

- I didn't mean Sara to hear what I told you.

لم أقصد أن تستمع سارة لما قلته لك.

#### • mean for + شخص + to + inf.

يقصد أن ...

- Did you really mean for Salah to get hurt? هل كنت حقًا تقصد أن يُصاب صلاح؟

#### • mean no + harm / offence / disrespect

لا يقصد اضرار / الإساءة / الإهانة ...

- My friend is sure I have meant no harm. It all happened by mistake.

#### • mean – meant – meant = require (v)

يتطلب - يستلزم

- You want to keep fit. This means doing regular exercise.

#### • mean (to) (adj) طيب / عطوف ≠ kind فاسي علي

- Stop shouting at her. That's a mean thing to do.

#### • mean (with) (adj) بخيل مع = stingy / cheap

- We don't ask him for help because he is mean with both his money and effort. جهد

#### • meaningful (adj) لا معني له / غير مفهوم ≠ meaningless ذو معني أو مغزي - هام

- The numbers and symbols on this paper are meaningful only to scientists.

للمزيد عن الفعل (mean) يمكن الرجوع لشرح الوحدة الخامسة

### fire

#### • fire (n)

مدفأة / موقد

- We all sat around the fire.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- by the fire بجوار المدفأة -in front of the fire أمام المدفأة

#### • fire (n)

نار - حريق

- The mall caught fire and it was completely destroyed.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

#### • be on fire = burning

مُشتعل

- The house was on fire. = The house was burning.

#### • ... catch fire

تشعل فيه النيران

- The house caught fire.

#### • a fire breaks out

تشعل النيران

- The fire broke out at midnight.



- **a fire goes out** تنطفئ النيران  
- There was no more wood and the **fire went out**.
- **start a fire** يبدأ الحريق  
- The **fire started with** a cigarette end.
- **set fire to ...** يُشعل النيران في = **set ... on fire**  
- The criminal **set fire to** the house and ran away.  
- The criminal **set the house on fire** and ran away.
- **make a fire** يُشعل نار (لغرض الاستخدام)  
- The weather was cold, so we **made a fire** to keep us warm.
- **put out a fire = extinguish a fire** يطفئ النار  
- The heavy rain **put out the fire** in the wood.
- **fire (n)** إطلاق نار (كلمة لا تُعد) قوات العدو  
- The soldiers opened **fire on** the enemy troops.
- **fire (at / on / into) (v)** يطلق النار (علي) قوات العدو  
- The soldiers **fired at** the enemy troops.
- **fire (from) = sack / dismiss (v)** يفصل من العمل  
- He was **fired from** the office because he was not honest.

### beg

- **beg(ged) (to / for) (v)** يتوسل - يستجدي  
- The boy **begged to** go out with his friends.  
- I **begged** my manager **to** give me another chance.  
- I felt sorry when the old man **begged for** help.
- **beg(ged) (v)** يتسؤل (بشحت) **لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:**  
- It breaks my heart to see a little child **begging** money from people in the streets.  
- The old woman was **begging** for the price of medicine.  
- I **beg** your pardon. أسالك المعذرة (أرجو أن تسامحني)  
- I **beg** (of) you. = please من فضلك  
- **beg to differ** أسمح لي أن أختلف معك
- **beggar (n)** متسؤل (شحات) مُعاق.  
- Some **beggars** pretend to be disabled.
- **beggar(ed) (v)** يُفقّر  
- His big family have **beggared** him.
- **beggary (n)** الفقر المدقع - الغور  
- In most African countries, a lot of people suffer from **beggary**.

### Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Supporting a football team is something fun. I don't think it is worth ..... over.  
a. falling out      b. falling out with      c. getting on      d. getting on with
- The old temple has been ..... to life through careful restoration الترميم.  
a. got into      b. brought back      c. hanged out      d. fallen out
- A: I think it is a great plan.  
B: I ..... to differ. Practically, it is useless.  
a. beg      b. big      c. pile      d. sigh
- After brushing her hair, she usually ..... it on top of her head.  
a. hangs out      b. fires      c. ignores      d. piles
- What puzzles me a lot is how young people ..... those tight trousers.  
a. get into      b. hang out      c. fall out with      d. get on

### Advanced Exercise on Language

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- If Edison hadn't discovered electricity, we ..... in darkness now.  
a. will live      b. would live  
c. would have lived      d. may have lived
- He could have drowned ..... a passing ship rescued him.  
a. so      b. if      c. but      d. unless
- ..... to stay up late for long, he would have tomorrow off.  
a. Had he had      b. He has      c. Were he to      d. Had he
- A: What if Fatma ..... come next Saturday? B: It would be a disaster.  
a. had not      b. did not      c. do not      d. will not
- If Rodayna ..... a doctor, she wouldn't have helped me yesterday.  
a. were      b. weren't      c. had been      d. hadn't be



# Test on Unit 6

تنويه

\* التقييمات الشهرية في  
نهاية الكتاب  
\* تدريبات الأزهر الشريف  
بنك الأسئلة



اختبار الكتروني

- Understand      • Apply      • Create

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He's so ....., he won't even buy his wife a birthday present.

(اسوان - كوم امبو ٢٠٢٤)

- a. patient      b. kind      c. mean      d. main

2. I found the letter in a ..... of documents on his desk.

- a. pile      b. peel      c. pale      d. pill

3. We all ..... father not to drive in the storm, but he didn't listen to us.

(الغربية قطور ٢٠٢٤)

- a. ordered      b. refused      c. yelled      d. begged

4. Ahmed looked at the enormous pile of work left to do and .....

- a. meant      b. begged      c. cheered      d. sighed

5. Reem fell ..... with her manager and decided to look for another job.

(الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. down      b. out      c. over      d. in

6. I didn't ..... with my brother when we were young, but we're good friends now.

(الدقهلية - تلا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. fall out      b. fell out      c. get on with      d. lose touch

7. Remember that useful ..... will show someone what they did well and how they can improve their work.

(الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٤)

- a. feedback      b. category      c. caption      d. brainstorm

8. My mother always has a bad reaction if she ..... honey.

- a. eats      b. will eat      c. eat      d. ate

9. If you put water in the freezer, ..... to ice?

- a. turned      b. it turns      c. will it turn      d. does it turn

10. If you see a fire, ..... the emergency services.

(القاهرة - مصر القديمة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. is calling      b. call      c. will call      d. would call

11. If you throw a piece of rock into water, ..... ?

(الأقصر - إسنا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. sank      b. does it sink      c. will it sink      d. it sinks

12. The manager would assign the task to the new employees if they ..... more reliable.

(الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٤)

- a. are      b. had been      c. have been      d. were

13. Who ..... for advice if you have a problem?

(المنيا - مطاي ٢٠٢٤)

- a. do you ask      b. would you ask      c. had you asked      d. you will ask

14. .... hard work, she can achieve her goal.

(الأقصر - إسنا ٢٠٢٤)

- a. Unless      b. As long as      c. With      d. Without

15. If she hadn't gone there, she ..... killed.

- a. wasn't      b. wouldn't have been  
c. hasn't been      d. wouldn't be

• 2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (البحيرة - الدلتجات ٢٠٢٤)

People are trying many ways to solve the problem of finding “green energy”; energy that is clean and does not cause pollution. In some places, plants are being grown which can be used as food and fuel. For example, sunflowers are grown for the oil in their seeds. However, once the seeds have been taken out, the rest of the plant can be dried and burnt. An old solution in India is to dry animal waste and form it into bricks for burning. The Chinese improve on this and keep the waste until it produces methane gas which they use for cooking and heating.

Solar power could be one of the best future sources of energy. All over the world, it is already being used for such jobs as heating water in houses and powering machines to water plants. But there is a way to make even better use of the sun.

In space, because the sun never stops shining, it can supply solar energy for twenty-four hours a day. Space scientists have suggested building a solar power station in space. It would produce huge amounts of power which could be sent down to the Earth. To build a station in space like this would be very expensive, but once the station was working, the energy from it would be almost free.

- Solar power means energy from .....  
a. plants                      b. atoms                      c. fossil                      d. the sun
- The underlined word “this” refers to .....  
a. drying animal waste                      b. getting oil from seeds  
c. cooking and heating                      d. getting green energy
- Solar energy is a/an ..... source of energy.  
a. new                      b. renew                      c. renewable                      d. undeniable
- The energy from a station in space would almost be .....  
a. expensive                      b. reasonable                      c. free                      d. cheap
- Sunflowers are grown for the oil in their .....  
a. logs                      b. legs                      c. trunks                      d. seeds
- According to the passage, animal waste is dried and formed into bricks for burning in .....  
a. China                      b. India                      c. Egypt                      d. France
- The main idea of the passage is .....  
a. sunflowers                      b. Green energy  
c. non-renewable energy                      d. space
- In space, the sun always .....  
a. stops shining                      b. produces methane  
c. shines                      d. grows



### 3. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

People nowadays need to understand that learning must be lifelong. This is necessary because the world of work is changing very fast. To remain employable, people must always look ahead and learn new knowledge and skills.

(الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة ٢٠٢٤)

- a. يحتاج الناس هذه الأيام إلى إدراك أن التعليم يجب أن يكون مدي الحياة، وهذا ضروري لأن عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة، ولكي يظل الناس مطلوبين في سوق العمل يجب أن يبحثوا ويتعلموا معارف ومهارات جيدة.
- b. يحتاج الناس هذه الأيام إلى استدراك أن التعليم يجب أن يكون مدي الحياة، وهذا ضروري لأن عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة، ولكي يظل الناس مطلوبين في سوق العمل يجب أن يبحثوا ويتعلموا معارف ومهارات جديدة.
- c. يحتاج الناس هذه الأيام إلى إدراك أن التعلم يجب أن يكون مدي الحياة، وهذا ضروري لأن عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة، ولكي يظل الناس مطلوبين في سوق العمل يجب أن يبحثوا ويتعلموا معارف ومهارات جديدة.
- d. يحتاج الناس هذه الأيام إلى إدراك أن الثقافة يجب أن تكون مدي الحياة، وهذا ضروري لأن عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة، ولكي يظل الناس مطلوبين في سوق العمل يجب أن يبحثوا ويتعلموا معارف ومهارات جديدة.

### b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

تقوم الحكومة بتنفيذ العديد من المشروعات القومية العملاقة في كل أنحاء البلاد، وتهدف هذه المشروعات إلى توفير فرص عمل للمواطنين وزيادة الناتج القومي والقضاء على البطالة.

(الغربية - قطور ٢٠٢٤)

- a. The government carries out a lot of giant national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, increase the national production and eliminate unemployment.
- b. The government carries out a lot of tiny national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, double the national production and eliminate unemployment.
- c. The government carries out a lot of giant national projects all over the world. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, increase the national production and eliminate unemployment.
- d. The government carries out a lot of big national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for foreigners, increase the national production and eliminate employment.

### 4. Answer the following questions:

1. Kent was a model for the honest loyal man. To what extent do you agree with this sentence? Explain. (البحيرة - ادكو ٢٠٢٤)
- .....
2. What made Edmund plot against his father and his brother? (البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٤)
- .....
3. What is the moral lesson of Shakespeare's "King Lear"? (الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٤)
- .....

### 5. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic:

(الجيزة - الوراق ٢٠٢٤)

*"As well as hard work, learning from mistakes helps a person to succeed"*

# Revision 2

Based On Units 4, 5 & 6

SB pages 72 : 77 WB pages 42 : 45

## VOCABULARY

### Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

accounts (n)	حسابات	human (adj - n)	بشري - انسان
achievement (n)	إنجاز	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي
admire (d) (v)	يُعجب بـ	joke (d) (v - n)	يمرح - مزحة (نكتة)
ambassador (n)	سفير	post (ed) (n - v)	منشور - ينشر
audio (adj)	مسموع - سمعي	private (adj)	خاص - شخصي
behaviour (n)	سلوك	profile (n)	الملف الشخصي - الحالة
biography (n)	السيرة الذاتية	response (n)	استجابة - رد
career (n)	الحياة المهنية	role model (n)	قُدوة
celebrity (n)	شخصية مشهورة	ruin (ed) (v)	يُدْمِر
clear (adj)	صافي - واضح	scientists (n)	العلماء
disappointed (adj)	مُحَبِّط	search (ed) (v - n)	يبحث - بحث
ebooks (n)	الكتب الإلكترونية	security (n)	أمن
footprint (n)	البصمة - المسار - أثر	speed up (phr.v)	يُسْرِع
	قدم	storytellers (n)	القصاصين
goodwill (n)	النية الحسنة	suppose (d) (v)	يُفْتَرِض
guess (ed) (v)	يُخَفِّن - يظن	upload (ed) (v)	يرفع على الإنترنت

### Reading & Listening Texts

#### 1 Reading Texts

#### New ways to enjoy stories

(SB page 72)

New technology often changes **the way we do things**<sup>(1)</sup>. In the past, people could only **tell stories**<sup>(2)</sup> by talking to **each other**<sup>(3)</sup>, but this changed when stories could be **written down**<sup>(4)</sup> and read.



- (1) طريقة قيامنا بالأشياء
- (2) يحكي قصص
- (3) بعضهم البعض
- (4) يُدوّن / يُسجّل



Modern technology means we can read **e-books**<sup>(5)</sup> and listen to **audio**<sup>(6)</sup> books, but there are always new ways to enjoy great stories.

Chat stories are short stories that you can read on your **smartphone**<sup>(7)</sup>. They look like messages between the characters in the story. And when you finish reading one part of the conversation, you **tap**<sup>(8)</sup> the bottom of your **screen**<sup>(9)</sup> to show the next message.

Reading a chat story **feels like**<sup>(10)</sup> you're reading someone's messages. Some chat stories also **include**<sup>(11)</sup> photos, audio and videos, so you can see what a character **looks like**<sup>(12)</sup> and the **expressions**<sup>(13)</sup> on their face. And some chat stories **let**<sup>(14)</sup> you **make choices**<sup>(15)</sup> about what happens next.

But some **storytellers**<sup>(16)</sup> want us to **go further**<sup>(17)</sup>. They invite us to **imagine**<sup>(18)</sup> how our phones could show the world around us like we were in a film or a video game. **Through**<sup>(19)</sup> our phones, we could also meet the characters from our stories. They think that we will learn to enjoy stories in a new way because we will be **at the centre of the action**<sup>(20)</sup>. However, we must remember to make the stories fun and interesting because technology can become **boring**<sup>(21)</sup> when we forget to include human **feelings**<sup>(22)</sup>.

- (5) الكتب الإلكترونية
- (6) مسموع - سمعي
- (7) هاتف ذكي
- (8) ينقر - يلمس
- (9) شاشة
- (10) يبدو وكأنه
- (11) يتضمن
- (12) يُشبه
- (13) تعبيرات - ملامح
- (14) يسمح - يُمكن
- (15) يختار
- (16) القصاصين
- (17) يتعمق أكثر
- (18) يتخيل
- (19) من خلال
- (20) في بؤرة الأحداث
- (21) ممل
- (22) مشاعر

## Digital footprints

(SB page 74)

**Scientists**<sup>(1)</sup> have **discovered**<sup>(2)</sup> **human**<sup>(3)</sup> **footprints**<sup>(4)</sup> in Australia that are 20,000 years old. There are footprints of a family with a small child, and five men who ran as fast as **Olympic**<sup>(5)</sup> **athletes**<sup>(6)</sup>. Footprints can tell us a lot about what people did, and they can last for a long time.



The **phrase**<sup>(7)</sup> '**digital footprint**'<sup>(8)</sup> describes all the information that we **leave behind**<sup>(9)</sup> when we use the internet. It includes things like our **social media**<sup>(10)</sup> **profiles**<sup>(11)</sup>, **posts**<sup>(12)</sup> and the **photos**<sup>(13)</sup> we **upload**<sup>(14)</sup>, as well as<sup>(15)</sup> the groups that we've joined and posts from other people that we've **shared**<sup>(16)</sup>.

- (1) العلماء
- (2) يكتشف
- (3) بشري
- (4) آثار أقدام
- (5) أولمبي
- (6) الرياضيون
- (7) عبارة
- (8) البصمة الرقمية - المسار الرقمي
- (9) يخلف أثرًا
- (10) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
- (11) الملفات الشخصية
- (12) منشورات
- (13) صور فوتوغرافية
- (14) يرفع على الإنترنت
- (15) بالإضافة إلى
- (16) يشارك